





SOUTH CAROLINA

AND ITS HISTORY

AND OTHER DOCUMENTS

HISTORY OF THAT STATE

AND ITS HISTORY

AND ITS HISTORY

AND ITS HISTORY

AND ITS HISTORY

AND ITS HISTORY

AND ITS HISTORY

AND ITS HISTORY

AND ITS HISTORY

AND ITS HISTORY

AND ITS HISTORY



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation



ser.  
HUS.C  
C3192h

HISTORICAL COLLECTIONS  
OF  
SOUTH CAROLINA;  
EMBRACING MANY  
RARE AND VALUABLE PAMPHLETS,  
AND  
OTHER DOCUMENTS,  
RELATING TO THE  
HISTORY OF THAT STATE,  
FROM ITS FIRST DISCOVERY TO ITS INDEPENDENCE,  
IN THE YEAR 1776.

COMPILED, WITH VARIOUS NOTES, AND AN INTRODUCTION,

BY B. R. CARROLL.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

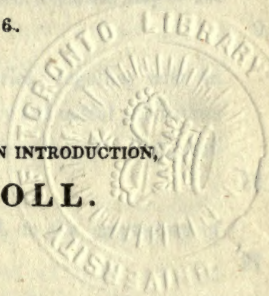
VOL. II.

NEW-YORK:

PUBLISHED BY HARPER & BROTHERS,

NO. 82, CLIFF-STREET.

1836.



451915  
24.9.46

Aug. 23 1838

HISTORICAL COLLECTIONS

OF

# SOUTH CAROLINA

EMBRACING

RARE AND VALUABLE PAMPHLETS

AND

OTHER DOCUMENTS

RELATING TO THE

## HISTORY OF THAT STATE

FROM ITS FIRST DISCOVERY TO ITS INDEPENDENCE

IN THE YEAR 1776

COMPILED WITH VARIOUS NOTES, AND AN INTRODUCTION

BY B. R. CARROLL

IN TWO VOLUMES

VOL. II

NEW-YORK

PUBLISHED BY HARPER & BROTHERS

M. LUDWIG, PRINTER.

NO. 52, NASSAU-STREET.

1838

Aug. 23 1838



## CONTENTS.

A brief description of the province of Carolina, on the coasts of Floreda. And more perticularly of a new plantation begun by the English at Cape Feare, on that river now by them called Charles River, the 29th of May, 1664. Wherein is set forth the healthfulness of the air; the fertility of the earth, and waters; and the great pleasure and profit will accrue to those that shall go thither to enjoy the same. Also, directions and advice to such as shall go thither whether on their own accompts or to serve under another. Together with a most accurate map of the whole province,	9
An account of the province of Carolina, in America: together with an abstract of the patent, and several other necessary and useful particulars to such as have thoughts of transporting themselves thither. Published for their information,	19
The second charter granted by King Charles II. to the proprietors of Carolina,	37
Carolina; or a description of the present state of that country, and the natural excellencies thereof; namely, the healthfulness of the air, pleasantness of the place, advantages and usefulness of those rich commodities there plentifully abounding, which much encrease and flourish by the industry of the planters that daily enlarge that colony. Published by T. A. Gent, clerk on board his majesty's ship the Richmond, which was sent out in the year 1680, with particular instructions to inquire into the state of that country by his majesties special command, and return'd this present year, 1682, . . . . .	59

- A description of the fertile and pleasant province of Carolina; with a brief account of its discovery and settling, and the government thereof to this time. With several remarkable passages of Divine Providence during my time. By John Archdale, late governor of the same, . . . 85
- Proposals by Mr. Peter Purry, of Newfchatel, for encouragement of such Swiss protestants as should agree to accompany him to Carolina, to settle a new colony. And, also, a description of the province of South Carolina, drawn up at Charlestown, in September, 1731, . . . 121
- A narrative of the proceedings of the people of South Carolina, in the year 1719; and of the true causes and motives that induced them to renounce their obedience to the lords proprietors, as their governors, and to put themselves under the immediate government of the crown, . . . 141
- A description of South Carolina; containing many curious and interesting particulars relating to the civil, natural, and commercial history of that colony, namely, the succession of European settlers there; grants of English charters; boundaries; constitution of the government; taxes; number of inhabitants, and of the neighbouring Indian nations, &c.: the nature of the climate; tabular accounts of the altitudes of the barometer, monthly, for four years; of the depths of rain, monthly, for eleven years; and of the wind's direction, daily, for one year, &c. The culture and product of rice, Indian corn, and indigo; the process of extracting tar and turpentine; the state of their maritime trade in the years 1710, 1713, 1723, 1740, and 1748, with the number of tonnage of shipping employed, and the species, quantities and values of their product exported in one year, &c. To which is added a very particular account of their rice trade, for twenty years, with their exports of raw silk, and imports of British silk manufactures for twenty-five years, . . . 193
- Political annals of the province of Carolina; from the political annals of the United Colonies, by George Chalmers, . . . 273
- Statements made in the introduction to the report of General Oglethorpe's expedition to St. Augustine, . . . 347
- The first set of the fundamental constitutions of South Carolina, as compiled by Mr. John Locke, . . . 361



- The history of Carolina ; being an account of that colony, originally published in the history of the British empire in America. By J. Oldmixon. 391
- A short description of the province of South Carolina ; with an account of the air, weather, and diseases, at Charlestown, written in the year 1763, 463
- An account of missionaries sent to South Carolina : the places to which they were appointed ; their labours and success, &c. . . . . 537
- An account of the breaking out of the Yamassee war, in South Carolina, extracted from the Boston News, of the 13th of June, 1715, . . . 569
- An account of what the army did under the command of Colonel Moore in his expedition last winter, against the Spaniards and Spanish Indians. In a letter from the said Col. Moore to the governor of Carolina. Printed in the Boston News, May 1, 1704, . . . . . 573





**HISTORICAL COLLECTIONS**  
**OF**  
**SOUTH CAROLINA.**

HISTORICAL COLLECTIONS

SOUTH CAROLINA



A BRIEF  
DESCRIPTION  
OF THE  
**Province of Carolina,**  
ON THE  
COASTS OF FLOREDA.

AND  
*More perticularly of a New Plantation begun by the English at Cape  
Feare, on that River now by them called Charles-River,  
the 29th of May, 1664.*

WHEREIN IS SET FORTH  
*The Healthfulness of the Air; the Fertility of the Earth, and Waters;  
and the great Pleasure and Profit will accrue to those that  
shall go thither to enjoy the same.*

ALSO,  
*Directions and advice to such as shall go thither whether on their own  
accompts or to serve under another.*

TOGETHER WITH  
A MOST ACCURATE MAP OF THE WHOLE PROVINCE.

---

*London, Printed for Robert Horne in the first Court of Gresham-  
Colledge neer Bishopsgate street. 1666.*

## A BRIEF DESCRIPTION

OF

### THE PROVINCE OF CAROLINA, &c.

*Carolina* is a fair and spacious Province on the Continent of *America*: so called in honour of His Sacred Majesty that now is, *Charles the Second*, whom God preserve; and His Majesty hath been pleas'd to grant the same to certain Honourable Persons, who in order to the speedy planting of the same, have granted divers privileges and advantages to such as shall transport themselves and Servants in convenient time; This Province lying so neer *Virginia*, and yet more Southward, enjoys the fertility and advantages thereof; and yet is so far distant, as to be freed from the inconstancy of the Weather, which is a great cause of the unhealthfulness thereof; also, being in the latitude of the *Barmoodoes* may expect the like healthfulness which it hath hitherto enjoy'd, and doubtless there is no Plantation that ever the *English* went upon, in all respects so good as this: for though *Barmoodoes* be wonderful healthy and fruitful, yet is it but a Prison to the Inhabitants, who are much streightned for want of room, and therefore many of them are come to *Carolina*, and more intend to follow. There is seated in this Province two Colonies already, one on the River *Roanoak* (now called *Albemarle River*) and borders on *Virginia*; the other at *Cape Feare*, two Degrees more Southerly; of which follows a more perticular Description.

This Province of *Carolina* is situate on the main Continent of *America*, between the degrees of 30. and



36. and hath on the North, the South part of *Virginia*; on the South is bounded by the 30 degree of Latitude not yet fully discovered; on the East is *Mare Atlanticum*, part of the great Ocean; and on the West the wealthy South Sea is its Confines.

---

### *The perticular Description of Cape-Feare.*

In the midst of this fertile Province, in the Latitude of 34 degrees, there is a Colony of *English* seated, who Landed there the 29 of May, *Anno* 1664. and are in all about 800 persons, who have overcome all the difficulties that attend the first attempts, and have cleered the way for those that come after, who will find good houses to be in whilst their own are in building; good forts to secure them from their enemies; and many things brought from other parts there, increasing to their no small advantage. The entrance into the River, now called *Cape-Feare* River, the situation of the Cape, and trending of the Land, is plainly laid down to the eye in the Map annexed. The River is barred at the entrance, but there is a Channel close aboard the Cape that will convey in safety a ship of 300 Tons, and as soon as a ship is over the Bar, the River is 5 or 6 fathom deep for a 100 miles from the Sea; this Bar is a great security to the Colony against a forreign Invasion, the channel being hard to find by those that have not experience of it, and yet safe enough to those that know it.

### *The Earth, Water, and Air.*

The Land is of divers sorts as in all Countryes of the world, that which lyes neer the Sea, is sandy and bar-

ren, but beareth many tall Trees, which make good timber for several uses; and this sandy ground is by experienced men thought to be one cause of the healthfulness of the place: but up the River about 20 or 30 mile, where they have made a Town, called *Charleston*, there is plenty of as rich ground as any in the world; It is a blackish mold upon a red sand, and under that a clay, but in some places is rich ground of a grayer colour, they have made Brick of the Clay, which proves very good; and Lime they have also for building. The whole Country consists of stately Woods, Groves, Marshes and Meadows; it abounds with variety of as brave Okes as Eye can behold, great Bodies tall and streight from 60 to 80 foot, before there be any Boughs, which with the little under-wood makes the Woods very commodious to travel in, either on Horseback or a foot. In the barren sandy ground grow most stately *Pines*, white and red *Cedars*, *Ash*, *Birch*, *Holly*, *Chesnut* and *Walnut-trees* of great growth and very plentiful: There are many sorts of fruit Trees, as *Vines*, *Medlars*, *Peach*, *Wild Cherries*, *Mulbury-Trees*, and the *Silk-worm* breeding naturally on them, with many other Trees for Fruit and for Building, for *Perume* and for *Medicine*, for which the *English* have no name; also several sorts of Dying Stuff, which may prove of great advantage; The Woods are stored with Deer and Wild Turkeys, of a great magnitude, weighing many times above 50*l.* a piece, and of a more pleasant tast than in *England*, being in their proper climate; other sorts of Beasts in the Woods that are good for food, and also Fowls, whose names are not known to them. This is what they found naturally upon the place; but they have brought with them most sorts of seeds and roots of the *Barbadoes* which thrive



the most temperate Clime, where the neighbourhood of very well, and they have *Potatoes*, and the other Roots and Herbs of Barbadoes growing and thriving with them; as also from *Virginia*, *Barmoodoes*, and *New-England*, what they could afford: They have *Indico*, *Tobacco* very good, and *Cotton-wool*; *Lime-trees*, *Orange*, *Lemon*, and other Fruit-trees they brought, thrive exceedingly: They have two Crops of *Indian-Corn* in one year, and great increase every Crop; *Apples*, *Pears*, and other *English* fruit, grow there out of the planted Kernels: The Marshes and Meadows are very large from 1500 to 3000 Acres, and upwards, and are excellent food for Cattle, and will bear any Grain being prepared; some Cattle both great and small, will live well all the Winter, and keep their fat without Fodder; Hogs find so much Mast and other Food in the Woods, that they want no other care than a Swine-herd to keep them from running wild. The Meadows are very proper for *Rice*, *Rape-seed*, *Lin-seed*, &c. and may many of them be made to overflow at pleasure with a small charge. Here are as brave Rivers as any in the World, stored with great abundance of *Sturgeon*, *Salmon*, *Basse*, *Plaice*, *Trout*, and *Spanish Mackrill*, with many other most pleasant sorts of Fish, both flat and round, for which the *English* Tongue hath no name. Also, in the little Winter they have, abundance of *Wild Geese*, *Ducks*, *Teals*, *Widgeons*, and many other pleasant Fowl; and (as it is said before) the Rivers are very deep and navigable above 100 miles up; also there are wholesome Springs and Rivulets. Last of all, the Air comes to be considered, which is not the least considerable to the well being of a plantation, for without a wholsom Air all other considerations avail nothing; and this is it which makes this Place so desireable, being seated in

the glorious Light of Heaven brings many advantages, and His convenient distance secures them from the Inconvenience of his scorching beams. The Summer is not too hot, and the Winter is very short and moderate, best agreeing with *English* Constitutions. *Cape Feare* lyes about 34 degrees from the Equator, the Nights nor Days are so long, when at longest as in *England*, by somewhat above two hours. A remarkable Instance of the Healthfulness of the Place, is, That at the first setting down of the Colony, when they had no house nor harbour, but wrought hard all day, in preparing Wood to build, and lay in the open Air all night, yet not one of them was ill, but continued well all the time; they Sympathize most with the *Barmoodoes*, which is the healthfullest spot in the World, and yet the last year they had a Feaver and Ague that troubled them much, which also was at *Cape-Feare*, but was not dangerous to any that took care of themselves, and had things convenient. This place had been aimed at many years since. Sir *Walter Raleigh* had a design to have planted it. Those of the *Barmoodoes*, whose Habitations are too streight for them, have with longing desire waited for the discovery of this place that is neer their own Latitude, where they may expect the same healthfulness they do now enjoy, which is now perfected as to the first Settlement, and wants nothing but a diligent prosecution of so noble an Enterprize.

If therefore any industrious and ingenious persons shall be willing to pertake of the Felicites of this Country, let them imbrace the first opportunity, that they may obtain the greater advantages.



*The chief of the Privileges are as follows.*

First, There is full and free Liberty of Conscience granted to all, so that no man is to be molested or called in question for matters of Religious Concern; but every one to be obedient to the Civil Government, worshipping God after their own way.

Secondly, There is freedom from Custom, for all *Wine, Silk, Raisins, Currance, Oyl, Olives, and Almonds*, that shall be raised in the Province for 7. years, after 4 Ton of any of those commodities shall be imported in one Bottom.

Thirdly, Every Free-man and Free-woman that transport themselves and Servants by the 25 of *March* next, being 1667. shall have for Himself, Wife, Children, and Men-servants, for each 100 Acres of Land for him and his Heirs for ever, and for every Woman-servant and Slave 50 Acres, paying at most  $\frac{1}{2}d.$  per acre, per annum, in lieu of all demands, to the Lords Proprietors: Provided always, That every Man be armed with a good Musquet full bore, 10*l.* Powder, and 20*l.* of Bullet, and six Months Provision for all, to serve them whilst they raise Provision in that Countrey.

Fourthly, Every Man-Servant at the expiration of their time, is to have of the Country a 100 Acres of Land to him and his heirs for ever, paying only  $\frac{1}{2}d.$  per Acre, per annum, and the Women 50. Acres of Land on the same conditions; their Masters also are to allow them two Suits of Apparrel and Tools such as he is best able to work with, according to the Custom of the Countrey.

Fifthly, They are to have a Governour and Council appointed from among themselves, to see the Laws

of the Assembly put in due execution; but the Governour is to rule but 3 years, and then learn to obey; also he hath no power to lay any Tax, or make or abrogate any Law, without the Consent of the Colony in their Assembly.

Sixthly, They are to choose annually from among themselves, a certain Number of Men, according to their divisions, which constitute the General Assembly with the Governour and his Council, and have the sole power of Making Laws, and Laying Taxes for the common good when need shall require.

These are the chief and Fundamental privileges, but the Right Honourable Lords Proprietors have promised (and it is their Interest so to do) to be ready to grant what other Privileges may be found advantageous for the good, of the Colony.

Is there therefore any younger Brother who is born of Gentile blood, and whose Spirit is elevated above the common sort, and yet the hard usage of our Country hath not allowed suitable fortune; he will not surely be afraid to leave his Native Soil to advance his Fortunes equal to his Blood and Spirit, and so he will avoid those unlawful ways too many of our young Gentlemen take to maintain themselves according to their high education, having but small Estates; here, with a few Servants and a small Stock a great Estate may be raised, although his Birth have not entitled him to any of the Land of his Ancestors, yet his Industry may supply him so, as to make him the head of as famous a family.

Such as are here tormented with much care how to get worth to gain a Livelyhood, or that with their labour can hardly get a comfortable subsistence, shall do well to go to this place, where any man what-ever,



that is but willing to take moderate pains, may be assured of a most comfortable subsistence, and be in a way to raise his fortunes far beyond what he could ever hope for in *England*. Let no man be troubled at the thoughts of being a Servant for 4 or 5 year, for I can assure you, that many men give mony with their children to serve 7 years, to take more pains and fare nothing so well as the Servants in this Plantation will do. Then it is to be considered, that so soon as he is out of his time, he hath Land and Tools, and Clothes given him, and is in a way of advancement. Therefore all Artificers, as *Carpenters, Wheel-rights, Joyners, Coopers, Bricklayers, Smiths*, or diligent Husbandmen and Labourers, that are willing to advance their fortunes, and live in a most pleasant healthful and fruitful Country, where Artificers are of high esteem, and used with all Civility and Courtesie imaginable, may take notice, that,

There is an opportunity offers now by the *Virginia* Fleet, from whence *Cape Feare* is but 3 or 4 days sail, and then a small Stock carried to *Virginia* will purchase provisions at a far easier rate than to carry them from hence ; also the freight of the said Provisions will be saved, and be more fresh, and there wanteth not conveyance from *Virginia* thither.

If any Maid or single Woman have a desire to go over, they will think themselves in the Golden Age, when Men paid a Dowry for their Wives ; for if they be but Civil, and under 50 years of Age, some honest Man or other, will purchase them for their Wives.

Those that desire further advice, or Servants that would be entertained, let them repair to Mr. *Matthew Wilkinson, Ironmonger*, at the Sign of the *Three Feathers*, in *Bishopsgate-Street*, where they may be informed



when the Ships will be ready, and what they must carry with them.

Thus much was convenient to be written at present, but a more ample Relation is intended to be published in due time.

FINIS.

AN ACCOUNT

OF THE

PROVINCE OF CAROLINA,

IN AMERICA:

TOGETHER WITH

AN ABSTRACT OF THE PATENT,

AND SEVERAL OTHER NECESSARY AND USEFUL PARTICULARS TO SUCH AS

HAVE THOUGHTS OF TRANSPORTING THEMSELVES THITHER.

PUBLISHED FOR THEIR INFORMATION.

LONDON.

Printed by G. Larkin, for Francis Smith, at the Elephant and Castle,  
in Cornhill. 1682.

*To the Right Honourable William Earl of Craven Pallatine,  
and the rest of the true and absolute Lords and Proprietors of  
the Province of Carolina.*

---

MAY it please your Lordships, Finding by my Conversation with People who have an Inclination to try their Fortunes in America, that your Province of Carolina had not its due valuation for want of being made known to the World, and not hearing of any that had undertaken it, I looked upon it as a Duty incumbunt upon me, who have had the Honour to be your Secretary in your Carolina Affairs now four years, to Publish the ensuing Treatise; whereby is made known the Greatness of your Sovereign's Gift to your Slaves, and to the World the Greatness of your Trust and Favour with Him; and to those that have a desire of settling there, to what kind of Countrey and Climate they Transport Themselves: Wherein I have most strictly kept to the Rules of Truth, there not being any thing that I have written in Commendation of your Province, which I cannot prove by Letters from thence now in my possession, and by Living Witnesses now in England. I should not have been thus presumptuous to adventure upon this Work, and to have crav'd for it your Lordships Patronage, had not the Employment I have under you (which hath given me frequent Opportunities of discovering The Humanity and Softness with which you Treat all Those who apply to you, your constant Endeavours for the Good of all those who come under your Government in Carolina, and the great care you have taken by your amiable Constitution of Govern-



ment, which you have there settled, for the lasting security, peace and well being of all the Inhabitants of your Province) induced me to believe that the same goodness with which you treat others, will be extended to me, and that you will pardon my present presumption, and all the other Imperfections of,

May it please your Lordships,  
Your Lordships most Faithful and  
Obliged, Humble Servant,  
Samuel Wilson.

AN ACCOUNT OF THE  
PROVINCE OF CAROLINA,  
IN AMERICA.

CAROLINA is that part of Florida which lies between *twenty nine* and *thirty six* degrees, and *thirty* minutes of Northern Latitude ; On the East it is washed with the Atlantic Ocean, and is bounded on the West by Mare Pacificum (or the South Sea) and within these bounds is contained the most healthy Fertile and pleasant part of Florida, which is so much commended by the Spanish Authors.

This Province of Carolina, was in the year 1663 Granted by Letters Pattents in Property of his most Gracious Majesty, unto the Right Honorable Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkely, Anthony Lord Ashley, now Earl of Shaftsbury, Sir George Carterel, and Sir John Colleton, Knights and Baronets, Sir William Berkeley Knight, by which letters Pattents the Laws of England are to be of force in Carolina: but the Lords Proprietors have power with the consent of the Inhabitants to make By-Laws for the better Government of the said Province: so that no Money can be raised or Law made, without the consent of the Inhabitants or their Representatives. They have also power to appoint and impower Governours, and other Magistrates, to Grant Liberty of Conscience, make Constitutions, &c. with many other great Priviledges, as by the said Letters Pattents will more largely appear. And the said Lords Proprietors have there settled a Constitution of Government, whereby is granted Liberty of Conscience, and

wherein all possible care is taken for the equal Administration of Justice, and for the lasting security of the Inhabitants both in their Persons and Estates.

By the care and endeavours of the said Lords Proprietors, and at their very great charge, two Colonys have been settled in this Province, the one at Albemarle in the most Northerly part, the other at Ashly River, which is in the Latitude of thirty two Degrees odd Minutes. Albemarle bordering upon Virginia, and only exceeding it in Health, Fertility, and Mildness of the Winter, is in the Growths, Productions and other things much of the same nature with it: Wherefore I shall not trouble the Reader with a perticular Description of that part; but apply myself principally to discourse of the Collony at Ashly-River, which being many Degrees more Southward than Virginia, differs much from it in the Nature of its Clymate and Productions. Ashly-River was first settled in April 1670, the Lords Proprietors having at their sole charge set out three Vessels, with a considerable number of able Men; eighteen Months Victuals, with Clothes, Tools, Ammunition, and what else was thought necessary for a new settlement, and continued at this charge to supply the Collony for divers years after, until the Inhabitants were able by their own Industry to live of themselves; in which condition they have been for divers years past, and are arrived to a very great Degree of Plenty of all sorts of Provisions. Insomuch, that most sorts are already cheaper there, than in any other of the English Collonys, and they are plentifully enough supplied with all things from England or other Parts. Ashly-River, about seven Miles in from the Sea, divides itself into two Branches; the Southermost retaining the name of Ashly-River, the North Branch is called Cooper-River. In



May 1680, the Lords Proprietors sent their Orders to the Government there appointing the Port-Town for these two Rivers to be built on the Poynt of Land that divides them, and to be called Charles Town, since which time about an hundred Houses are there Built, and more are Building daily by the Persons of all sorts that come there to Inhabit, from the more Northern English, Collonys and the Sugar Islands, England and Ireland; and many persons who went to Carolina Servants, being Industrious since they came out of their times with their Masters, at whose charge they were Transported, have gotten good Stocks of Cattle, and Servants of their own; have here also Built Houses, and exercise their Trades: And many that went thither in that condition, are worth several Hundreds of Pounds, and live in a very plentiful condition, and their Estates still encreasing. And Land is become of that value near the Town, that it is sold for twenty Shillings per Acre, though pillaged of all its valuable Timber, and not cleared of the rest, and Land that is clear'd and fitted for Planting, and Fenced, is let for ten Shillings per annum, the Acre, though twenty miles distant from the Town, and six men will in six weeks time, Fall, Clear, Fence in, and fit for Planting, six Acres of Land.

At this Town, in November 1680, There Rode at one time, sixteen sail of Vessels, some of which were upwards of two hundred tons, that came from diverse parts of the Kings Kindom to trade there, which great concourse of shipping, will undoubtedly in a short time make it a considerable town.

The Eastern Shore of America, whether it be by reason of its having the great body of the continent to the Westward of it, and by consequence the North West Wind (which flows, contrary to the Sun) the Freezing

Wind, as the North East is in Europe, or that the Frozen Lakes, which Lye in, beyond Canada, and lye north and West from the shore, impregnate the Freezing Wind with more chill and congealing qualities, or that the uncultivated Earth, covered for the most part with large shading trees, breathes forth more nitrous vapours, than that which is cultivated ; or all these Reasons together, it is certainly much more cold than any part of Europe, in the same degree of latitude of thirty nine and forty, and more North, though about six hundred Miles nearer the Sun than England ; is notwithstanding many degrees colder in the winter.

The author being informed by those who say they have seen it, that in those parts, it freezeth above six inches thick in a night, and great Navigable Rivers are Frozen over in the same space of time ; and the Country about Ashley River, though within nine degrees of the Tropic, hath seldom any Winter that doth not produce some ice, though I cannot yet learn that any hath been seen on Rivers or Ponds, above a quarter of an inch thick, which vanisheth as soon as the Sun is an hour or two high ; and when the Wind is not at Northwest, the Weather is very mild. So that the December and January of Ashley River, I suppose to be of the same temperature with the latter end of March, and beginning of April in England. This small Winter causeth a fall of the Leaf, and adapts the Country to the Production of all the Grains and Fruits of England, as well as those that require more Sun : insomuch, that, at Ashley river the Apple, the Pear, the Plum, the Quince, Apricock, Peach, Medlar, Walnut, Mulberry and Chesnut, thrive very well in the same Garden together with the Orange, the Lemon, Olive, the Pomgranate, the Fig and Almond ; Nor is the Winter here, cloudy, overcast



or foggy, but it hath been observed that from the Twentieth of August to the Tenth of March including all the Winter months there have been but Eight overcast days; and though Rains fall pretty often in the Winter, it is most commonly in quick Showers, which when past, the Sun shines out clear again.

The Summer is not near so hot as in Virginia or the other Northern American English colonys, which may hardly gain belief, with those that have not considered the reason; which is, its nearness to the Tropics, which makes it in a greater Measure than those Parts more Northward, partake of those Breeses, which almost constantly rise, about eight or nine of the Clock within the Tropics, and blow fresh from the east, till about Four in the Afternoon; and a little after, the sea-Breeze dyes away, there arises a North-wind, which blowing all night keeps it fresh and cool. In short, I take Carolina, to be much of the same Nature, with those Delicious Countrys about Aleppo, Antioch and Smyrna; but hath the Advantage of being under an equal English Government.

Such, who in this Country have seated themselves near great Marshes are subject to Agues, as those are, who are so seated in England; but those who are planted more remote from Marshes or standing waters, are exceedingly healthy, insomuch, that out of a family, consisting of never less than Twelve Persons, not one hath died since their first arrival there, which is nine years; But what is more, not one hath been sick in all that time; Nor is there one of the Masters of Familys that went over in the first Vessel, dead of Sickness in Carolina, except one who was Seventy and Five years of Age before he came there: Though the number of those Masters of Familys be pretty considerable; divers Per-



sons who went out of England Ptsical and Consumptive, have recovered, and others, subject in England to frequent fits of the Stone, have been absolutely freed from them after they have been there a short time: Nor is the Gout there, yet known. The air gives a strong appetyte and quick digestion; nor is it without suitable effects; men finding themselves apparently more light-some, more prone, and more able to all youthful Exercises than in England; the Women are very fruitful and the Children have fresh sanguine Complexions.

The *Soyle* is generally very fertile, but hath some sandy Tracts, so as to make an agreeable variety; but even this land produceth good corn and is excellent Pasture: Wheat, Rye, Barley, Oats and Peas thrive exceedly, and the Ground yields in greater abundance, than in England. Turnips, Parsnips, Carrots, Potatoes, Edoes a substantial nourishing root grows well, and all excellent in their kinds; They have near Twenty Sorts of Pulse, that we have not in England, All of them very good food; insomuch that the English Garden is not regarded.

Near the Sea the Trees are not very large: They grow pretty neare together; farther up they are large and grow farther assunder; and are in most parts free from Underwood, so that you may see neare half a Mile, amongst the bodys of Large tall Timber Trees, whose tops meeting make a very pleasing Shade: Yet hinders not Grass, Myrtle and other Sweet Scenting shrubs, here and there, from Growing under them: Among these groves of Timber Trees are here and there Savannas or Grassy planes of several Magnitudes clear of Trees which have occasioned some that have seen them to compare Carolina to those pleasant parks in England, that have an abundance of tall Timber

Trees unlopped; here you may hunt the Hare Fox and Deer all day long in the Shade, and freely spur your Horse through the Woods to follow the Chase.

This Country hath the Oak, Ash, Elm, Poplar, Beach, and all the other Sorts of useful Timber, that England hath; and divers sorts of lasting Timber that England hath not; as Cedar white and red, Cypress, Locust, Bay, Laurel Trees, equal to the Biggest Oak, Large Mirtles, Hickory, Black Walnut and Pynes big enough to Mast the greatest Ships, and diverse other sorts which I cannot enumerate.

The woods abound with Hares, Squirrels, Rackcoons, Possoms, Conys and Deere, which last are so plenty, that an Indian hunter, hath killed Nine fat Deere in a day all shot by himself, and all the considerable Planters, have an Indian Hunter which they hire for less than Twenty shillings a year, and one hunter will very well find a Family of Thirty people, with as much venison and fowl as they can well eat. Here are also in the woods, great plenty of Wild Turkeys, Partridges, something smaller than those of England, but more delicate, Turtle Doves, Paraquetos, and Pigeons; On the grassy planes, the whistling Plover and Cranes and divers sorts of Birds, unknown in England.

Carolina doth so abound in Rivers, that within fifty miles of the Sea, you can hardly place yourself seven miles from a navigable River, and divers are navigable for good Big Vessels, above three hundred Miles; The Rivers abound with a variety of excellent Fish, and neare the Sea with very good oysters, in many of which are Pearle: The Author having seen Pearle, that have been taken out some of them, bigger than Rouncival Peas and perfectly round. On the Rivers and Brookes are all the Winter Months, vast quantitys



of Swan, Wild Geese, Duck, Widgeon, Teal, Curlew, Snipe, Shel Drake and a certain sort of Black Duck, that is an excellent Meat, and stays there all the Year.

*Neat Cattle* thrive and increase here exceedingly, there being particular Planters that have already Seven or Eight Hundred head, and will in a few years, in all probability, have as many thousands, unless they sell some part: The Cattle are not subject to any disease as yet perceived, and are fat all the year long, without fother; the little winter they have not pinching them so as to be perceived, which is a greater advantage the planters here have, than of the more Northern Plantations, who are all forced to give their Cattle Fother, and must spend a great part of their Summer's labour in providing three or four Months Fother for the Cattle in the Winter, or else would have few of them alive in the Spring, which will keep them from ever having very great herds, or be able to do much in planting any Commodity for Foreign Market; The providing Winter food for their Cattle, taking up so much of their Summer's labour, so that many judicious persons think that Carolina will be able by Sea to supply those Northern Colonies with Salted Beef for their Shipping, cheaper than they themselves, with what is bred amongst them; for considering that all the woods in Carolina afford good pasturage, and the small rent that is paid to the Lord Proprietors for land, an Ox is raised at almost as little expense in Carolina, as a hen is in England; and it hath by experience been found that Beef will take Salt at Ashley River any month in the Year and save very well.

*Ewes* have most commonly two or three lambs at a time; their wool is a good staple and they thrive very well; but require a Shepherd to drive them to feed,



and to bring them home at Night to preserve them from the Wolves.

*Hogs* increase in Carolina abundantly and in a manner without any charge or trouble to the Planter ; only to make them sheds, wherein they may be protected from the Sun and Rain and Morning and Evening to give them a little Indian Corn, or the pickings and parings of Potatoes, Turnips or other Roots, and at the same time blowing a horn, or making any other constant noyse, to which being used they will afterwards upon hearing it repair home, the rest of the Food they get in the Woods, of Masts and Nuts of several sorts, and when those fail, they have grass and Roots enough, the ground being never frozen so hard as to keep them from rooting ; These conveniences, breeds them large, and in the Mast time, they are very fat ; All of which makes the rearing of them so easy, that there are many Planters that are single and have never a Servant, that have two or three hundred Hogs of which they make great profit ; Barbadoes, Jamaica and New England, affording a constant good price for their Pork, by which means they get where withal to build them more convenient Houses and to purchase Servants and Negro Slaves.

There have been imported into Carolina about an hundred and fifty Mares, and some horses from New York and Rhode Island, which breed well, and the colts they have are finer limbed and headed, than their Dams or Sires, which gives great hopes of an excellent breed of horses ; As soon as they have gotten, good stalions amongst them.

Negroes by reason of the Mildness of the Winter thrive and stand much better, than in any of the more

Northern Colonys, and require less Clothes, which is a great Charge saved.

With the Indians, the English have a perfect Friendship, they being both useful to one another, and care is taken by the Lords Proprietors that no injustice shall be done them; in order to which they have established a particular Court of Judicature, (composed of the soberist and most disinterested inhabitants,) to determine all deficiencies that shall happen between the English and any of the Indians; this they do upon a Christian and moral consideration, and not out of any apprehension, of danger from them; for the Indians, have been always so engaged, in Wars, one town or Village against another (their government being usually of no greater,) that they have not suffered any increase of people, there having been several nations in a manner quite exterminated by Wars among themselves, since the English settled at Ashley river. This keeps them so thin of people, and so divided that the English have not the least apprehension of danger from them; the English being already too Strong for all the Indians, within five hundred Miles of them, if they were united and this the Indians so well know, that they will never dare to break with the English, or do any injury to any particular person, for fear of having it revenged upon their whole nation.

The Lords Proprietors do at present grant to all persons that come there to Inhabit as follows, viz—To each Master or Mistress of a family fifty acres, and to every able Son or Man Servant, they shall carry or cause to be transported in Carolina fifty acres more; and the like for each Daughter or Woman Servant, that is marriageable, and for each Child, Man or Woman Servant



under sixteen years of age, forty acres, and Fifty acres of land to each servant when out of their time. This land to be enjoyed by them and their Heirs forever; they paying a penny an acre *quit rent* to the Lords Proprietors; the Rent to commence in two years after their taking up their land; But for as much as divers persons who are already inhabitants of Carolina and others that have intentions to transport themselves into that Province, desire not to be cumbered, with paying of a rent, and also to secure to themselves good large convenient tracts of land, without being forced to bring thither a great Number of Servants at one time; the Lords Proprietors, have been prevailed upon, and have agreed to sell, to those who have a mind to buy land, after the rate of fifty pounds for a thousand acres, reserving a pepper corn per Annum rent, when demanded.

The way of any one's taking up his Lands, due to him either by carrying himself, or servants into the country, or by purchasing it of the Lords proprietors, is after this manner; he first seeks out a place to his mind, that is not already possessed by any other; then applys himself to the Governour and Proprietor's Deputy's and shew what rights he hath to Land, either by purchase or otherwise, who thereupon issue out their Warrant to the Surveyor General to measure him out a Plantation, containing the number of acres due to him, who making certificate that he hath measured out so much land and the Bounds, a Deed is prepared of course, which is signed by the Governour and the Lord's Proprietor's Deputys, and the Proprietor's Seal affixed to it, and registered, which is a good conveyance in the Law of the Land, therein mentioned, to the party and his Heirs forever.



I have here, as I take it, described a pleasant and fertile Countrey, abounding in health and pleasure, and with all things necessary for the sustenance of mankind; and wherein I think, I have written, nothing but truth, sure I am, I have inserted no willfull falsehood. I have also told you, how men are to have Land, that go there to Inhabit. But a Rational man will certainly inquire, "when I have Land, what shall I doe with it? What commoditys shall I be able to produce, that will yield me money in other countrys, that I may be inabled to buy Negro-Slaves, (without which a planter can never doe any great matter) and purchase other things for my pleasure and convenience, that Carolina doth not produce?" To this I answer, that besides the great Profit, that will be made by the vast herds of Cattle and Swine, the Countrey appears to be, proper for the commoditys following viz—

WINE—There are growing naturally in the Countrey five Sorts of grapes, three of which the French Vignarons who are there, judge will make very good Wine; and some of the Lords Proprietors have taken care to send plants of the Rhenish Canary, Clarett, Muscatt, Madera and Spanish Grapes of all which divers Vineyards are planted; Some Wine was made this year that proved very Good, both in Colour and Taste. And an indifferent good quantity may be expected the next year. The Countrey hath gentle rising Hills of fertile sand proper for Wines, and further from the Sea Rock and gravel, on which very good grapes grow naturally, ripen well, and together and very luscious in Taste, insomuch, that the French Protestants who are there and skilled in Wine, do no way doubt of producing great quantitys, and very good.

OLY—There are severall Olive trees growing, which

were carryed thither some from Portugal, and some from Bermudas and flourished exceedingly, and the Inhabitants take great care to propagate more, so that in all probability it will be an excellent Oly Country.

**SILK**—There is in Carolina great plenty of Mulberry Trees, such as are by experience found to feed the Silk-worm very well, yea as well as the white Mulberry, but there is of that sort also, which are propagated with a great deal of ease, a stick new cut and thrust into the ground, seldom failing to grow, and so like-wise if the seed if them be sown.

**TOBACCO**—Tobacco doth here grow very well, and is nearer to the nature of the Spanish Tobacco than that of Virginia.

**INDIGO**—Indigo thrives well here, and very good hath been made.

**COTTON**—Cotton of the Cyprus and Smyrna sort grow well, and good plenty of the Seed is sent thither.

**FLAX AND HEMP**—Thrives exceedingly.

Good plenty of Pitch and Tar is there made, there being particular persons that have made above a thousand barrels.

Here is good plenty of Oake for Pipe staves, which are a good Commodity in the Maderas, Canaryes, Barbados, and the Leeward Islands.

**SUMACK**—Sumack growes in great abundance naturally, so undoubtedly would Woad, Madder and Sa-Flower if planted.

**DRUGS**—Jallop, Sassaparilla, Turmerick, Sassafras, Snake-root and divers others.

In short, this Country being of the same Climate and Temperature of Aleppo, Smyrna, Antioch, Judea and the Province of Nanking the Richest in China will, I

conceive, produce any thing, which those Countreys doe, were the seeds brought into it.

The tools that men who goe there ought to take with them are these, viz—An Ax, a Bill and a Broad Hoe, an grubbing Hoe for every man, and a Cross cut Saw to every four Men, a whip Saw and a set of wedges and fraus and Betle Rings to every family and some reeping hooks and Sythes, as likewise nails of all sorts, Hooks, Hinges, Bolts, and Locks for their houses.

The Merchandize, which sell best in Carolina, are Linnen and Woollens and all other stufs to make clothes of; with Thread, Sewing Silk, Buttons, Ribbons, Hats Stockings, Shoes &c. which they sell at very good Rates, And for these goods, any man may purchase the Provision he hath need of.

The Passage of a Man or Woman to Carolina, is Five pound; Ships are going thither all times of the year. Some of the Lords Proprietors or myself will be every Tuesday eleven of the clock at the Carolina Coffee House in Burching Lane near the Royal Exchange to inform all People what ships are going, or any other thing whatever.

FINIS.





THE SECOND

# CHARTER

GRANTED BY

KING CHARLES II.

TO THE

PROPRIETORS

OF

CAROLINA.

*Charles the Second by the grace of God, of Great Britain, France, and Ireland, Defender of the faith, &c.*

Whereas, By our Letters Patents, bearing date the four and twentieth day of *March*; in the fifteenth year of Our Reign, We were graciously pleased to grant unto our right trusty, and right well-beloved cousin and counsellor *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, our high Chancellor of England, our right trusty, and right intirely beloved cousin and counsellor, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, Master of our Horse, our right trusty and well beloved *William*, now Earl of *Craven*, our right trusty, and well-beloved counsellor, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, our right trusty, and well-beloved counsellor, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Chancellor of our Exchequer, our right trusty and well-beloved counsellor Sir *George Carterett* Knight and baronet, Vice-Chamberlain of our Household, our right trusty and well-beloved, Sir *John Colleton* Knight and Baronet, and Sir *William Berkeley* Knight, all that Province, Territory, or Tract of Ground, called *Carolina*, scituate, lying and being within our dominions of *America*, extending from the *north* end of the Island, called *Luke Island*, which lyeth in the *Southern Virginia* seas, and within six and thirty degrees of the *northern* latitude; and to the *west*, as far as the *south* seas; and so respectively as far as the river of *Mathias*, which bordereth upon the coast of *Florida*, and within one and thirty degrees of the *northern* latitude, and so *west* in a direct line, as far as the *south* seas aforesaid.

Now, Know ye that We, at the humble request of the said grantees in the aforesaid letters, patents named, and as a further mark of our especial favour towards



them, We are graciously pleased to enlarge our said grant unto them, according to the bounds and limits hereafter specifed, and in favor to the pious and noble purpose of the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton* and Sir *William Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, all that Province, territory, or tract of ground, scituate, lying, and being within our dominions of *America* aforesaid, extending *north* and *eastward*, as far as the *north* end of *Carahtuke* River, or *Gulet*, upon a streight *westerly* line, to *Wyonoake* Creek, which lyes within, or about the degrees of thirty six, and thirty minutes *northern* latitude, and so *west*, in a direct line as far as the *south* seas ; and *south* and *westward*, as far as the degrees of twenty nine inclusive *northern* latitude, and so *west* in a direct line as far as the *south* seas ; together with all and singular ports, harbours, bays, rivers and islets, belonging unto the province or territory aforesaid. And also, all the soil, lands, fields, woods, mountains, ferms, lakes, rivers, bays and islets, scituate, or being within the bounds, or limits, last before mentioned ; with the fishing of all sorts of fish, *whales*, *sturgeons*, and all other royal fishes in the sea, bays, islets and rivers, within the premises, and the fish therein taken ; together with the royalty of the sea, upon the coast within the limits aforesaid. And moreover, all veins, mines and quarries, as well discovered as not discover'd, of gold, silver, gems and precious stones, and all other whatsoever ; be it of stones, mettal, or any other thing found, or to be found within the province, territory, islets and limits aforesaid.

And furthermore, the patronage and avowsons of all the churches and chappels, which as Christian Religion

shall encrease within the province, territory, isles and limits aforesaid, shall happen hereafter to be erected ; together with license and power to build and found churches, chappels, and oratories in convenient and fit places, within the said bounds and limits ; and to cause them to be dedicated and consecrated, according to the ecclesiastical laws of our Kingdom of *England* ; together with all and singular, the like, and as ample rights, jurisdictions, priviledges, prerogatives, royalties, liberties, immunities and franchises, of what kind soever, within the territory, isles, islets and limits aforesaid. To have, hold, use, exercise and enjoy the same as amply, fully, and in as ample manner as any bishop of *Durham* in our kingdom of *England*, ever heretofore had, held, used, or enjoyed, or of right ought, or could have, use, or enjoy ; and them the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George* *Carterett*, Sir *John* *Colleton*, and Sir *William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns ; We do by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, make, create, and constitute the true and absolute lords and proprietors of the said province, or territory, and of all other the premises, saving always the faith, allegiance and sovereign dominion due to us, our heirs and successors for the same ; to have, hold, possess and enjoy the said province, territory, islets, and all and singular, other the premises, to them the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George* *Carterett*, Sir *John* *Colleton*, and Sir *William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, for ever, to be holden of us, our heirs and successors, as of our mannor of *East Greenwich*, in *Kent*, in free and common soccage, and not in



*capite*, or by *Knights service*, yielding and paying yearly to us, our heirs and successors, for the same the fourth part of all gold and silver oar, which within the limits hereby granted, shall from time to time, happen to be found, over and besides the yearly rent of twenty marks and the fourth part of the gold and silver oar, in and by the said recited letters patent reserved and payable,

And that the province, or territory hereby granted and described, may be dignified with as large tithes and privileges as any other parts of our dominions and territories in that region. Know ye, That We, of our further grace, certain knowledge and meer motion, have thought fit to annex the same tract of ground and territory, unto the same province of *Carolina*; and out of the fulness of our royal power and prerogative, We do for us, our heirs and successors, annex and unite the same to the said province of *Carolina*. And forasmuch as we have made and ordain'd, the aforesaid *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George Carterett*, *Sir John Colleton*, and *Sir William Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, the true lords and proprietors of all the Province or Territory aforesaid. Know ye therefore moreover, That we reposing special trust and confidence in their fidelity, wisdom, justice and provident circumspection for us, our heirs and successors, do grant full and absolute power, by virtue of these presents, to them the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George Carterett*, *Sir John Colleton*, and *Sir William Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, for the good and happy government of the said whole province or terri-



tory, full power and authority to erect, constitute, and make several counties, baronies, and colonies, of and within the said provinces, territories, lands and hereditaments, in and by the said recited letter, patents, and these presents, granted, or mentioned to be granted, as aforesaid, with several and distinct jurisdictions, powers, liberties and privileges. And also, to ordain, make and enact, and under their seals, to publish any laws and constitutions whatsoever, either appertaining to the publick state of the said whole province or territory, or of any distinct or particular county, barony or colony, of or within the same, or to the private utility of particular persons, according to their best discretion, by and with the advice, assent and approbation of the freemen of the said province or territory, or of the freemen of the county, barony or colony, for which such law or constitution shall be made, or the greater part of them, or of their delegates or deputies, whom for enacting of the said laws, when, and as often as need shall require, We will that the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, and their heirs or assigns, shall from time to time, assemble in such manner and form as to them shall seem best: And the same laws duly to execute upon all people within the said province or territory, county, barony or colony or the limits thereof, for the time being, which shall be constituted under the power and government of them, or any of them, either sailing towards the said province or territory of *Carolina*, or returning from thence towards *England*, or any other of our, or foreign dominions, by imposition of penalties, imprisonment, or any other punishment: Yea, if it shall be needful,

and the quality of the offence require it, by taking away member and life, either by them, the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley* and their heirs, or by them or their deputies, lieutenants, judges, justices, magistrates, or officers whatsoever, as well within the said province as at sea, in such manner and form as unto the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton* and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, and their heirs, shall seem most convenient: Also, to remit, release, pardon and abolish, whether before judgment or after, all crimes and offences whatsoever, against the said laws; and to do all and every other thing and things, which unto the compleat establishment of justice, unto courts, sessions and forms of judicature, and manners of proceedings therein, do belong, although in these presents, express mention is not made thereof; and by judges, to him or them delegated to award, process, hold pleas, and determine in all the said courts and places of judicature, all actions, suits and causes whatsoever, as well criminal as civil, real, mixt, personal, or of any other kind or nature whatsoever: Which laws so as aforesaid, to be published. Our pleasure is, and we do enjoyn, require and command, shall be absolutely firm and available in law; and that all the liege people of us, our heirs and successors, within the said province or territory, do observe and keep the same inviolably in those parts, so far as they concern them, under the pains and penalties therein expressed, or to be expressed; *Provided*, nevertheless, that the said laws be consonant to reason, and as near



as may be conveniently, agreeable to the laws and customs of this our realm of *England*.

And because such assemblies of freeholders cannot be so suddenly called as there may be occasion to require the same, We do therefore by these presents, give and grant unto the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George Carterett*, Sir *John Colleton* and Sir *William Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, by themselves or their magistrates in that behalf, lawfully authorized, full power and authority from time to time, to make and ordain fit and wholesome orders and ordinances, within the province or territory aforesaid, or any county, barony or province, within the same, to be kept and observed, as well for the keeping of the peace, as for the better government of the people there abiding, and to publish the same to all to whom it may concern: Which ordinances we do, by these presents, streightly charge and command to be inviolably observed within the same province, countys, territorys, baronys and provinces, under the penalties therein expressed; so as such ordinances be reasonable and not repugnant or contrary, but as near as may be agreeable to the laws and statutes of this our kingdom of *England*; and so as the same ordinances do not extend to the binding, charging or taking away of the rights or interest of any person or persons, in their freehold, goods or chattels, whatsoever.

And to the end the said province or territory, may be the more happily encreased by the multitude of people resorting thither, and may likewise be the more strongly defended from the incursions of savages and other enemies, pirates and robbers.



Therefore, We for us, our heirs and successors, do give and grant by these presents, full power, license and liberty unto all the leige people of us, our heirs and successors in our kingdom of *England*, or elsewhere, within any other our dominions, islands colonies or plantations; (excepting those who shall be especially forbidden) to transport themselves and families into the said province or territory, with convenient shipping, and fitting provisions; and there to settle themselves, dwell and inhabit, any law, act, statute, ordinance, or other thing to the contrary in any wise, notwithstanding.

And we will also, and of our especial grace, for us, our heirs and successors, do streightly enjoyn, ordain, constitute and command, That the said province or territory, shall be of our allegiance; and that all and singular, the subjects and leige people of us, our heirs and successors, transported, or to be transported into the said province, and the children of them, and such as shall descend from them, there born, or hereafter to be born, be, and shall be denizens and leiges of us, our heirs and successors of this our kingdom of *England*, and be in all things held, treated and reputed as the leige faithful people of us, our heirs and successors, born within this our said kingdom, or any other of our dominions; and may inherit, or otherwise purchase and receive, take, hold, buy and possess any lands, tenements, or hereditaments, within the said places, and them may occupy, and enjoy, sell, alien and bequeath; as likewise, all liberties, franchises and priviledges of this our kingdom, and of other our dominions aforesaid, may freely and quietly have, possess and enjoy, as our leige people born within the same, without the molestation, vexation, trouble or grievance of us, our heirs and

successors, any act, statute, ordinance, provision to the contrary notwithstanding.

And furthermore, That our subjects of this our said kingdom of *England*, and other our dominions may be the rather encouraged to undertake this expedition, with ready and cheerful means. Know ye, That We, of our especial grace, certain knowledge and meer motion, do give and grant by virtue of these presents, as well to the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley* and their heirs, as unto all others as shall, from time to time, repair unto the said province or territory, with a purpose to inhabit there or to trade with the natives thereof: Full liberty and license to lade and freight in every port whatsoever, of us, our heirs and successors; and into the said province of *Carolina*, by them, their servants and assigns, to transport all and singular, their goods, wares and merchandizes; as likewise, all sort of grain whatsoever, and any other thing whatsoever, necessary for their food and cloathing, not prohibited by the laws and statutes of our kingdom and dominions, to be carried out of the same, without any lett or molestation of us, our heirs and successors, or of any other our officers or ministers whatsoever; *Saving* also to us, our heirs and successors, the customs, and other duties and payments due for the said wares and merchandizes, according to the several rates of the places from whence the same shall be transported.

We will also, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, do give and grant license by this our charter, unto the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord



*Berkeley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carterett, Sir John Colleton, and Sir William Berkeley, their heirs and assigns, and to all the inhabitants and dwellers in the province or territory aforesaid, both present and to come, full power and absolute authority to import or unlade by themselves, or their servants, factors or assigns, all merchandizes and goods whatsoever, that shall arise of the fruits and commodities of the said province or territory, either by land or sea, into any the ports of us, our heirs and successors, in our kingdom of England, Scotland or Ireland, or otherwise, to dispose of the said goods, in the said ports. And if need be, within one year next after the unlading, to lade the said merchandizes and goods again into the same, or other ships; and to export the same into any other countrys, either of our dominions or forreign, being in amity with us, our heirs and successors, so as they pay such customs, subsidies and other duties for the same to us, our heirs and successors, as the rest of our subjects of this our kingdom, for the time being, shall be bound to pay. Beyond which we will not that the inhabitants of the said province or territory, shall be any ways charged. Provided, nevertheless, and our will and pleasure is, and we have further, for the considerations aforesaid, of our special grace, certain knowledge and meer motion, given and granted, and by these presents for us, our heirs and successors, do give and grant unto the said Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkeley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Carterett, Sir John Colleton and Sir William Berkeley, their heirs and assigns, full and free license, liberty, power and authority, at any time or times, from and after the feast of St Michael the Arch-Angel, which shall be in the year of*



our Lord Christ, one thousand six hundred, sixty and seven; as well to import and bring into any our dominions from the said province of *Carolina*, or any other part thereof, the several goods and commodities herein after mentioned; That is to say, silks, wines, currants, raysons, capers, wax, almonds, oyl and olives, without paying or answering to us, our heirs and successors, any custom, imposts, or other duty, for, or in respect thereof, for and during the time and space of seven years to commence and be accompted from and after the first importation of four tons of any the said goods, in any one bottom ship or vessel, from the said province or territory, into any of our dominions; as also, to export and carry out of any of our dominions into the said province or territory, custom-free, all sorts of tools, which shall be useful or necessary for the planters there, in the accommodation and improvement of the premises, any thing before in these presents contained, or any law, act, statute, prohibition or other matter or thing, heretofore had, made, enacted or provided, or hereafter to be had, made, enacted or provided, in any wise notwithstanding.

And furthermore, of our more ample and special grace, certain knowledge and meer motion, We do for us, our heirs and successors, grant unto the said *Edward Earl of Clarendon, George Duke of Albemarle, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkeley, Anthony Lord Ashley Sir George Carterett, Sir John Colleton and Sir William Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, full and absolute power and authority to make, erect and constitute within the said province or territory, and the isles and islets aforesaid, such and so many sea-ports, harbours, creeks and other places for discharge and unlading of goods and merchandizes out of ships, boats, and other

vessels, and for lading of them in such and so many places, as with such jurisdictions, priviledges, and franchises, unto the said ports belonging, as to them shall seem most expedient; and that all and singular, the ships, boats and other vessels, which shall come for merchandizes, and trade into the said province or territory, or shall depart out of the same, shall be laden and unladen at such ports only, as shall be erected and constituted by the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, and not elsewhere, any use, custom, or any thing to the contrary in any wise notwithstanding.

And we do furthermore will, appoint and ordain, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, do grant unto the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton* and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, That they the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, may from time to time, for ever, have and enjoy the customs and subsidies in the ports, harbours, creeks, and other places within the province aforesaid, payable for the goods, merchandizes and wares there laded, or to be laded or unladed, the said customs to be reasonably assessed upon any occasion by themselves, and by and with the consent of the free people, or the greater part of them as aforesaid; to whom we give power by these presents, for us, our heirs and suc-



cessors, upon just cause and in due proportion to assess and impose the same.

And further, of our especial grace, certain knowledge and meer motion, we have given, granted and confirmed, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, do give, grant, and confirm unto the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George* *Carterett*, Sir *John* *Colleton*, and Sir *William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, full and absolute power, license and authority, that they the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George* *Carterett*, Sir *John* *Colleton*, and Sir *William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, from time to time, hereafter for ever, at his and their will and pleasure, may assign, alien grant, demise or enfeof the premises or any part or parcell thereof to him or them, that shall be willing to purchase the same; and to such person and persons, as they shall think fit, to have, and to hold to them the said person or persons, their heirs and assigns in fee simple or in fee tayle, or for the term of life or lives, or years to be held of them, the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George* *Carterett*, Sir *John* *Colleton* and Sir *William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, by such rents, services and customs, as shall seem fit to them the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, Sir *George* *Carterett*, Sir *John* *Colleton*, and Sir *William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, and not of us, our heirs and successors: And to the same person and persons, and to all and every of them, we do



give and grant by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, license authority and power, that such person or persons, may have and take the premises, or any parcel thereof, of the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, and the same to hold to themselves, their heirs and assigns, in what state of inheritance soever, in fee simple, or fee taylor, or otherwise, as to them the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, shall seem expedient. The statute in the parliament of *Edward*, son of King *Henry*, heretofore king of *England*, our predecessor, commonly called the statute of *Quia Emptores Terrar*; or any other statute, act, ordinance, use, law, custom, or any other matter, cause or thing heretofore published or provided to the contrary in any wise notwithstanding.

And because many persons born and inhabiting in the said province for their deserts and services may expect, and be capable of marks of honour and favour, which in respect to the great distance cannot conveniently be conferred by us; our will and pleasure therefore is, and we do by these presents, give and grant unto the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Lord *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett* *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, full power and authority to give and confer unto, and upon such of the inhabitants of the said province, or territory, as they shall think, do, or shall merit the same, such marks

of favour, and titles of honour, as they shall think fit, so as their titles or honours be not the same as are enjoyed by, or conferred upon any of the subjects of this our kingdom of *England*.

And further also, we do by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, give and grant, license to them the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George Carterett*, *Sir John Colleton*, and *Sir William Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, full power, liberty and license, to erect, raise and build within the said province and places aforesaid, or any part or parts thereof, such and so many forts, fortresses, castles, cities, burroughs, towns, villages and other fortifications whatsoever; and the same or any of them to fortify and furnish with ordnance, powder, shot, armour and all other weapons, ammunition and habiliments of war, both defensive and offensive, as shall be thought fit and convenient for the safety and welfare of the said province and places, or any part thereof; And the same, or any of them, from time to time, as occasion shall require, to dismantle, disfurnish, demolish and pull down; And also to place, constitute and appoint in, or over all, or any of the said castles, forts, fortifications, cities, towns and places aforesaid, governors, deputy governors, magistrates, sheriffs and other officers, civil and military, as to them shall seem meet; And to the said cities, burroughs, towns, villages, or any other place, or places, within the said province or territory, to grant letters or charters of incorporation, with all liberties, franchises and priviledges requisite, or usual, or to, or within this our kingdom of *England* granted, or belonging; And in the same cities, burroughs, towns and other places, to constitute, erect and appoint such, and



so many markets, marts and fairs, as shall in that behalf be thought fit and necessary; And further also, to erect and make in the province or territory aforesaid, or any part thereof, so many mannors with such signories as to them shall seem meet and convenient, and in every of the same mannors to have and to hold a court-baron with all things whatsoever, which to a court baron do belong, and to have and to hold views of frank pledge, and courts leet, for the conservation of the peace, and better government of those parts, with such limits, jurisdiction and precincts, as by the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, or their heirs, shall be appointed for that purpose, with all things whatsoever, which to a court leet, or view of frank pledge, do belong; the same courts to be holden by stewards, to be deputed and authorized by the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, or their heirs, by the lords of the mannors and leets, for the time being, when the same shall be erected.

And because that in so remote a country, and scituate among so many barbarous nations, the invasions as well of savages as other enemies, pirates, and robbers may probably be feared; Therefore we have given, and for us, our heirs and successors do give power by these presents, unto the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, their



heirs or assigns by themselves, or their captains, or other officers to levy, muster and train up all sorts of men, of what condition soever, or wheresoever born, whether in the said province, or elsewhere, for the time being ; And to make war and pursue the enemies aforesaid, as well by sea, as by land ; yea, even without the limits of the said province, and by God's assistance, to vanquish and take them, and being taken, to put them to death by the law of war, and to save them at their pleasure ; And to do all and every other thing, which to the charge and office of a captain general of an army belongeth, or hath accustomed to belong, as fully and freely as any captain general of an army hath had the same.

Also, our will and pleasure is, and by this our charter, we do give and grant unto the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Lord *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, full power, liberty and authority in case of rebellion, tumult or sedition (if any should happen, which God forbid) either upon the land within the province aforesaid, or upon the main sea, in making a voyage thither, or returning from thence, by him and themselves, their captains, deputies or officers, to be authorized under his or their seals, for that purpose : To whom also for us, our heirs and successors, we do give and grant by these presents, full power and authority to exercise martial law against mutinous and seditious persons of those parts ; such as shall refuse to submit themselves to their government, or shall refuse to serve in the wars, or shall fly to the enemy or forsake their colours or ensigns, or be loyterers or straglers, or otherwise howsoever offending against discipline, as freely,

and in as ample manner and form as any captain general of an army, by virtue of his office, might, or hath accustomed to use the same.

And our further pleasure is, and by these presents, for us, our heirs and successors, we do grant unto the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, and to the tenants and inhabitants of the said province, or territory, both present and to come, and to every of them, that the said province or territory, and the tenants and inhabitants thereof, shall not from henceforth, be held or reputed any member, or part of any colony whatsoever, in *America* or elsewhere, now transported or made, or hereafter to be transported or made; nor shall be depending on, or subject to their government in any thing, but be absolutely separated and divided from the same: And our pleasure is by these presents, that they be separated, and that they be subject immediately to our crown of *England*, as depending thereof for ever. And that the inhabitants of the said province or territory, nor any of them, shall at any time hereafter, be compelled or compellable, or be any ways subject, or liable to appear or answer to any matter, suit, cause, or plaint whatsoever, out of the province or territory aforesaid, in any other of our islands, collonies or dominions in *America*, or elsewhere, other than in our realm of *England* and dominion of *Wales*.

And because it may happen, that some of the people and inhabitants of the said province, cannot in their private opinions conform to the publick Exercise of religion according to the liturgy, forms and ceremonies of the church of *England*, or take or subscribe the oaths and



articles made and established in that behalf: And for that the same, by reason of the remote distances of those places will as we hope, be no breach of the unity, and conformity, established in this nation; our will and pleasure therefore is, and we do by these presents for us, our heirs and successors, give and grant unto the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, full and free license, liberty and authority, by such ways and means as they shall think fit, to give and grant unto such person and persons, inhabiting and being within the said province or territory, hereby or by the said recited letters patents, mentioned to be granted as aforesaid, or any part thereof, such indulgencies and dispensations, in that behalf, for, and during such time and times, and with such limitations and restrictions as they the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Lord *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkyley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, their heirs or assigns, shall in their discretion think fit and reasonable. And that no person or persons, unto whom such liberty shall be given, shall be any way molested, punished, disquieted, or called in question for any differences in opinion or practice, in matters of religious concernment, who do not actually disturb the civil peace of the province, county or colony, that they shall make their abode in. But all and every such person and persons, may from time to time and at all times, freely and quietly have and enjoy his and their judgments and consciences, in matters of religion, throughout all the said province or colony, they behaving themselves peacefully, and not using this liberty



to licentiousness, nor to the civil injury or outward disturbance of others. Any law, statute or clause contained, or to be contained, usage or customs of our realm of *England* to the contrary hereof in any wise, notwithstanding.

And in case it shall happen, that any doubts or questions should arise concerning the true sense and understanding of any word, clause, or sentence, contained in this our present charter, we will, ordain, and command, that at all times, and in all things, such interpretations be made thereof, and allowed in all and every of our courts whatsoever, as lawfully may be adjudged most advantageous and favourable to the said *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkeley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, *Sir George* *Carterett*, *Sir John* *Colleton*, and *Sir William* *Berkeley*, their heirs and assigns, although express mention, &c.

Witness our Self at *Westminster*, the thirtieth day of *June*, in the seventeenth year of our reign.

*Per ipsum Regem.*



# CAROLINA;

OR A

## DESCRIPTION

OF THE

PRESENT STATE OF THAT COUNTRY,

AND

THE NATURAL EXCELLENCIES THEROF;

NAMELY,

THE HEALTHFULNESS OF THE AIR, PLEASANTNESS OF THE PLACE, ADVANTAGES AND USEFULNESS OF THOSE RICH COMMODITIES THERE  
PLENTIFULLY ABOUNDING, WHICH MUCH ENCREASE  
AND FLOURISH BY THE INDUSTRY OF THE  
PLANTERS THAT DAILY ENLARGE  
THAT COLONY.

---

PUBLISHED BY T. A. GENT.

*Clerk on board his Majesties Ship the Richmond,*

WHICH WAS SENT OUT IN THE YEAR 1680, WITH PARTICULAR INSTRUCTIONS  
TO ENQUIRE INTO THE STATE OF THAT COUNTRY BY HIS  
MAJESTIES SPECIAL COMMAND, AND RETURN'D  
THIS PRESENT YEAR, 1682.

---

LONDON,

Printed for W. C. and to be Sold by Mrs. Grover, in Pelican Court,  
in Little Britain, 1682.



## TO THE READER.

READER,

You may please to understand, that the first Discovery of this Country was at the Charge of King Henry the Seventh, as you will find in this Book; and that as it hath pleased God to add such a Jewel to the Crown of England, so I doubt not but in a few years it will prove the most Beneficial to the Kingdom in General of any Colony yet Planted by the English, which is the more probable from the great Concourse that daily arrives there, From the other Plantations, as well as from England, Ireland, &c. being drawn and invited thither by the Healthfulness of Air, Delicacy of Fruits, the likelyhood of Wines, Oyls and Silks, and the great Variety of other Natural Commodities within specified; which well considered, will sufficiently evidence the Truth of what I Assert. That I may contribute what lies in my Power for a further Satisfaction to those Gentlemen that are curious concerning the Country of Carolina, they may find a small Description thereof, with a Map of the first Draught, Published by Mr. Richard Blome, and Printed for Dorman Newman, in the Year 1678, in Octavo, and one larger in Mr. Ogleby's America; since the publishing of these, there is by Order of the Lords Proprietors newly published in one large Sheet of Paper, a very spacious Map of Carolina, with its Rivers, Harbors, Plantations, and other Accommodations, from the latest Survey, and best Informations, with a large and particular Description of the Entrances into Ashly and Cooper Rivers; this Map to be Sold for 1s. by Joel Gascoyne, near Wapping Old Stairs, and Robert Green in Budge Row, London, 1682.

A

## COMPLEAT DISCOVERY

OF THE

## STATE OF CAROLINA,

IN THE YEAR 1692.

THE Discourses of many Ingenious Travellers (who have lately seen this part of the West Indies) have for Salubrity of Air, Fertility of Soyl, for the Luxuriant and Indulgent Blessings of Nature, justly rendered Carolina Famous. So that since my Arrival at London, I have observed many with pleasing Ideas, and Contemplations, as if ravisht with Admiration, discourse of its Pleasures. Whilst others more actively prest and stimulated, have with vehement and ardent Desires willingly resolved to hazard their Lives, Families, and Fortunes to the Mercy of the Wind, Seas and Storms, to enjoy the Sweets of so desirable a Being.

Having spent near three Years Abroad, in which time I had a fair Opportunity of a Survey of great part of our English America. You my Worthy Friend, knowing in what Character I went abroad, and understanding of my being at Carolina, did obligingly request (that at leisure) I would collect such Notices of my own whilst there, with those Remarques and Observa-

tions which I had learnt from the most Able and Ingenious Planters, who have had their Residence on the place from the first being Coloniz'd: You desiring to be assured Whether the true State of the Country did answer the Reports of Common Fame. Which in Compliance with, and in Obedience to your Commands, I have undertaken.

Carolina derives her name either from our present Illustrious Monarch, under whose glorious Auspices it was first establisht an English Colony, in the Year One Thousand Six Hundred and Seventy, and under whose benign and happy Influence it now prospers and flourishes. Or from Charles the Ninth of that Name King of France, in whose Reign a Colony of French Protestants were transported thither, at the encouragement of Gasper Coligni, Admiral of that Kingdom; the place of their first Settlement named in Honour of their Prince Arx Carolina; but not long after, that Colony, with Monsieur Ribault their Leader, were by the Spaniard at once cut off and destroy'd. Since which, nor French, nor Spaniard have made any Attempt for its Re-Settlement.

Carolina is the Nothermost part of the spacious and pleasant Province of Florida; it lies in the Northern Temperate Zone, between the Latitude of Twenty Nine and Thirty Six Degrees, and Thirty Minutes: It's bounded on the East, with the Atlantic, or Northern, on the West, with the Pacifick, or Southern Ocean, on the North with Virginia, on the South with the remaining part of Florida. The Air of so serene and excellent a temper, that the Indian Natives prolong their days to the Extremity of Old Age. And where the English hitherto have found no Distempers either Epidemical or Mortal, but what have had their Rise from Excess or Origine from Intempe-



rance. In July and August they have sometimes touches of Agues and Fevers, but not violent, of short continuance, and never Fatal. English Children there born, are commonly strong and lusty, of Sound Constitutions, and fresh ruddy Complexions.

The Seasons are regularly disposed according to Nature's Laws; the Summer not so torrid, hot and burning as that of their Southern, nor the Winter so rigorously sharp and cold, as that of their Northern Neighbours. In the Evenings and Mornings of December and January, thin congealed Ice, with hoary Frosts sometimes appear, but as soon as the Sun elevates herself, above the Horizon, as soon they disappear and vanish: Snow having been seen but twice in ten Years, or from its first being settled by the English.

The Soyl near the Sea, of a Mould Sandy, farther distant, more clayey, or Sand and Clay mixt; the Land lies upon a Level in fifty or sixty Miles round, having scarce the least Hill or Eminency. It's cloathed with odoriferous and fragrant Woods, flourishing in perpetual and constant Verdures, viz. the lofty Pine, the sweet smelling Cedar and Cyprus Trees, of both which are composed goodly Boxes, Chests, Tables, Scrittores, and Cabinets.

The Dust and Shavings of Cedar, laid amongst Linnen or Woollen, destroys the Moth and all Verminous Insects; It never rots, breeding no Worm, by which many other Woods are consumed and destroyed. Of Cedar there are many Sorts; this in Carolina is esteemed of equal Goodness for Grain, Smell and Colour with the Bermudian Cedar, which of all the West Indian is esteemed the most excellent: that in the Carribbe Islands and Jamaica being of a courser

kind, Oyl and the Spirit of Wine penetrating it; but with this they make Heading for their Cask, which the sharpest and most searching Liquors does not pierce. With the Berry of the Tree at Bermudaz, by Decoc-tion, they make a very wholesome and sovereign Drink. This Tree in the Sacred Writ is famous, espe-cially those of Lebanon, for their Stately Stature; but those in the West Indies I observed to be of a low and humble height. The Sassafrass is a Medicinal Tree, whose Bark and Leaves yield a pleasing Smell: It profits in all Diseases of the Blood and Liver, parti-cularly in all Venereal and Scorbutick Distempers. There are many other Fragrant smelling trees, the Myrtle, Bay and Lawrel, several Others to us wholly unknown. Fruit Trees there are in abundance of various and excellent kinds, the Orange, Lemon, Pome-granate, Fig and Almond. Of English Fruits, the Apple, Pear, Plum, Cherry, Quince, Peach, a sort of Medlar and Chesnut. Walnut Trees there are of two or three sorts: but the Black Walnut for its Grain, is most esteem'd: the Wild Walnut or Hiquery-Tree, gives the Indians, by boyling its Kernel, a wholesome Oyl, from whom the English frequently supply them-selves for their Kitchen uses: It's commended for a good Remedy in Dolors, and Gripes of the Belly; whilst new it has a pleasant Taste; but after Six Months, it decays and grows acid; I believe it might make a good Oyl, and of as general an use as that of the Olive, if it were better purified and rectified. The Chincopin Tree bears a Nut not unlike the Hazle, the shell is softer: Of the Kernel is made Chocolate, not much inferior to that made of the Cacao.

The Peach Tree in incredible Numbers grows wild: Of the Fruit express'd, the Planters compose a pleasant



refreshing Liquor; the Remainder of the Fruit serves the Hogg and Cattle for Provision. The Mulberry Tree every where amidst the Woods grows wild: The Planters, near their Plantations, in Rows and Walks, plant them for Use, Ornament and Pleasure: What I observed of this Fruit was admirable: the Fruit there, was full and ripe in the latter end of April and beginning of May, whereas in England and Europe, they are not ripe before the latter end of August.

A Manufactory of Silk well encouraged might soon be accomplisht, considering the numerousness of the Leaf for Provision, the clemency and moderateness of the Climate to indulge and nourish the Silk-worm: To make tryal of its Success, was the Intention of those French Protestant Passengers transported thither in His Majesties Frigat the Richmond being Forty-Five, the half of a greater Number designed for that place; but their Design was too early anticipated: the Eggs which they brought with them being hatch'd at Sea, before we could reach the Land, the Worms for want of Provision were untimely lost and destroyed. The Olive Tree thrives there very well. Mr. James Colleton, Brother to Sir Peter, one of the Honourable Proprietors, brought an Olive Stick from Fyall (one of the Western Islands) cutt off at both Ends to Carolina, which put into the Ground, grew and prospered exceedingly; which gave so great an Encouragement, that since I left the place, I hear that several more were brought there, there being great Hopes, that if the Olive be well improved, there may be expected from thence perhaps as good Oyl as any the World yields.

Vines of divers sorts, bearing both Black and Gray Grapes, grow, climbing their highest Trees, running



and over-spreading their lower Bushes: Five Kinds they have already distinguish'd, three of which by Re-plantation, and if well cultivated, they own, will make very good Wine; some of which has been transported for England, which by the best Pallates was well approved of, and more is daily expected, 't is not doubted, if the Planters as industriously prosecute the Propagation of Vineyards as they have begun; but Carolina will in a little time prove a Magazine and Staple for Wines to the whole West Indies; and to enrich their Variety, some of the Proprietors and Planters have sent them the Noblest and Excellentest Vines of Europe, viz, the Rhenish, Clarret, the Muscadel and Canary, &c.

His Majesty, to improve so hopeful a Design, gave those French we carried over their Passage free for themselves, Wives, Children Goods and Servants, they being most of them well experienced in the Nature of the Vine, from whose Directions doubtless the English have received and made considerable Advantages in their Improvements.

Trees for the Service of Building Houses and Shipping, besides those and many more which we have not nam'd; they have all such as we in England esteem Good, Lasting and Serviceable, as the Oak of three sorts, the White, Black and Live Oak, which for Toughness, and the Goodness of its Grain is much esteemed: Elm, Ash, Beech, and Poplar, &c. Into the Nature, Qualities, and Vertues of their Herbs, Roots and Flowers, we had little time to make any curious Enquiry: This we were assured by many of the knowing Planters, that they had variety of such whose Medicinal Vertues were rare and admirable. The China grows plentifully there, whose Root infus'd

yields us that pleasant Drink, which we know by the Name of China Ale in England: in Medicinal Uses it's far more excellent. Monsieur Tavernier, in his late Voyages to Persia, observes that Nation, by the frequent use of Water, in which this Root is boyl'd, are never troubled with the Stone or Gout: It mundifies and sweetens the Blood. It's good in Fevers, Scurvy. Gonorrhœa, and the Lues Venerea. They have three sorts of the Rattle-Snake Root which I have seen; the Comous, or Hairy, the Smooth, the Nodous, or Knotted Root: All which are lactiferous, or yielding a Milkie Juice; and if I do not very much in my Observations err, the Leaves of all these Roots of a Heart had the exact Resemblance: They are all Sovereign against the Mortal Bites of that Snake, too frequent in the West Indies.

In all Pestilential Distempers, as Plague, Small Pox, and malignant Fevers it's a Noble Specifick; when stung, they eat the Root, applying it to the venomous Wound; or they boyl the Roots in Water; which drunk, fortifies and corroborates the Heart, exciting strong and generous Sweats: by which endangered Nature is relieved; and the Poyson carried off, and expelled.

Gardens as yet they have not much improved or minded, their Designs having otherwise more profitably engaged them in settling and cultivating their Plantations with good Provisions and numerous Stocks of Cattle; which two things by Planters are esteemed the Basis and Props of all new Plantations and Settlements; before which be well accomplished and performed, nothing to any purpose can be effected; and upon which all Intentions, Manufactories, &c. have their necessary Dependence. But now their Gardens begin to be sup-



plied with such European Plants and Herbs as are necessary for the Kitchen, viz. Potatoes, Lettice, Coleworts, Parsnip, Turnip, Carrot and Reddish: Their Gardens also begin to be beautified and adorned with such Herbs and Flowers which to the Smell or Eye are pleasing and agreeable, viz. the Rose, Tulip, Carnation and Lilly, &c. Their Provision which grows in the Field is chiefly Indian Corn, which produces a vast Increase, yearly, yielding Two plentiful Harvests, of which they make wholesome Bread, and good Bisket, which gives a strong, sound and nourishing Diet; with Milk I have eaten it dress'd various ways: Of the Juice of the Corn, when green, the Spaniards with Chocolet, aromatiz'd with Spices, make a rare Drink of an excellent Delicacy. I have seen the English amongst the Carribbes roast the green Ear on the Coals, and eat it with a great deal of Pleasure: The Indians in Carolina parch the ripe Corn, then pound it to a Powder, putting it in a Leathern Bag: When they use it, they take a little quantity of the Powder in the Palms of their Hands, mixing it with Water, and sup it off; with this they will travel several days. In short, it's a Grain of General Use to Man and Beast, many thousands of both kinds in the West Indies having from it the greater part of their Subsistence. The American Physicians observe that it breeds good Blood, removes and opens Oppellations and Obstructions. At Carolina they have lately invented a way of makeing with it good sound Beer; but it's strong and heady: By Maceration, when duly fermented, a strong Spirit like Brandy may be drawn off from it, by the help of an Alembick.

Pulse they have of great variety, not only of what Europe yield, viz. Beans, Pease, Callavance, Figdlaes and Bonavist, &c. but many other kinds proper to the



place, and to us unknown: Green Pease at the latter end of April, at my being there, I eat as good as ever I did in England; Strawberries, Rasberries, Billberries and Blackberries grow frequently up and down the Woods. Hemp and Flax thrives exceeding well: there grows a sort of wild Silk Pods, call'd Silk-Grass, of which they may make fine and durable Linnen. What Wheat they have planted has been rather for Experiment and Observation, whether it would be agreeable to the Soil and Climate, than for any Substance for themselves, or for Transportation abroad; what they have sown, the Planters assured us grew exceeding well; as also Barly, Mr. Linch an ingenious Planter, having whilst we were there very good growing in his Plantation, of which he intended to make Malt for brewing of English Beer and Ale, having all Utensils and Conveniences for it. Tobacco grows very well; and they have of an excellent sort, mistaken by some of our English Smokers for Spanish Tobacco, and valued from 5 to 8s. the Pound; but finding a great deal of trouble in the Planting and Cure of it, and the great Quantities which Virginia, and other of His Majesties Plantations make, rendering it a Drug over all Europe; they do not much regard or encourage its Planting, having already before them better and more profitable Designs in Action. Tarr made of the resinous Juice of the Pine (which boyl'd to a thicker Consistence is Pitch) they make great quantities yearly, transporting several Tuns to Barbadoes, Jamaica, and the Caribbe Islands.

Indigo they have made, and that good: The reason why they have desisted I cannot learn. To conclude, there grows in Carolina the famous Cassiny, whose admirable and incomparable Vertues are highly applauded and extolled by French and Spanish writers: It is the

Leaves of a certain Tree, which boyl'd in Water (as we do Thea) wonderfully enliven and enervate the Heart, with genuine easie Sweats and Transpirations, preserving the Mind free and serene, keeping the Body brisk, active, and lively, not for an hour, or two but for as many days, as those Author's report, without any other Nourishment or Subsistence, which, if true, is really admirable; they also add, that none amongst the Indians, but their great Men and Captains, who have been famous for their great Exploits of War and Noble Actions, are admitted to the use of this noble Bevaridge. At my being there I made Enquiry after it; but the Ignorance of the Planter did not inform me. Sponges growing on the Sandy Shoars, I have gathered good and large; for which Samos in times past was famous, supposed by the Ancients to be the only place in the World where they grew: a courser sort I have seen pull'd up by Fishers, fishing among the Rocks of the Island of Berbadoes. Ambergrise is often thrown on their Shoars; a pretious Commodity to him who finds it, if Native and pure in Worth and Value It surpasses Gold; being estimated at 5 and 6 Pound the Ounce, if not adulterated. What it is I shall not decide, leaving it to the Judgement of the more Learned, whether it be the Excrement of the Whale, because sometimes in dissecting and opening their Bodies it's there discovered. I think as well it may be argued the Excrements of other Creatures, Birds and some Beasts greedily desireing and affecting it, especially the Fox, who eating it, by Digestion it passes through his Body; after some Alteration it's again recover'd, and is that which we call Fox Ambergrise. Others, that it is a bituminous Substance, ebullating or boiling up from the Bottom of the Sea, and floating on the Surface of the Waters, is condensed by the circum-



ambient Air: of which Opinion is the Learned Senner-tus. Some that it is a Plant of a viseous oleaginous Body, really growing at the bottom of the Sea, the swift and violent Motion of the Waters in Storms causing an Eradication or Evulsion of the Plant, forcing it to the adjacent Shoars; that it's most plentifully found after Storms is certain: if true, as an intelligent man informed me, who lived many years at the Bermudaz, and among the Behama Islands, who saw at the Behama a piece of Ambergrise weighing thirty pound (for its bigness famous in those Parts) having perfect and apparent Roots, equal to the Body in worth and goodness. Others that it's the liquid resinous Tears of some odoriferous Tree, hanging over Seas or Rivers, coagulated in that Form which we find it. Dr. Trapham, an ingenious Physician in Jamaica, differs little from this last opinion, thinking it the Gummous Juice of some Fragrant Plant which grows on Rocks near the Sea, whose Trunks broken by the rude and boysterous Waves, emit that precious Liquor. In Medicinal and Physical uses it has a high esteem, being prescribed in the richest Cordials, admirable in the languishes of the Spirit Faintings, and Deliquium of the Heart; given as the last remedy to agonizing Persons. In Perfumes of Linnen, Woollen, Gloves, &c. there is none esteemed more costly or precious. It's of different Colors, Black, Red, the Nutmeg, and Gray Color are held the best.

The great encrease of their Cattel is rather to be admired than believed; not more than six or seven years past the Country was almost destitute of Cows, Hogs and Sheep, now they have many thousand Head. The Planter in Winter takes no care for their Provision, which is a great Advantage; the Northern Plantations obliging the Planters to spend great part of their Summer



to provide Fodder and Provision for their Cattle, to preserve them from starving in the Winter. The Cows the Year round brouzing on the sweet Leaves growing on the Trees and Bushes, or on the wholesome Herbage growing underneath: They usually call them home in the Evening for their Milk, and to keep them from running wild. Hogs find more than enough of Fruit in the Summer, and Roots and Nuts in the Winter; from the abundance of their Feeding, great numbers forsake their own Plantations, running wild in the Woods, the Tyger, Wolf, and Wild Cat, by devouring them, oftentimes goes share with the Planter; but when the Stock encreases and grows strong, the older surround the younger, and boldly oppose, and oftentimes attack their Invaders. Their Sheep bears good Wool; the Ewes at a time often have 2 or 3 Lambs; they thrive very well, the Country being so friendly to their Natures, that it's observed, they are neither liable nor incident to any known Disease or Distemper.

Of Beasts bearing Furrs, they have great store of variety, whose Skins serve the Indians for Cloathing and Bedding, and the English for many uses, besides the great Advantage made of them, by their being sent for England.

Deer, of which there is such infinite Herds, that the whole Country seems but one continued Park, insomuch that I have often heard Captain Matthews, an ingenious Gentleman, and Agent to Sir Peter Colleton for his affairs in Carolina, that one hunting Indian has yearly kill'd and brought to his Plantation more than 100, sometimes 200 head of Deer. Bears there are in great numbers, of whose Fat they make an Oyl which is of great Vertue and Efficacy in causing the Hair to grow, which I observed the Indians daily used, by which means they not only

keep their Hair clear and preserved from Vermine, but by the nourishing faculty of the Oyl, it usually extended in length to their middles. There are Bevors, Otters, Foxes, Racoons, Possums, Musquasses,\* Hares and Coneys, Squirrels of five kinds, the flying Squirrel, whose delicate Skin is commended for comforting, if applied to a cold Stomack, the Red, the Grey, the Fox and Black Squirrels. Leather for Shoes they have good and well tann'd: The Indians have also a way of dressing their Skins rather softer, though not so durable as ours in England.

Birds the Country yields of differing kinds and Colours: For Prey, the Pelican, Hawk and Eagle, &c.—For Pleasure, the red, copped and blew bird, which wantonly imitates the various Notes and sounds of such Birds and Beasts which it hears, wherefore, by way of Allusion, it's call'd the Mocking Bird; for which pleasing Property it's there esteem'd a Rarity. Birds for Food, and pleasure of Game, are the Swan, Goose, Duck, Mallard, Wigeon, Teal, Curlew, Plover, Partridge, the Flesh of which is equally as good, though smaller than ours in England. Pigeons and Parakeittoes: In Winter huge Flights of wild Turkies, oftentimes weighing from twenty, thiry to forty pound. There are also great Stocks of tame Fowl, viz. Geese, Ducks, Cocks, Hens, Pigeons and Turkies. They have a Bird I believe the least in the whole Creation, named the Humming Bird; in bigness the Wren being much superiour, in magnitude not exceeding the Humble Bee, whose Body in flying much resembles it, did not their long Bills, between two and three Inches, and no bigger than Needles, make the differ-

\* It's a little creature feeding on sweet herbs, whose cods scent as sweet and strong as Musk, lasting a long time, if handsomely inclosed in Cotton Wool.



ence. They are a deep Green, shadow'd with a Murry, not much unlike the color of some Doves Necks, they take their Food humming or flying, feeding on the exuberant Moistures of sweet odoriferous Leaves and Flowers. I have frequently seen them in many parts of the West Indies, but never observed them to have any Musical Air, but a loud Note to Admiration, crying Chur, Chur, Chur, &c. which at the distance of half a mile is plainly heard; their Eggs, of which they produce three or four young, at a time, not unlike small white Pease: they continue between the Tropiques the whole year round, as I have observed at Berbadoes and Jamaica, but I am informed, that in the more Northern parts of America they sleep the whole Winter; at Berbadoes the Jews curiously skin these little Birds, filling them with fine Sand, and perfuming their Feathers, they are sent into Europe as pretty Delicacies for Ladies, who hang them at their Breasts and Girdles.

There are in Carolina great numbers of Fire Flies, who carry their Lanthorns in their Tails in dark Nights, flying through the Air, shining like Sparks of Fire, enlightning it with their Golden Spangles. I have seen a larger sort at Jamaica, which Dr. Heylin in his Cosmography, enumerates amongst the Rarities and Wonders of Hispaniola, an Island under the King of Spain, distant between 20 and 30 Leagues from Jamaica: These have two Lights above their Eyes, and a third in their Tails: in dark nights they shine like Candles; for which I have often at a distance mistaken them, supposeing them to have been the Lights of some adjacent Plantation; and in this I have not been the first that has been so deceived. Amongst large Orange Trees in the Night, I have seen many of those Flies, whose Lights have appeared like hanging Candles, or pendant Flambeaus, which



amidst the Leaves and ripe Fruit yielded a Light truly glorious to behold ; with 3 of these included in a Glass Bottle, in a very dark night I have read very small Characters : When they are kill'd, their Igneous or Luminous Matter does not immediately, (till half an hour, or an hour after their Deaths) extinguish.

As the Earth, the Air &c. are enrich'd and replenished with the Blessings of the Most High, the Seas and Rivers of the same bounty equally participate in the Variety of excellent and wholsom Fish which it produces, viz. Sturgeon, of whose Sounds Iceing glass, of whose Roes Caviare are made: Mullet, a delicious sweet Fish, of whose Roes or Spawn Botargo is made: Whale, Salmon, Trouts, Bass, Drum, Cat-fish, whose Head and glaring Eyes resemble a Cat ; it's esteem'd a very good Fish ; it hath a sharp thorny Bone on its Back, which strikes at such as endeavour to take it: which by Seamen is held venemous: yet I saw one of our Seamen, the back of whose Hand was pierced with it, yet no poysonous Symptoms of Inflammation or Rancor appear'd on the Wound, which quickly heal'd, that I concluded it was either false, or that of this Fish there were more kinds than one: Plaice, Eels, Crabs, Prawns twice as large as ours in England: Oysters of an Oblong or Oval Form; their number inexhaustible; a man may easily gather more a day than he can well eat in a year; some of which are margitiforous, yielding bright round Oriental Pearl. The Tortois, more commonly call'd by our West Indians the Turtle, are of three sorts, the Hawks-Bill, whose Shell is that which we call the Turtle or Tortois Shell; the Green Turtle, whose shell being thin is little regarded: but its Flesh is more esteemed than the Hawks-bill Tortois: The Loggerhead Turtle, or Tortois has neither good Shell or Flesh, so is little

mindred or regarded. They are a sort of creatures which live both on Land and Water. In the day usually keeping the Sea, swimming on the surface of the Water, in fair Weather delighting to expose themselves to the Sun, oftentimes falling asleep, lying, as I have seen several times, without any Motion on the Waters, till disturbed by the approach of some Ship or Boat, being quick of hearing, they dive away. In the night they often come ashore to feed and lay their Eggs in the sand, which once covered, they leave to the Influence of the Sun, which in due time produces her young ones, which dig their Passage out of the sand immediately making their way towards the Water. At this season, when they most usually come ashore, which is in April, May and June, the Seamen or Turtlers, at some convenient distance watch their opportunity, getting between them and the Sea, turn them on their Backs, from whence they are unable ever to rise, by which means the Seamen or Turtlers sometimes turn 40 or 50 in a night, some of 2, 3, 400 weight: If they are far distant from the Harbor or Market to which they design to bring them, they kill, cutting them to pieces, which Salted they Barrel: This is the way of killing at the Caymana's, an Island lying to the Leeward of Jamaica.

Turtle, Barrel'd and Salted, if well conditioned, is worth from 18 to 25 shillings the Barrel. If near their Market or Harbor they bring them in Sloops alive, and afterwards keep them in Crauls, which is a particular place of Salt Water of Depth and Room for them to swim in, pallisado'd or staked, in round above the Waters surface, where, upon occasion they take them out, and kill them, and cutting them to pieces, sell their Flesh for two pence or three pence the pound: the Belly, which they call the Callope of the Turtle, pepper'd and



salted, or roasted and baked, is an excellent Dish, much esteemed by our Nation in the West Indies : the rest of the Flesh boil'd, makes as good and nourishing Broath, as the best Capon in England, especially if some of the Eggs are mixt with it ; they are some white, and others of a yellow or golden Colour, in largeness not exceeding a Walnut, wrapt in a thin Skin or Membrane, sweet in Taste, nourishing and wholesome : and of this property, that they never grow hard by boiling : the Liver is black, it freely opens and purges the Body : if little of it be eaten, it dies the Excrement of a deep black Colour : The Fat in Color inclines to a Sea Green ; in Taste it's sweet and luscious, equalling, if not surpassing the best Marrow, if freely eaten it deeply stains the Urine of its Color : It's of a very penetrating piercing quality, highly comended in strains and aches : Of it the Turtlers oftentimes make an Oyl, which in Lamps burns much brighter and sweeter than common Lamp or Train Oyl. In general, the Flesh is commended for a good Antiscorbutique and an Antivenereal Diet ; many in the former, and some that have been far gone in Consumptions, with the constant use alone of this Diet, have been thoroughly recovered and cured in 3 or 4 months. It hath 3 Hearts, by thin Pellicules only separated, which has caused some to Philosophize on its Amphibious Nature, alluding to those participating and assimilating Qualities which it has to the rest of the Universe, it swimming like a Fish, laying Eggs like a Fowl, and feeding on Grass like an Ox. This I am assured of, that after it's cut to pieces, it retains a sensation of Life three times longer than any known Creature in the Creation : Before they kill them they are laid on their Backs, where hopeless of Relief as if sensible of



their future Condition, for some hours they mourn out their Funerals, the Tears plentifully flowing from their Eyes, accompanied with passionate sobs and sighs, in my Judgement nothing more like than such who are surrounded and overwhelmed with Troubles. Cares and Grievs, which raises in strangers both Pity and Compassion. Compleatly six hours after the Butcher has cut them up and into pieces, mangled their Bodies, I have seen the Callope when going to be seasoned, with pieces of their Flesh ready to cut into Steakes, vehemently contract with great Reluctancy rise against the Knife, and sometimes the whole Mass of Flesh in a visible Tremulation and Concussion, to him who first sees it seems strange and admirable. There is farther to the Southward of Carolina, especially about the Shoars and Rivers of Hispaniola and Cuba a Fish in Nature something like the former, call'd the Manacy or Sea-Cow, of an extraordinary Bigness, sometimes of 1000 pound weight: It feeds on the Banks and Shoar sides on the grassy Herbage, like a Tortoise; but that which is more wonderful of this Creature is, that she gives her Young Ones suck from her Duggs; she is headed like a Cow, of a green Colour, her Flesh esteemed by some the most delicate in the World, sweeter than the tenderest Veal, sold at Jamaica, where it's sometimes bought for 6d. the pound: It hath a stone in the Head which is a gallant Remedy against the Pains and Dolours of the Stone; so are the Bones of its Body to provoke Urine, when pulveriz'd and exhibited in convenient Liquors. Its Skin makes excellent Whips for Horses, if prudently us'd, which are very serviceable and lasting; with one of these Manaty strapps I have seen a Bar of Iron cut and dented: It cuts so severe

and deep, that by the Public Authority at Jamaica, Masters are forbidden and prohibited with it to strike their White Servants.

There is in the mouth of their Rivers, or in the Lakes near the Sea, a Creature well known in the West Indies, call'd the Alligator or Crocodile, whose Scaly Back is impenetrable, refusing a Musquet Bullet, to pierce it, but under the Belly, that or an Arrow finds an easie Passage, to destroy it; it lives both on Land and Water, being a voracious greedy Creature, devouring whatever it seizes on, Man only excepted, which on the Land it has not the courage to attack, except when asleep or by surprize: In the Water it's more dangerous; it sometimes grows to a great length, from 16 to 20 foot, having a long mouth, beset with sharp keen Teeth; the Body when full grown as large as a Horse, declining towards the Tail; it's slow in motion, and having no Joynt in the Vertebraes or Back Bone, but with its whole length is unable to turn, which renders it the less mischievous; yet Nature by Instinct has given most Creatures timely caution to avoid them by their strong Musky Smell, which at a considerable distance is perceivable, which the poor Cattle for their own Preservation make good use of: their Flesh cuts very white; the young ones are eatable; the Flesh of the older smells so strong of Musk that it nauseates: their Stones at least so called, are commended for a rich, lasting perfume.

Mettals or Minerals I know not of any, yet it's supposed and generally believed, that the Apalatean Mountains which lie far up within the Land, yields Ore both of Gold and Silver, that the Spaniards in their running searches of this Country saw it, but had not time to open them, or at least, for the present were

unwilling to make any farther Discovery till their Mines of Peru and Mexico were exhausted, or as others, that they were politically fearful that if the Riches of the Country should be exposed, it would be an allure to encourage a Foreign Invader. Poverty preserving, Riches oftentimes the cause that Property is lost, usurped and invaded ; but whether it be this or that reason time will dis-cover.

The Natives of the Country are from time immemorial, ab Origine Indians, of a deep Chesnut Colour, their Hair black and straight, tied various ways, sometimes oyl'd and painted, stuck through with Feathers for Ornament or Gallantry ; their Eyes black and sparkling, little or no Hair on their Chins, well limb'd and featured, painting their Faces with different Figures of a red or Sanguine Colour, whether for Beauty or to render themselves formidable to their Enemies I could not learn. They are excellent Hunters ; their Weapons the Bow and Arrow, made of a Read, pointed with sharp stones, or Fish Bones ; their Cloathing Skins of the Bear or Deer, the Skin drest after their Country Fashion.

Manufactures, or Arts amongst them I have heard of none, only little Baskets, made of painted Reeds and Leather drest sometimes with black and red Chequers coloured. In Medicine, or the Nature of Simples, some have an exquisite knowledge ; and in the cure of Scorbutick, Venereal, and Malignant Distempers are admirable : In all External Diseases they suck the part affected with many Incantations, Philtres and Charms : In Amorous Intrigues they are excellent either to procure Love or Hatred : They are not very forward in Discovery of their secrets, which by long Experience are religiously transmitted and conveyed in



a continued Line from one Generation to another, for which those skill'd in this Faculty are held in great Veneration and Esteem. Their Religion chiefly consists in the Adoration of the Sun and Moon: At the Appearance of the New Moon I have observed them with open extended Arms then folded, with inclined Bodies, to make their Adorations with much Ardency and Passion: They are divided into many Divisions or Nations, Govern'd by Reguli, or Petty Princes, which our English call Cacicoes: Their Diet is of Fish, Flesh, and Fowl, with Indian Maiz or Corn; their Drink Water, yet Lovers of the Spirits of Wine and Sugar. They have hitherto lived in good Correspondence and Amity with the English, who by their just and equitable Carriage have extreamly winn'd and obliged them; Justice being exactly and impartially administred, prevents Jealousies, and Maintains between them a good Understanding, that the Neighbouring Indians are very kind, and serviceable, doing our Nation such Civilities and good Turns as lie in their Power.

This Country was first discover'd by Sir Sebastian Cabott, by the order, and at the expence of King Henry VII., from which Discovery our successive Princes have held their Claim in pursuance to which in the seventeenth Year of His Majesties Reign it was granted unto his Grace George Duke of Albemarle, unto the Right Honourable Edward Earl of Clarendon, William Earl of Craven, John Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley now Earl of Shaftsbury, to the Honourable Sir George Carterett, and Sir John Colleton, Knights and Baronetts, to Sir William Berkeley Knight, with a full and plenipotentary Power to Colonize, Enact Laws, Execute Justice, &c. The Regalia's of Premier Soverignty only reserved. The Principal place where

the English are now settled lies scituated on a point of Land about two Leagues from the Sea, between Ashly and Cooper Rivers, so named in Honour to the Right Honourable the Earl of Shafts-bury, a great Patron to the Affairs of Carolina. The place called Charles Town, by an express Order from the Lord Proprietors in the Year One thousand Six hundred and eighty, their Ordnance and Ammunition being removed thither from Old Charles Town, which lay about a League higher from Ashly River, both for its strength and Commerce. It's very commodiously scituated from many other Navigable Rivers that lie near it on which the Planters are seated; by the Advantage of Creeks, which have a Communication from one great River to another; at the Tide or Ebb the Planters may bring their Commodities to the Town as to the Common Market and Magazine both for Trade and Shipping.

The Town is regularly laid out into large and capacious streets, which to Buildings is a great Ornament and Beauty. In it they have reserved convenient places for Building of a Church, Town House and other Publick Structures, an Artillery Ground for the Exercise of their Militia, and Wharfs for the Convenience of their Trade and Shipping. At our being there was judged in the Country a 1000 or 1200 Souls; but the great Numbers of Families from England, Ireland, Berbadoes, Jamaica, and the Caribees, which daily Transport themselves thither, have more than doubled that Number. The Commodities of the Country as yet proper for England, are Furrs and Cedar: For Berbadoes, Jamaica and the Caribee Islands, Provisions, Pitch, Tarr and Clapboard, for which they have in exchange Sugar, Rumm, Melasses and Ginger, &c. such things



which are proper and requisite for the Planter to be stored with before he leaves England for his better Settlement there at his Arrival, chiefly Servants: All kind of Iron Work for the clearing of Land, pruning of Vines, for the Kitchen and for Building, Commodities proper for the Merchant to Transport thither for his Advantage. Cloathing of all kinds, both Linnen and Woollen, Hats, Stockins, Shoes; all kind of Ammunition, Guns, Fowling-pieces, Powder, Match, Bullet, Nails, Locks and Knives; all Haberdashers Ware: Cordage and Sails for Shipping, Spirits and Spices, viz. Cloves, Nutmegs and Cinnamon. Finally, to encourage People to Transport themselves thither, the Lord Proprietors give unto all Masters and Mistresses of Families to their Children, Men-servants and Maid-servants if above Sixteen Years of age, fifty to all such under forty Acres of Land to be held for ever, annually paying a Penny an Acre to the Lord Proprietors to commence in 2 Years after it's survey'd.

Sir, Thus in an Abstract I have given you the Draught of this excellent Country, beginning with its Name, Scituation, &c. and when first settled, regularly proceeding to the Nature of the Soil, Quality of the Air, the Diseases and Longevity of its Inhabitants, the Rarity of its produce in Trees, Fruits, Roots and Herbs, Beasts, Fish, Fowl and Insects; the Nature and Disposition of the Indians, the Progress the English have made since their first Settlement, what Commodities they abound with, in what defective, in all which from the Truth I have never swerved nor varied: Indeed in some other



things I might have farther enlarged and expatiated, which I shall refer to a Personal Discourse, when I have the Honour to wait upon you again ; in the mean time I am

Your humble Servant,

T. A.

FINIS.

A NEW  
DESCRIPTION  
OF THAT  
FERTILE AND PLEASANT  
**Province of Carolina:**  
WITH A BRIEF ACCOUNT  
OF ITS  
DISCOVERY AND SETTLING,  
AND  
THE GOVERNMENT

THEREOF TO THIS TIME.

*With several Remarkable Passsages of Divine Providence  
during my time.*

---

By JOHN ARCHDALE:  
*Late Governor of the same.*

---

LONDON—Printed in 1707.

## TO THE COURTEOUS READER.

---

I FIND myself under an Obligation to Apologize for some part of the ensuing Treatise that seems to Applaud my own Actions in *Carolina*; but I desire you to consider, that a sort of Necessity draws from me this Description and Account of the Government of *Carolina*: And I can assure the Reader that I write not to Introduce myself again, as Governor of the same; (yet my Opinion and Judgment is, that a Moderate, Discreet Man from *England*, which now yields many a one, such a one that hath not been concerned in their Broils, would be their most suitable Governor, when it shall seem proper to remove the present one) For I believe no Entreaties could move me to it; but I write to give the Country itself its true and due Praise, and to clear myself from the Malitious Aspersions of some that feared my antient Treatment of the People would revive their Affections to me, to ruin their present Designs; for the moderate Party Politickly spreading a Report, as they thought that I was coming over to redress the Grievancies of the Country; they thereupon contrived an Act to Fetter my Power, by putting it out of my Power for two Years to call a New Assembly; but no such Act being approved on here, their Fetters would have proved like *Sampson's* Cords, easily broken asunder; But this may be of great Benefit to many Readers, in Considering the mutability of humane Affairs; That I, that had so large Powers from the Lord's Proprietors, which I entirely exercised for the Peoples Good; should as an ungrateful requital be so Cramp'd, by their Power, as not to be capable to redress their Solid Grievances; For I believe, I may at the least truly declare, that not one Inhabitant in four, would have Signed that Excluding Act, which had the Queen declared Null and Void would have speedily ruined that Colony: For it was not the meer Mob that was against it, like that generally in the *Scotland* Plantations, but the most considerable Persons of the place that removed with free Estates into those Parts; so I shall dismiss my Reader, to the Consideration of what I have written, with this further remark of the Learned and pious Bishop of *Salisbury*, who in his Travels observed that the most Fertile Soile of *Italy*, under the Ecclesiastical State of *Rome*, was by ill Government so Decay'd; that the *Grisons* Country the naturally far more Barren, yet became more Fruitful and Pleasant than the other, through the free and generous Government Administered in that State: Who in his Travels was no Disgrace to the Protestant Clergy of the Church of *England*, and whose Moderation hath appeared unto all Men. That the Reader may see the Moderation of the Sober, moderate Church-men and Dissenters in a free Assembly, I think good to Conclude with the Clause of a Militia Act, which runs thus;

*And whereas there be several Inhabitants call'd Quakers, who upon a Conscientious Principle of Religion, cannot bear Arms, and because in all other Civil Matters they have been Persons Obedient to Government, and very ready to disburse their Monies in other necessary and public Duties. Be it therefore Enacted, that all such whom the present Governor John Archdale Esq.; shall judge that they refuse to bear Arms on a Conscientious Principle of Religion only shall by a Certificate from him be Excused.*



A  
DESCRIPTION  
OF  
CAROLINA.

BEFORE I give a particular Description of *Carolina*, I think good to make some general Remarks on the Divine Providence of the Almighty and Omniscient God, who hath so stated the various scenes of Nature, as to accomplish his Divine Will in fulfilling whatsoever stands recorded in the Holy Scriptures: Now that scene of Divine Providence which seems to be appropriated to our Times, is the dawning Day for the Accomplishment of various Promises, not only that Christ should be given as *a Light to enlighten the Gentiles, and to be the Glory of his People Israel*, which Glory is not revealed, as hinted at be *Paul, Rom. 10.* But again, *Psal. 2.* That God will give unto Christ *the Heathen for his Inheritance, and the utmost Parts of the Earth for his Possession*: as also, *Isa.* that *the Earth shall be filled with the Knowledge of God, as the Waters covers the Seas*; and *Dan. 12.* that *many should run too and fro, and knowledge should be increased in the Earth*; with many more Promises of the like Nature, which plainly intimates, That the Mysteries of the Kingdom of God are to be unsealed in the last Days: To the which that

Excellent Poet *Davies* intimates in Queen *Elizabeth's* Days, in these Words,

O thou bright Morning Star, thou rising Sun,  
Who in these latter Days hast brought to light,  
Those Mysteries that since the World begun,  
Lay hid in Darkness and eternal Night.

And because in all the Grand scenes of Divine Providence, some preparative Stroakes are generally made as Preludiums to what is quickly to ensue, the Art of Printing, to beget Knowledge, hath been reserved for this last Age, as also the Compass to convey Knowledge, as aforesaid; and the Discovery of Gunpowder hath been another Medium to subdue Millions of People that lay under a Barbarous and Brutish State: As for Example, in *Mexico*, where was a Temple dedicated to their chief Idol larger than *Paul's* whose Walls were two Inches thick bespread or beplaster'd with Human Blood, sacrificed to their Deities or Devils: And although I cannot excuse the Barbarity or Cruelty of the *Spaniards* towards them, yet, as on God's part, it was justly brought upon them, who thereby gave them their own Blood to drink, in lieu of what they had most barbarously shed of their Neighbours. And indeed, Providence seemed wholly to design this Bloody Work for the *Spanish* Nation, and not for the *English*, who in their Natures, are not so Cruel as the other; witness the Inquisition, its Cruelty being most established in *Spain*. And, courteous Readers, I shall give you some farther Eminent Remark hereupon, and especially in the first Settlement of *Carolina*, where the Hand of God was eminently seen in thinning the *Indians*, to make room for the *English*. As for Example in *Carolina*, in which were seated two Potent Nations, called the *Wes-*

*toes*, and *Sarannah*, which contained many Thousands, who broke out into an unusual Civil War, and thereby reduced themselves into a small Number, and the *Wes-toes*, the more Cruel of the two, were at the last forced quite out of that Province, and the *Sarannahs* continued good Friends and useful Neighbours to the *English*. But again, it at other times pleased Almighty God to send unusual Sicknesses amongst them, as the Small-pox, &c. to lessen their Numbers; so that the *English*, in Comparison to the *Spaniard*, have but little *Indian* Blood to answer for. Now the *English* at first settling in small Numbers, there seemed a necessity of thinning the barbarous *Indian* Nations; and therefore since our Cruelty is not the Instrument thereof, it pleases God to send, as I may say, an *Assyrian* Angel to do it himself. Yet will I not totally excuse the *English*, as being wholly clear of the Blood of the *Indians* in some Respects, which I at present pass over. But surely we are all much to blame, in being so negligent of executing the proper Means for their Soul's Salvation, which being a gradual Work, the introducing a Civilized State would be a good and stable Preparatory for the Gospel State; even as the Divine Hand of Providence prepared us by the *Romans*, as all Historians mention that relate to us. I shall farther add one late more immediate Example of God's more immediate Hand, in making a Consumption upon some *Indian* Nations in *North Carolina*, and that was in my time at the River *Pemlicoe*, and some Nations adjoining: This is a late Settlement, began about eight Years since. When I was in the *North* about eleven Years since, I was told then of a great Mortality that fell upon the *Pemlicoe Indians*; as also, that a Nation of *Indians* called the *Coranine*, a bloody and barbarous People, were most of them cut off by a



neighbouring Nation : Upon which I said, that it seemed to me as if God had an Intention speedily to plant an *English* Settlement thereabouts ; which accordingly fell out in two or three Years, although at that time not one Family was there. I shall make one more general Remark, before I come more particularly to treat of *Carolina* : and that is, in short, to give an Account how this vast Continent of *America* was discovered, that lay hid for many Ages. The Reader may reasonably guess, that before the Knowledge of the Compass, Navigation was very imperfect, as also the Knowledge of the Globe ; yea, so Ignorant was former Ages that one *Vigilius*, a Gentleman of *Italy*, was adjudged a Heretick, for affirming Antipodes ; so that the Providential seeming Casualty of Human Affairs, appeared rather to make the Discovery, than any premeditated Skill or Art of Man. For, according to the best Accounts, a certain *Spanish* Colonel sailing into the West Ocean towards the Isles of the *Canaries*, by a forcible continued Easterly Wind, the Vessel was drove upon the *American* Coast ; but being ill provided for such a Voyage, by Hunger and Hardship all died save the Pilot and three or four more ; who afterwards returning back, came to the *Maderaes*, and after that died at the House of one *Christopher Colon* or *Columbus*, born in the Territory of *Genoe* ; and the said Pilot left him his Maps and Cards of his Voyage ; and he himself having some Skill in Navigation, was much affected with the Relation, and was very desirous to procure the same, but wanting of Wealth to get Shipping, and Protection of some *European* King to secure the Riches he should come to possess, he first made an Essay by his Brother *Barthar Colon* upon *Henry VIIth* of *England*, at that time a Wealthy Prince ; but he rejected the same as a Fantastical Matter, as the Discoveries

both of Nature and Grace are at the first looked upon by most; for the Beginning of the Reformation quickly succeeding this grand Discovery of the New World, was as lightly esteemed at first in the Spiritual Appearance of it. But *Colon* or *Columbus*, not wholly daunted at the first Repulse, was introduced into the Favour of the King and Queen of *Spain*, about *Anno* 1490, the same Year that the *Moors* lost *Granada*, their principal Hold at that time in *Spain*; and then he was furnished with three Ships, and departed for the *Indies* in the Kalends of *September*, 1491, and fell in first with the *Canaries*, not long before discovered, *Anno*, 1405, inhabited by savage and wild People; he sailed thence 33 Days, and discovering no Land, his Men mutined, and designed to cast him into the Sea; but he with gentle Words and large Promises, appeased their Fury, and putting them off some few Days, he discovered Land, so long looked for; and so by Degrees settled the same, as Historians at large declare.

Now, candid Readers, I have introduced you into the general Discovery and *Spanish* Settlement in *America*; I shall now proceed to show unto you the Occasion of the Settlement of *Carolina*, that lies in the very Heart of *America*.

I have hinted how *Henry* the VIIth having lost the Opportunity of possessing the *Spanish* Mines of *Mexico*, the Fame of which raised up the Spirit of the said *Henry* to get some share of this *American* Continent; he therefore about *Anno* 1500, furnished Sr. *Sebastian Cabot* with Shipping, who was born at *Bristol*, though his Father was a *Venetian*, to make a farther Discovery, who fell upon the Coast of *Florida*, and having sailed along the Continent a considerable way *North-East*, returned again, but made no Settlement that



time. And although the *English* were the first Discoverers of this Noble and Fertile Tract of Land, from the Latitude of 25 to  $36\frac{1}{2}$ ; yet was no Colony planted in it, till several of the *English* Nobility stir'd up with a pious Zeal, to propagate the Christian Religion; and with a Heroick Spirit, to enlarge the Dominion of the Crown of *England*, procured a large and ample Patent, with extraordinary Privileges both for themselves, and the People that would Plant and Inhabit them, as appears by the Patent of *Cha. II.* unto *George* Duke of *Albermarle*, *Edw. E.* of *Clarendon*, *W.* Earl of *Craven*, *John* Lord *Berkley*, *Anthony* Lord *Ashley*, now *E.* of *Shaftsbury*, *Sir George Cartwright*, after that Lord *Cartwright*, and *Sir John Colleton* Knight and Baronet, who were thereby created the true and absolute Lords and Proprietors of the Province of *Carolina*, and the same to be held *in Capite* of the Crown of *England*, to Them, their Heirs, and Assigns for ever; which said Province begins at the Latitude of 29 Degrees, and reaches to the Latitude of  $36\frac{1}{2}$  *North* Latitude; and the said Province is to enjoy all the Privileges and Liberties that the Bishop of *Durham*, hath or ought to have. These aforesaid Lords therefore enter'd into a joynt Stock, and fitted out Ships on their own proper Charges, to transport People and Cattle thither, to the value of about 12000 Pounds, besides several Thousands laid out by single Proprietors, to advance the Colony; and all their Rents and Incomes have since the Beginning been also expended in public Services.

I shall now come to the particular Description of the Country itself, and that not by a bare Report, but as an Eye Witness. I have hinted how *Sir Sebastian Cabot*, at the Charge of *Henry VIIth*, first discovered that part of the Continent which is called *Florida*, which begins



at Cape *Florida*, in the Latitude of about 25, and runs *North East* to  $36\frac{1}{2}$ . Now *Carolina*, only is its *Northern* Part, viz: from 29 Degrees to  $36\frac{1}{2}$ , and is indeed the very Center of the habitable Part of the *Northern* Hemisphere; for taking it to be Habitable from the Equinoc-tial to 64 Degrees, the Centre of *Carolina* lies in about 32, which is about the Middle of 64, lying parallel with the Land of *Canaan*, and may be called the Temperate Zone comparatively, as not being pestered with the violent Heats of the more Southern Colonies, or the extream and violent Colds of the more Northern Settle-ments. Its Production doth answer the Title of *Florida*, *quia regio est Florida*, being indeed a most Fertile and flourishing Region, every thing generally growing there, that will grow in any Parts of *Europe*, there being already many sorts of Fruits, as Apples, Pears, Apri-cocks, Nectarines, &c. and they that once tast of them, will for the future despise the watry and washee Tast of them here in *England*; yet doth their Plenty make them the Food of the Swine of their Country; for from a Stone in 4 or 5 Years they come to be bearing Trees of a considerable Bigness; likewise all sorts of Grain, as Weat, Barly, Peas, &c. and I have measured some Wheat Ears 7 or 8 of my Inches long. It produces also Rice the best of the known World, being a Com-modity for Returns home; as also Pitch, Tar, Buck, Dear, Bear-Skins, and Furs, though the last not so good as the Northern ones: And it hath already such Plenty of Provisions, as Beef, Pork, &c. that it furnishes in a great measure, *Barbadoes*, *Jamaica*, &c. The Natives are somewhat Tawny, occasioned, in a great measure, by Oyling their Skins, and by the naked Raies of the Sun: They are generally very streight Bodied, and Comely in person, and quick of Apprehension; and I

believe, if managed discreetly, may many of them, in a few Years, become Civilized, and then very capable of the Gospel of Christ. The *Indians* are great Hunters, and thereby not only serviceable to kill Dear, &c. for to procure Skins for Trade with us, but those that live in Country Plantations procure of them the whole Dear's Flesh, and will bring it many Miles for the Value of about six Pence, and a wild Turkey of 40 Pound, for the Value of two Pence *Engl.* Value. There is also vast Quantities or Numbers of wild Ducks, Geese, Teal, and exceeding Plenty of Fish, &c. and that which makes Provisions so cheap, is the shortness of the Winter, where they need not to mowe for Winter Fodder, and so can employ their Hands in raising other Commodities as aforesaid. It is a Pity they should be farther thined with Civil Quarrels, being their Service is in all Respects so necessary: And indeed I myself their late Governour, prevented the Ruin and Destruction of two small Nations. The Manner of it was thus;

Two *Indians* in drinking Rum Quarrelled, and the one of these presently kill'd the other; his Wife being by, immediately, with a Knife, smote off his Testicles, so as they hung only by a Skin: He was pursued by my Order, I happening to be then that way, being about 16 Miles from Town, and was taken in a Swamp, and immediately sent to Custody into *Charles Town*; and the Nation to whom the slain *Indian* belonged unto, was acquainted with it, whose King, &c. came to the Governour, and desired Justice on that *Indian*; some of the *Indian's* Friends would have brought him off, as is usual; But nothing but his Life would satisfie that Nation, so he was ordered to be shot by the Kinsman of the murdered *Indian*. Before he went to Execution, the *Indian* King to whom he belonged, told him, that since he was



to die, he would have him to die like a Man: and farther he said, I have often forwarn'd you of Rum, and now you must lose your Life for not taking my Council; I hope it will be a warning to others.—When he came to the Tree, he desired not to be tyed to it, but to stand loose, for, said he, I will not budge or stir when he shoots me; so he was shot in the Head, and immediately died. Now the Manner of the *Indians* in such Cases, is to War one Nation against the other to revenge any Blood-shed; and being ordered Satisfaction this way, no war ensued.

The Soil of *Carolina* near the Sea is of a Sandy Mould, appearing ten times more Barren than it proves to be: Yea, there is vast Quantities of Vines in many Parts on the Sea Shore, bearing multitude of Grapes, where one would wonder they should get Nourishment. But farther distant up in the Country, the Land is more mixed with a blackish Mould, and its Foundation generally Clay, good for Bricks, it is beautified with odoriferous and fragrant Woods, pleasantly green all the year; as the Pine, Cedar, and Cypress, insomuch, that out of *Charles-Town* for three or four Miles, called the *Broadway*, is so delightful a Road\* and Walk of a great breadth, so pleasantly Green, that I believe no Prince in *Europe*, by all their Art, can make so pleasant a Sight for the whole Year; in short, its natural Fertility and easy Manurement, is apt to make the People incline to Sloth; for should they be as industrious as the Northern Colonies, Riches would flow in upon them: And I am satisfied, that a Person with 500*l.* discreetly laid out in Old *England*, and again prudently managed in *Carolina*, shall in a few Years live in as much Plentry, yea more,

\* Now Meeting Street.



than a Man of 300*l.* a Year in *England*; and if he continue careful, not Covetous, shall increase to great Wealth as many there already are Witnesses, and many more might have been, if Luxury and Intemperance had not ended their Days. As to the Air, it is serene and exceeding pleasant, and very healthy in its natural Temperament, as the first Planters experienced, seldom having any raging Sickness but what has been brought from the Southern Colonies, by Vessels coming to the Town, as the late Sickness may intimate; to the which may be added the Intemperance of too many: What may properly belong to the Country, is to have some gentle touches of the Agues and Feavers in *July* and *August*, especially to New-comers. It hath a Winter Season to beget a new Spring, and thereby the Air is made more suitable to our Temperament. I was there, at twice, five Years, and had no Sickness, but what once I got by a careless violent Cold: And indeed, by my Observation, I did perceive that the Feaver and Agues were generally gotten by carelessness in their Cloathing, or Intemperance as aforesaid. What I write is not to encourage any to depend upon Natural Causes, but prudently to use them with an eye to God, the Great Lord of the Universe and Disposer of all Humane Affairs; yet hath he justly and wisely decreed, that such as every one sows, such shall he reap.

*Carolina* also abounds with many Rivers, now found to be more navigable than was at first believed; and it was prudently contrived, not to settle at the first, on the most Navigable, but on *Ashley* and *Cooper* River, whose Entrance is not so bold as others, nor having so much Water; so that the Enemy and Pirates, &c. have been dishearten'd from disturbing the Settlement until this Year where they were repuls'd with the loss of about

Three Hundred Men. The New Settlers have now great Advantage over the first Planters, being they can be furnished with Stocks of Cattle and Corn, &c. at reasonable Rates: As also, they have an Advantage in seating a new River with *Indians* at Peace with them, and the choice of the best Land; And I understand two New Rivers are about seating one in the South, the other in the North; and if it please God that the Union succeed with *Scotland*, the principal place in *Carolina*, call'd *Port-Royal* may be seated with *English* and *Scots* in a considerable Body, because 'tis a bold Port, and also a Frontier upon the *Spaniard* at *Augustine*, which is but a weak Settlement, about 200 Miles to the South West of it. The *Scots* did about 20 Years since, begin a Settlement with about 10 Families, but were disposs'd by the *Spaniards*. O how might the *Scots*, that go now as *Switzers* to serve Foreign Nations, how might they, I say, strengthen our *American* Colonies, and increase the Trade of *Great Britain*, and enrich themselves both at Home and Abroad. I could plainly demonstrate what a great Advantage *Carolina* is to the Trade of *England*, by consuming our Commodities from Home thither, and by bringing great Duties to the Crown, by importing Goods or Commodities thence: For *Charles Town* Trades near 1000 Miles into the *Continent*; but to enlarge thereupon, would too much enlarge this Treatise: But notwithstanding all the Discouragements it hath met withal, which are many, yet 17 Ships this Year, came laden from *Carolina* with Rice, Skins, Pitch and Tar, &c. in the *Virginia* Fleet, besides several straggling ones: And indeed *London* would be much too big, if it were only the Metropolis of *England*, if it were not also the Metropolis of *America*. I wish I could write as large in the Propagation of the Christian Reli-



gion amongst the Natives, but the Gospel Spirit is not yet so gloriously arisen, as to seek them more than theirs, as *Paul* intimates: Yet I believe, that in time Trade may be a means, to introduce the Gospel both in the *West* and *East Indies*, with some other Discoveries that are a breaking forth in Nature, as the Time and Season for it ripens.

And, Christian Reader, since I am fallen upon this Subject which is one great Branch of the Patent, as hinted before, which was to propagate the Gospel of Christ; I doubt there hath been a great defect therein, so shall give a brief Essay to answer that pious Clause aforesaid.

And because the Patent is granted for Propagating the Gospel; and the most peculiar Obligation consequentially thereby lies on those of the church of *England*: I shall in the first place give my advice to them on the *Indians* behalf: I do therefore adjudge it reasonable and just that a certain Portion of Land be set apart for that use, to be added to proportionable Income from the Society *ad Propagandum fidem*, to be prudently administered to Missionaries who have Zeal, Courage and Fidelity for such a Work; and that the Government, on no pretence of their Service in the Plantations, divert them from their Commissionated Service; for if so, a lazy Spirit will quickly lay hold on them, and Flesh and Blood will plead for ease; for Hardships and Perils will attend them: Wherefore, as Christ said, 'Tis prudent first to count the Cost before they enter into the Work. In the next place, I advice, that such Missionaries be well skill'd in Chymistry, and some natural Genius to seek the Virtues of Herbs, Metts and Minerals, &c. and the prudent Conduct of such Skill, might introduce them into a good Opinion with the



*Indians* ; and let them understand we were once such as themselves, but were by a Noble Heroick Nation reduc'd into a Civiliz'd State ; and then had the Gospel preach'd to us by Just and Holy Men who sought our salvation with the hazard of their Lives, &c. Let them have sent with them (and if not far from the *English*) some *English* Children, to introduce familiarity with the *Indian* Children, that so they may be brought to learn Letters, &c.

I remember I have read in History of a *Welsh* Prince, who advised his Sons, ready to Quarrel about the Division of his poor and barren Lands, that they should sail to the Westward, where they would meet better Land, and Territories large enough for all their Posterities.

Now I may apply this spiritually ; If Christian Magistrates and Ministers would forsake their Quarrels for poor Trifles and barren Opinions, and encourage each other to plant substantial practical Truths, they may now sail East or West, and meet with people to make a plentiful harvest on, both in a Temporal an Spiritual respect, which should redound more to their Glory and Advantage, than all the Unchristian Quarrels and Practices to promote unfruitful Doctrines that are computed to have shed more Christian Blood than all the Heathenish Ten Persecutions. I hope the Reader will not think this mixture of Spirituals with Temporals improper or impertinent, since the original Design of the Patent was the Promotion of both.

I shall next proceed to treat of the Government, as granted by King *Charles* II. to the Eight Lords Proprietors aforesaid, who again by common consent, center'd that Power in Four of them, *viz*, in a Palatine of their own election, and Three more who were impower'd to

execute the whole Powers of the Charter, and is call'd a Palatines Court ; their Deputies in *Carolina* executing the same, as from their Principals they are directed: For each Proprietor hath his Deputy there. The Charter generally as in other Charters, agrees in Royal Privileges and Powers ; but especially at that time it had an Over-plus Power to grant Liberty of Conscience, altho' at Home was a hot persecuting Time ; as also a Power to create a nobility ; yet not to have the same Titles as here in *England*, and therefore they are there by Patent under the Great Seal of the Provinces, called Landgraves and Cassocks, in lieu of Earls and Lords : and are by their Titles to sit with the Lords Proprietors, Deputies, and together make an Upper-House and Lower-House, being elected by the People ; and these Landgraves are to have four Baronies annex'd to their Dignities, of 6000 Acres each Barony ; and the Cassocks two Baronies, of 3000 each ; and not to be separated away by sale of any part ; only they have power to let out a third part for three Lives, for to raise Portions for younger children. And many Dissenters went over, Men of Estates, as also many whom the variety of Fortune had engaged to seek their Fortunes, in hopes of better success in this New World : And truly such as better improved their new Stock of Wit, generally had no cause to repent of their Transplantation into this Fertile and pleasant Land ; Yet had they at first many Difficulties and dangers to cope withal, and therefore the most desperate Fortunes first ventured over to break the Ice, which being generally the Ill-livers of the pretended Church-men, altho' the Proprietors commissioned one Colonel *West* their Governour, a moderate, just, pious and valiant person ; yet having a Council of the loose principled Men, they grew very unruly, that they had like to have Ruin'd the Colony,



by Abusing the *Indians*, whom in prudence they ought to have obliged in the highest degree, and so brought an *Indian War* on the Country, like that in the first planting of *Virginia*, in which several were cut off; but the Governour by his Manly prudence, at last, extinguish'd the same in a great measure, and so left Matters a little better settled to Governour *Jos. Morton*, in whose time General *Blake's* Brother, with many Dissenters came to *Carolina*; which *Blake* being a wise and prudent person, of an heroick temper of Spirit, strengthen'd the Hands of sober inclined People, and kept under the First Loose and Extravagant Spirit; but not being able to extinguish it, it broke out and got head in the Government of *James Colleton* of *Barbadoes*, and Sir *Peter Colleton's* Brother: And this Party grew so strong among the Common People, that they chose Members to oppose whatsoever the Governour requested; insomuch that they would not settle the Militia Act, tho' their own security (in a Natural way) depended on it. And the grounds of their farther strength was by reason of the Discontent the People lay under about the Tenure of their Lands, and payment of their Quiettrance which was afterwards rectified by me. After *Colleton* succeeded one — *Smyth*, a wise, sober and moderate and well-living Man, who grew so uneasy in the Government, by reason that he could not satisfy the People in their Demands, that he writ over *An. 1694*, "That it was impossible to settle the Country, except a Proprietor himself was sent over with full power to Heal their Grievances, &c." And now let the Reader consider, that the ensuing Account hath been for several Years suppress'd by me, least I should thereby seem to exalt my own Actions; but there is now at this Juncture some more than ordinary Cause so to publish the same as follows: For the Proprietors took Governour *Smyth's* Letter under Consi-



deration ; and the Lord *Ashly* was pitch'd upon by all the Lords who was then in the Country, a person every way qualified for so good a Work ; who desired to be excused, because his Father's Affairs lay upon his Hands ; upon which Account I was then pitch'd upon, and intrusted with large and Ample powers ; and when I arriv'd, I found all Matters in great Confusion, and every faction apply'd themselves to me in hopes of Relief ; I appeased them with kind and gentle Words, and so soon as possible call'd an Assembly to whom I spoke as follows :

*Friends and Representatives of the People.*

THE Occasion of my coming hither I think good to acquaint you withal at this time, that so you may the better judge of the Proprietors and my own Intentions in this my Undertaking.

There came various Letters from *Carolina*, signifying the great Discontent and Division the People lay under ; but especially one dated presently after Sir *Peter Colleton's* Death ; wherein it was intimated, That except a Proprietor himself came over, it was impossible to reconcile the Matter, so the Lord *Ashly* was nominated, but his Affairs not permitting, the Matter was moved to me ; and after a very mature Deliberation, and by the Encouragements of several *Carolinians* then in *England* my Going was concluded on ; and they have endued with a considerable Power of Trust, and I hope I shall faithfully and impartially answer their Expectations : And I believe I may appeal to your Serious Rational Observations, whether I have not already so allay'd your Heats, as that the distinguishing Titles thereof are so much wither'd away ; and I hope this Meeting with you, will wholly extinguish them, so that a solid Settlement of this hopeful Colony will ensue, and by so doing, your Posterity will bless God for so Happy a Conjunction ; and the Proprietors will not repent of this Great Trust reposed in me, nor myself repine at the many Dangers and Hardships I have undergone to my arrival hither : And now you have heard of the Proprietors Intention of sending me hither, I doubt not but the Peoples Intentions of Choosing you were much of the same nature ; I advise you therefore, to proceed soberly and mildly in this weighty Concern ; and I question not but we shall answer you in all Things that are reasonable and honourable for

us to do : And now Friends, I have given you the reason of my Coming, I shall give you the Reasons of my calling you so soon, which was the consideration of my own Mortality, and that such a considerable Trust might not expire useless to you ; for my Commission is recorded to be no President of future Governours : as also a late Petition of many of the Inhabitants of this Colony : I hope the consideration hereof will quicken and direct you into a speedy conclusion of what the People may reasonably expect from you ; and I hope the God of Peace will prosper your Counsels herein.

*The Assembly reply ;*

To the Right Honourable *John Archdale*, Esq. Governour  
of *Carolina*.

*May it please your Honour,*

WE heartily thank Almighty God for your Honours Safe Arrival in this Place, after so many Difficulties and Dangers, mention'd in your Honours most acceptable Speech ; and we return your Honour our most sincere and hearty Thanks for the Progress your Honour has already made since your Arrival towards the Settlement of this Place ; but our most particular Thanks again are for your candid Expressions, and the good Favour and great Kindness shewn to the People of this Place ; and do assure your Honour, That we on our Parts, will heartily endeavour to give our utmost Assistance to the attaining your so much desired Wish, the perfect Settlement of this Place, which will redound to the Honour of the Lords Proprietors and the Happiness of the People.

But, Courteous Readers, after this fair Blossomin Season to produce Peace and Tranquility to the Country, some endeavour'd to sow Seed of Contention, thereby to nip the same ; insomuch that they sat six Weeks under Civil Broils and Heats ; but at length re-collecting their Minds into a cooler Frame of Spirit, my Patience was a great means to overcome them ; so that in the conclusion all Matters ended amicably, as the Address intimates.

*The Humble Address and Recognition of Thanks by the Commons assembled in Charles-Town. To the Right Honourable the True and Absolute Lord's Proprietors; and to the Right Honourable John Archdale, Esq.; Governour of Carolina.*

*Right Honourable,*

WE the Representatives of the Free-men of *South Carolina*, being profoundly sensible of your most gracious Inclinations, Condescensions and Honours in Commissionating and Investing the Right Honourable *John Archdale* Esq.; Governour, with such large and ample Powers for the encouragement of us the Inhabitants of this your Colony, which was so highly necessary conducing to the Peopling, Settling and Safety thereof, most humbly Recognize, and most sincerely and cordially thank your Lordships for the same, and for the Remission of some Arrears of Rents, the undeniable manifestation of your Honours Parental care of us, living in this your Colony: And we the Commons now assembled, no less sensible of the prudent, industrious and indefatigable Care and Management of the said Powers by the Right Honourable *John Archdale* Esq.; do in most humble manner acknowledge the same; and that we doubt not but that the Fruits thereof will be the Peace, Welfare, and Tranquility, Plenty, Prosperity and Safety of this Colony and the People therein; For the Acts of grace you have so seasonably condescended unto, have removed all former Doubts, Jealousies, and Discouragements of us the People; and hath laid a firm and sure Foundation on which may be erected a most glorious Superstructure to the Honour of the Lords Proprietors and you our Governour, which we do, and forever shall be obliged most heartily to own as the Production of the Wisdom, Discretion, Patience and Labour of the Honourable *John Archdale*, Esq.; our Governour; of whom we the Commons request, to return this our Recognition of Thanks to your Lordships; and we shall humbly pray, &c.

JONATHAN AMERY, *Speaker.*



But it may be queried by the Reader, But what was the Effect of all this ? To the which I answer, That the Fame hereof quickly spread itself to all the *American* Plantations, as several Letters I receiv'd intimated ; among which I shall mention one from *New-England*, from a single person of Note there, on the behalf of a Number of People, and is as follows, bearing Date from *Ipswich*, 26th June, 1696.

*Great Sir,*

'I had not thus boldly intruded my self in this manner, or been the least Interruption to your public Cares, but that I am commanded to do this Service for a considerable Number of Householders, that purpose (with the Favour of God's Providence, and your Honours Countenance) to Transport themselves into *South Carolina*: For we having heard the Fame of *South Carolina*, as it now stands Circumstanced with the honour of a true *English* Government, with Virtuous and Discreet Men Ministers in it, who now design the promoting of the Gospel for the increase of Virtue amongst the Inhabitants, as well as outward Trade and Business ; and considering, that the well Peopling of that Southern Colony of the *English* Government or Monarchy may, with God's blessing, be a Bulwark (a) to all the Northern Parts, and a Means to gain all the Lands to Cape *Florida* (which are ours by the first Discovery of Sir *Sebastian Cabot*, at the Charges of K. *Henry VII*, to the Crown of *England* ; and being credibly inform'd of the Soil and Climate, promise, that all adventurers,

(a) It is remarkable that the *French* Landed at *Sewee*, where many of *New-England* Men were planted, and beat off the *French*, and killed many of them, and this was Ten Years after this Letter.

with the Favour of God, shall reap Recompence as to Temporal Blessings.

‘Sir, These and such like Reasons have encouraged and produced the aforesaid Resolutions: And farther, Sir, your great Character doth embolden us, for it is such as may be said, without Flattery, as was said of *Titus Vespasian*, that noble *Roman*, *Ad gratificandum assiduus Notura fuit*: So praying for blessings upon your honourable Person, Concerns and Province, I rest, &c.’

Now that the Reader may plainly discern, that the Almighty and Omnicient God, takes cognizance of Human Affairs, and directs them by a wise and prudent Chain of Causes, I shall relate some remarkable Passages that happened quickly after that I entered upon the Government, which was the 17th of *August*, 1695. There is a Nation of *Indians* call’d the *Yammasees*, who formerly liv’d under the *Spanish* Government, but now live under the *English*, about 80 Miles from *Charles-Town*. Some of these *Indians* going a Hunting, about 200 miles to the Southward, met with some *Spanish Indians* that lived about *Sancta Maria*, not far from *Augustine*, the Seat of the *Spanish* Government; and taking them Prisoners, brought them Home, designing to sell them for Slaves to *Barbadoes* or *Jamaica* as was usual; but I understanding thereof, sent for their King, and ordered him to bring these *Indians* with him to *Charles-Town*, which accordingly he did: There were three Men and one Woman; they could speak *Spanish*, and I had a *Jew* for an Interpreter, so upon examination I found they profess’d the Christian Religion as the Papists do; upon which I thought in a most peculiar manner, they ought to be freed from Slavery; and thereupon order’d the King to carry them to *Augustine*,



to the *Spanish* Governour with a Letter, desiring an Answer relating to the receipt of them; who having receiv'd them; sent me the following Letter: So far as relates to this Affair, I copy it forth:

*Sir,*

'I have receiv'd your Letter with the four *Indians*, three Men and one Woman, being the same that were taken from a Town of my Jurisdiction; and I do promise, If ever it lies in my power to manifest a reciprocal Kindness, I shall gratefully do the same; and shall always keep and observe a good Correspondence and Friendship with you, as our Sovereigns at home, being in strict Alliance and Amity expect from us, &c.'

After this he sends over an *Indian* civilized King, with a fresh return of Thanks, but complains of Mischief done to his *Indians* by some of our *Indians*; to the which I answered, 'That I knew nothing before, and did not approve of it; and found, on Enquiry, that the *Indians* call'd the *Apalachicoles* had kill'd three *Church-cates*, and were conducted by White men; but I have taken care for the future, by sending an Express to command them, that they do not commit any Acts of Hostility on any of your *Indians*, and do expect there be given the like orders to your Vassals: And surely you cannot be ignorant of the Temper of the *Indians* as well as myself, how hard a matter it is to keep them from taking Revenge for any injuries received, to the third and fourth Generation; making personal Murders oftentimes National Quarrels; notwithstanding which, I hope to prevent it for the future, being that they live in great Obedience to our Government; but if they should happen to do any small Mischief to each other, I desire you not to send any more White Persons



amongst them, least you thereby make the Quarrel National. I do assure you that nothing shall be wanting on my part to maintain a good Amity and Friendship with you, and I doubt not of the same on your part: So wishing you health and long Life;

‘I am

‘your assured Friend

*Jo. Archdale.*

Now to show the Providence of God in the Affair of transmitting the *Indians* back, as I intimated before, it happened that some few Months after that an *English* Vessel from *Jamaica*, bound to *Carolina*, was Cast-away to the Southward of *Augustine* amongst barbarous *Indians*, who in a wonderful manner were preserv'd from being murdered by them, so that they came at last to *Augustine*; and when the *Spanish* Governour heard of it he sent them all things necessary, retaliating my Kindness in a peculiar manner. Two of these were call'd *Robert Barrow* and *Edward Wardell*, public Friends, Men of great Zeal, Piety and Integrity.

Another eminent Remark of Divine Providence was as follows: One Colonel *Bull* of the Council, trading with some Northern *Indians* near *Cape Fear*, told me that those *Indians* desired to come under the *English* Government; the Reason of it was this; some of our Neighbouring *Indians* had killed and taken Prisoners some of the *Cape Fear Indians*, and sold them for Slaves; and complaining to the Traders, they told them, that if they came under the *English* Government the other *Indians* durst not touch them: So they came, and I told them that I had heard of their barbarous Cruelty on Men Cast-away on their Coast; I therefore now expected a Civil Usage from them, to any that

should unhappily be Cast-away on their Coast ; which they promised, and faithfully perform'd, as follows.

For about Six Weeks after a Vessel coming from *New-England* with 52 Passangers, was Cast-away at *Cape Fear*, who finding that it was a Place of savage *Indians*, despaired of their Lives ; but being willing to preserve Life as long as they could, they Trench'd themselves in, and took some provisions with them : The *Indians* quickly came down, and with Signs of Friendship, laying their Hands on their Breasts, invited them out, and shew'd them Fish and Corn : But they, not willing to trust them, kept still in their Retrenchment till Famine began to creep on, and then, like the *Samaritan* Lepers, in the 2 *Kings*, vii. Chap. who being like to perish with Famine, ventured to go to the Host that besieged *Samaria*, as at large is there related : So these being ready to starve, some few ventured out to the *Indians*, who received them kindly and furnish'd them with Provisions for the rest, who thereby being embolden'd, came all forth, and were by the King at his Town well treated ; and four or five of them came to Town, and I procured a Vessel to fetch them to *Charles-Town*, which is about 100 Miles from thence, and all came safe but one Child that died. But now I shall wind up and conclude the Scene of my Government, having settled the Country ; I returned for *England*, being not sent for Home, and left one *Blake* Governour, who became a Proprietor, and continued to manage Matters to the general satisfaction of the Country for about four or five Years, but then dying, the Lords Deputies chose one Capt. *More* for Governour, until the Lords should Commissionate one from *England*. In his time began the War with *France* and *Spain* ; and being a Man of an active spirit, and hoping to advance



his Fortune by an Exploit against *Augustine*, without any Orders from *England*; he proposed his Mind to an Assembly, who condescending thereunto, he march'd against *Augustine*, took the Town, the Inhabitants, with their Substance, flying into the Castle, and they having no Mortars could not bring them to yield; but the Besieged sending to the *Havanah*, a *Spanish* Town on *Cuba*, procured 4 or 5 small Men of War, who came to their Relief before Major *Daniel* could come from *Jamaica*, who was by Governour *More* sent thither for Mortars; and so *More* was forc'd to break off the Siege, and return to *Charles-Town*; which vast expence upon such an Infant Colony, was ready to make a Mutiny among the People; for many Vessels had been press'd to that Service, which being burned by the Governour's Order, because they should not fall into the *Spaniards* Hands, the Masters demanded Satisfaction; and an Assembly being call'd, great Debates and Divisions arose, which, like a Flame, grew greater and greater: In the midst of which, Sir *Nath. Johnson's* Commission came for to be Governour, who by a Chimical Wit, Zeal and Art, transmuted or turn'd this Civil Difference into a Religious Controversy; and so setting up a Standard for those call'd the High-Church, ventured at all to exclude all the Dissenters out of the Assembly, as being those principally that were for a strict Examination into the Grounds and Causes of the Miscarriage of the *Augustine* Expedition; which was, after great Complaints of undue Elections, and by the great Subtily and Activity of the Governing Party, carry'd by one Man, to exclude the Dissenters by a more severe and rigid Exclusion, than the Occasional Bill design'd here in *England*, to the which I refer the Reader; and was afterwards, by the general Complaint of that Party to the House of Lords,



adjudged so severe and illegal, as to cause an Address to the Queen, which she was pleased to accept, and to command the Lord's Proprietors not to suffer the same to be further put in execution, and declared the same Law void and null; as also an Act to establish the Church of *England* there, and a Maintenance for the same; which, notwithstanding its splendid gloss, savour'd so much of a persecuting Spirit, and of a haughty Dominion over the Clergy it self, that it was declared void and null by the Queen's gracious and prudent Command to the Lord's Proprietors; which I hope will so far allay and cool that fiery Spirit in the Government, as to make room for a more peaceable and healing Spirit, when any one not concerned in the Broils arrives, Commissionated for that End and Purpose: And indeed they have been fairly alarum'd by the late Assault upon them by the *French* and *Spaniards*: in which affair Sir *Nath. Johnson*, as a Souldier, behaved himself with great Courage and Prudence; but that is not a sufficient Qualification to reconcile intestine Heats and Broils, which, like a Canker, will enfeeble the vital Spirit of that Colony; for the united strength of those term'd the High-Church and Dissenters, are little enough to secure the same: And beside, the immediate Hand of God by the late Pestilential Feaver, is not only a sign of His Displeasure against their Unchristian Broils, but it hath thereby so weakened and thined the People, that it seems impossible for the High-Church to be a sufficient strength to support that Colony, it being the Southern Bulwark of our *American* Colonies on that vast Continent.

It is stupendious to consider, how passionate and preposterous Zeal, not only vails but stupifies, oftentimes, the Rational Powers: For cannot Dissenters Kill Wolves and Bears, &c. as well as Church-men; as also Fell Trees

and Clear Ground for Plantations, and be as capable of defending the same generally as well as the other. Surely *Pennsylvania* can bear witness to what I write; and *Carolina* falls in no way short of it in its Natural Production to the industrious Planter: But our late Accounts intimate the Repeal of the two former Laws, which may be a preparatory Stroak, if discreetly managed, to allay their Annimosities. I would not be supposed to justify every step of the Dissenters which they made in these Broils, being their first Agent seem'd not a Person suitably qualified to Represent their State here, not that he wanted Wit but Temper, which is a necessary Qualification in Persons in that Employ: But it is not my Business to Open the Sore, but to Heal it, if possible; and now we are like to have some considerable Numbers of *Scotch Britains*, Men generally Ingenious and Industrious, who are like to disperse themselves into our *American Colonies*, who are a People generally zealous for Liberty and Property, and will by no Perswasion be attracted to any part where their Native Rights are invaded, or who rather expect an Enlargement thereof in a Wilderness Country, than an Abridgement thereof, as that prudent Management of *William Penn* hath established in his Colony, and was first intended for *Carolina*, in a Scheme laid by the Earl of *Shaftsbury*, &c. but secretly over-thrown by that Party of High pretended Church-men that have lain Latent from the Beginning, as I have before intimated. Our Colonies are very weak at this time, but the Divine Hand of Providence seems to be ready to supply our Deficiency by a Union, contrary to that Spirit that hath wrought the Dissentions in *Carolina*. Now if the Reader be so curious as to Query how I did so speedily and solidly Heal their former Annimosities, as I have before intimated, I shall



gratify his Curiosity herein : My Power was very large, yet did I not wholly exclude the High-Church Party at that time out of the essential Part of the Government, but mix'd two Moderate Church-men to one High-Church Man in the Council, whereby the Ballance of Government was preserved peaceable and quiet in my Time, and so left and continued several Years, whilst *Blake* whom I left Governour lived. And the said *Blake*, though accounted in some measure a Dissenter, yet did he procure the Act for about 150*l.* a Year to be settled on a Church of *England* Ministry, which continues to this Day. And indeed in such mixture as I have intimated, the High-Church Party was useful to me, being Men of good parts, very useful under Good conduct; their Advice being by me found very necessary in many particular Cases.

But to proceed farther in this Treatise, the Design whereof is to make *Carolina* a suitable Bulwark to our *American* Colonies: I can farther plainly demonstrate, that False Measures have been taken for that Infant Settlement that should have been strengthened with Encouraging Terms, for all sorts of Dissenters to enjoy Liberty and Property in whatsoever their laborious Hands improves from a Wilderness possess'd by Wolves, Bears and barbarous *Indians*, who ruin'd themselves by intestine Wars, to make room for us; and we more Foolish, because more Capacitated by Human Policy to strengthen our selves against a Foreign Power, yet suffer a sort of Transmigration of the Wolfish and Brutish Nature to enter our Spirits, to make ourselves a Prey to our Enemies, that seek to Revenge themselves for our foolish Attempt and unchristian Usage on the Inhabitants of *Augustine*, where the Plunder of their Churches or places of Worship intailed on it such a Curse, that



much of it fell into the Hands of the *French*, the Ship being taken near *England*, and the whole Design of it for Negroe Slaves, ruin'd thereby.

Now as some there seeks to set up a sort of an arbitrary Vestry to inhance the Labours of the Industrious Dissenters, who have enough to do to maintain their own Ministry; how unreasonable doth it look to force Maintenance from them, by excluding their true Representatives, to compass so foolish a Design in the most untimely Season that possible could happen to that Country; for one of the most considerable amongst them writ over to his Friend in *England*, That without that Excluding Act they could not have obtain'd the other. Now as the Civil Power doth endanger it self by grasping at more than its Essential Right can justly and reasonably claim; so the High-Church by over-topping its Power in too great a Severity, in forsaking the Golden Rule of doing as they would be done by, may so weaken the Foundation of the Ecclesiastical and Civil State of that Country, that so they may both sink into a ruinous condition by losing their main Sinews and Strength, which (as *Solomon* saith) lies in the multitude of its Inhabitants: And this I am satisfied in, and have some experimental reason for what I say, That if the extraordinary Fertility and Pleasantness of the Country had not been an alluring and binding obligation to most Dissenters there settled, they had left the High-Church to have been a Prey to the Wolves and Bears, *Indians* and Foreign Enemies: But I hope now they will see their Folly, and embarque in one common Interest, and thereby they will reap the Benefit of our union at Home, by Numbers of Industrious and Ingenious *Scottish Britains*, who otherwise will never come to be imposed upon by a High-flown Church Party; and without such a Strength I see

not how it can stand long, let the Government be in any Hand whatsoever. I have discharged my Conscience in a Christian and truly *British* Spirit, that desires nothing more than the Spiritual and Temporal Welfare of *Great Britain*; and hope, pray for, and cordially desire the long and prosperous Reign of our most gracious QUEEN, whom the Divine Hand of Providence hath placed on the Throne, to be as a Nursing Mother to all Her Children committed to Her Charge. And I also heartily wish that the inferior Sphere of the Royal Power committed in Trust to the Lords Proprietors of that Province of *Carolina*, may Govern it with a measure of the same Prudence, Justice, and truly Christian Affection, as She more immediately Governs the entire Body of Her Subjects.

Now since the Reader may expect the Names of the present Proprietors, they are as follows;

JOHN Lord GRANVILLE, Palatine.

John Lord Cartwright,  
William Lord Craven,  
Maurice Ashley, Brother  
and Heir Apparent to  
the Earl of Shaftsbury,

Sir John Colleton, Baronet,  
Jos. Blake, Esq;  
Nicholas Trott, Esq;  
John Archdale.

I am now willing to give my Advice to heal up the present Breaches, Rents and Divisions amongst the Inhabitants of *Carolina*; and I am somewhat encouraged hereunto by the good success I formerly had amongst them, as I have at large declared; and I have Reasons, both Spiritual and Temporal for this my Admonition. On a Spiritual Account I would have all to consider that their Lot is fallen, by the Divine Hand of Providence, into the *American Canaan*, a Land that flows with Milk



and Honey; which ought to be a pressing Engagement on every Soul to bless God in a most peculiar manner for those Temporal Enjoyments that many other Nations and Provinces want the Benefit of: And let them consider, that although God had some peculiar Love for the Children of *Israel*, yet they held their Land of *Canaan* on Terms and Conditions; and their disobedience and Neglect of God's Laws, occasion'd God to remove them out of the same; Yet before He utterly Excluded them, he brought various Corporeal Punishments upon them to alarum them to Repentance, and a forsaking of the Evil of their Ways: And when His Chastising Hand did not prevail upon them, their Utter Destruction immediately ensued. Now it is apparent that God has brought a Pestilential Fever amongst the *Carolínians*, that hath swept away many in the Town, which ought to stir up a Consideration in the Remainder of them, that it is His infinite mercy that hath spared them: Let them also consider that God hath shaken the Rod of his Power over their Heads by a Foreign Enemy, which many Times is an occasion to Unite, not only to a General and Common Defence, but also it creates an Affection where before it was wanting: But if upon these and the like Considerations, no Good Effect ensue thereby, it is then a dangerous Prognostick that more severe Judgments will follow. It is recorded in the Holy Scriptures; *O that Men would consider their Ways*; for the Act of Consideration is much in the Soul's power; and is one of the Powers being purchased by Christ for us after the Fall, whereby a Capacity comes to be awaken'd in us, to choose the Good and refuse the Evil; and I believe the Soul never exerts it, but that some secret Concomitancy of God's Power is witness'd thereby to the benefit of every such Soul. One thing



more I would lay to their Consideration, That by intestine Quarrels and Annimosities they loose the essential Badge of Christianity, and so can never be Instruments to propagate the Gospel amongst the Heathen, who will never be won to the Gospel of Peace by the Banner War. Much more might be said on a Spiritual Account, but this at present may suffice: I shall now proceed on a Temporal Account, to reason them into a Unity; and that is first, because their own Lives will be more comfortable under a friendly Conversation; and, secondly, it will encourage others to come amongst them, which will wonderfully strengthen the Colony and increase Trade, and make their Lands of considerable more value.

Now, although I seem principally to lay the Occasional Quarrel on the High-Church Party, yet I would not be so understood as to clear the other in all respects; for in Heats and Annimosities many unjustifiable Words and Actions may arise and be committed: I am satisfied whence the original Spring of them arose, but because they are generally dead on both sides, Christian Charity forbids the raking into their Ashes; and 't is pity their Quarrels should survive them: They shall never find Fewel here, so far as lies in my power. I can truly say, I write with Love and Affection to the whole Body of the Inhabitants; having been so considerable a Promoter of Planting the said Colony with Men of Piety and Industry, and that brought considerable Free Estates with them, insomuch that were they all removed again out of it, whose coming thither I occasion'd, it would be a thin Colony: I could name them, but forbear at present: So I am not for excluding any, as I have hinted; for I am satisfied that it is possible to Reconcile and Unite them, there being a great President of

Wisdom and Christian Affection in the Governing Powers at Home in the Union of 2 Kingdoms into 1 Common Interest, for the Strength and Advantage of both, and Disadvantage of our Enemies Abroad and at Home: And I can truly say, I rejoyce to see effected what for some Years I have so much desired, and so earnestly endeavoured, in my Capacity and Station, upon all argumentative Occasions; which have not been a few, and with considerable Persons of eminent Quality, who have not despised the Reasons I have given for the same.

Since I wrote the former Part I understand that Silk is come unto great Improvement, some Families making 40 or 50%. a Year and their Plantation Work not neglected; little Negro Children being serviceable in Feeding the Silk-worms, &c. And I must give Sir *Nathaniel Johnson* the Reputation of being the principal Promoter hereof, and of a considerable Vineyard also. I further understand, That the Inhabitants work up the Silk into Druggets mix'd with Wool, which is an excellent Wear for that Country: And so advantageously is the Country scituated, that there is little or no need of Providing Fodder for Cattle in the Winter; so that a Cow is grased near as cheap as a Sheep here in *England*; but all these Natural Conveniences and Benefits may be blasted through imprudent Discouragement, that may hinder fresh Inhabitants from coming amongst them. O what need is there of Wisdom to nourish up an Infant Colony with all sorts of industrious People, as is in a great measure presided in *Pennsylvania*, &c. and was the Beginning of the *Carolina* Settlement; and I hope will be the future Method to strengthen the same: And hereby the Design of the Patent will be truly answer'd which is the Propagation of the Gospel of Peace among



the Heathen, and the Enlargement of the Dominion of the Crown of *England*, which is now already spread many Hundred of Miles to the Westward; which Design was ingeniously laid and begun by Governour *Blake* in his Time. And that discreet Preparative Stroak of Trade that he begun, which if prudently and wisely managed, it may beget such a Familiarity and Interest with the *Indians*, as in time to introduce a Spiritual Benefit by the Preaching of the Gospel of Christ among them: For God oftentimes by the wise adapting of Temporal Causes, makes them to co-operate for the production of Spiritual Benefits: And so the *Romans* by a Civil Taxation fulfilled the Prophecy of Christ to be Born at *Bethlehem*; and this Taxation figured forth Christ who was to lay a Spiritual Yoke on all the Sons of Men: For Taxation imports the Yoke of the Civil Power upon them.

Since what I have before written the former mention'd Acts that gave so bad an Influence on the *Carolina* Affairs, are both of them actually repealed, so that once more there seems to present it self a fair Prospect for an amiable Reconciliation, if true and proper Method be pursued for the encouragement of all that desire to retire into this New World to lead an industrious, quiet, godly and sober Life, without that disquieting and turmoiling Care which naturally attends most *European* Affairs. Now, candid Readers, I shall conclude with what our blessed Lord and Saviour hath intimated, *That the Harvest is great and the Labourers few*, and that it is our duty to *pray to the Lord of the Harvest that he would be pleased to send more Labourers into the Harvest*, Matth. 9. Chap, 37, 38. Ver. Now these Labourers seems to me to be such as will take Pains and venture their Lives for to propagate the Gospel of Christ



amongst these barbarous Nations, which God, as I have before intimated, hath discovered in this last age of the World: And it is my Belief, that Christ will intercede to have this Prayer answered, and will incline the Hearts of many to begin this glorious Work.

FINIS.

**PROPOSALS**

BY

**MR. PETER PURRY,**

**OF NEWFCHATEL,**

**FOR**

**ENCOURAGEMENT**

**OF SUCH**

**Swiss Protestants**

**AS SHOULD AGREE TO ACCOMPANY HIM TO CAROLINA, TO SETTLE  
A NEW COLONY.**

**AND, ALSO,**

**A DESCRIPTION**

**OF THE**

**PROVINCE OF SOUTH CAROLINA,**

**DRAWN UP AT CHARLES-TOWN,**

**IN SEPTEMBER, 1731.**

## PROPOSALS, ETC.

THERE are only two Methods, *viz.* one for Persons to go as Servants, the other to settle on their own Account.

1. Those who are desirous to go as Servants must be Carpenters, Vine Planters, Husbandmen, or good Labourers.

2. They must be such as are not very poor, but in a Condition to carry with them what is sufficient to support their common necessity.

3. They must have at least 3 or 4 good Shirts, and a Suit of Clothes each.

4. They are to have each for their Wages 100 Livres yearly, which make 50 Crowns of the Money of *Newf-chatel* in *Swisserland*, but their Wages are not to commence till the Day of their arrival in *Carolina*.

5. Expert Carpenters shall have suitable Encouragement.

6. The time of their Contract shall be 3 Years, reckoning from the Day of their arrival in that Country.

7. They shall be supply'd in part of their Wages with Money to come from *Swisserland*, till they imbark for *Carolina*.

8. Their Wages shall be paid them regularly at the end of every Year; for security whereof they shall have the Fruits of their Labour, and generally all that can be procured for them, whether Moveables or Immoveables.

9. Victuals and Lodgings from the Day of their Im-



barkation shall not be put to their Account, nor their Passage by Sea.

10. They shall have What Money they want advanced during the Term of their Service in part of their Wages to buy Linnen, Clothes and all other Necessaries.

11. If they happen to fall Sick they shall be lodg'd and nourished Gratis, but their wages shall not go on during their Illness, or that they are not able to Work.

12. They shall serve after Recovery, the time they had lost during their Sickness.

13. What goes to pay Physicians or Surgeons, shall be put to their Accompt.

As to those who go to settle on their own Account, they must have at least 50 Crowns each, because their Passage by Sea, and Victuals, will cost from 20 to 25 Crowns, and the rest of the Money shall go to procure divers things which will be absolutely necessary for the Voyage.

A DESCRIPTION  
OF THE  
PROVINCE OF SOUTH CAROLINA,

DRAWN UP AT CHARLES-TOWN,

IN SEPTEMBER, 1731.

THE King of *Great Britain* having about 3 Years ago purchased this Province of the Lords Proprietors thereof, has since studied to make Agriculture, Commerce and Navigation, flourish in it. His Majesty immediately nominated Col. *Johnson* a worthy Gentleman, to be Governour thereof; who, at his Departure for *Carolina*, receiv'd divers Orders and Instructions, but in particular was directed instantly to mark out Places in a proper Situation for building Eleven Towns, *viz.*

Two on the River *Alatamaha*,

Two on the River *Savanna*,

One at the Head of the River *Poupon*,

Two at the River *Santee*,

One at the River *Watery*,

One at the Black River,

One at the River *Wacomau*, and

One at the River *Pedee*.

The District of each of these Towns is to contain the Extent of 20,000 Acres of Land, formed into a

Square, bordering on the River, and divided into shares of 50 Acres for each Man, Woman, or Child, of one Family; which may be augmented as the Planters shall be in a Condition to cultivate a larger Quantity of Ground, and every one of them shall have an equal Share of the better and worse Lands, and also the same right on the River.

Each Town shall be formed into a Parish, the Extent whereof shall be about 6 miles round the Town on the same side of the River; and as soon as a Parish shall contain 100 Masters of Families, they may send Two Members to the Assembly of the Province, and enjoy the same Privilege as the other Parishes of the Province.

The Ground of each Town shall be speedily marked out, and shall belong in common to all the inhabitants, till it shall be distributed in particular Shares to each of them. There are to be 300 Acres of Land near the Town which shall be common for ever, without being charged with Rent, and no Person shall, by Virtue of any former Grant, take Possession of any Land within 6 Miles of each Town.

The rent shall be 4s *per Ann.* for every 100 Acres, except that for the first 10 Years the Lands shall be entirely free, and all those that shall settle in the said Towns shall enjoy the same advantages.

His Majesty further grants to every *European* Servant, whether Man or Woman, 50 Acres of Land free of all Rents for 10 Years, which shall be distributed to them after having served their Master for the Time agreed on.

In consequence of these Instructions M. *Purry* was permitted to go and chuse on the Borders of the River *Savanna* Land proper to build the Town of *Purrysburg* upon; and having found it such as he wish'd, the Gov-



ernment made him a grant thereof under the Great Seal of the Province, dated the 1st of *Sept.* 1731. and at the same Time publish'd throughout the whole Country a Prohibition to all sorts of persons to go and settle on the said Land, which is already called the *Swiss Quarter*.

In order to facilitate the Execution of this Undertaking in the best manner, the Assembly granted to the said M. *Purry* 400*l.* *Sterling*, and Provisions sufficient for the Maintenance of 300 Persons for one Year, provided they be all Persons of good Repute, and *Swiss* Protestants, and that they come to *Carolina* within the Space of 2 Years.

The River *Savanna* is one of the finest in all *Carolina*, the Water good, and stored with excellent Fish: It is about the Largeness of the *Rhyne*, and there are 2 Forts already built upon it, one of which call'd *Pallacholaas*, is 100 Miles from the Mouth thereof, and the other call'd *Savanna* Town, about 300 Miles; and altho' there is not usually above 20 Men to garrison the first Fort, and about 40 in the other yet the *Indians* have never dared to attack them.

The Town of *Purrysburg* will be situated 30 Miles from the Sea, and about 7 miles from the highest Tide; the Land about it is a most delightful Plain, and the greatest part very good Soil, especially for Pasturage, and the rest proper enough for some productions. It was formerly call'd the great *Yamassee Port*, and is esteem'd by the Inhabitants of the Province the best place in all *Carolina*, altho' never yet possessed but by the *Indians*, who were driven from thence by the *English* several Years ago, and have never dared to return thither. All sorts of Trees and Plants will grow there, as well as can be wish'd, particularly Vines, Wheat,

Barley, Oats, Pease, Beans, Hemp, Flax, Cotton, Tobacco, Indico, Olives, Orange trees and Citron trees, as also White Mulberry trees for feeding of Silkworms. The Lands will not be difficult to clear, because there is neither stones nor brambles, but only great Trees, which do not grow very thick; so that more Land may be clear'd there in one Week, than could be done in *Switzerland* in a Month. The custom of the Country is, that after having cut down these great trees, they leave the Stumps for 4 or 5 Years to rot, and afterwards easily root them up, in order to manure the Land.

'Tis very certain, that *Carolina* is in general an excellent Country. 'Tis true, the Ground is sandy; but then 't is a sand impregnated with Salt and Niter, so that it brings forth in great Abundance, as the like Soil does in divers parts of *Europe*: But what is more particular to *Carolina*, there are a great Number of Plantations that have been continually Cultivated for near 60 Years, which yet still produce great plenty without ever being Manured by the least Dung, for they never lay any on their Grounds: The Planter only turns up the superficies of the Earth, and all that he plants and sows therein quickly grows and matures: Those who understand ever so little of Agriculture will be obliged to own, that if the Lands in *Europe* were not constantly manured, their strength would be so exhausted, that at length the Crops would not pay for the Seed. But a Man who shall have a little Land in *Carolina*, and who is not willing to work above 2 or 3 Hours a Day, may very easily live there.

Another consideration deserving our Notice is the Progress of the first Colonies, their sudden Advancement, the Riches of the present Inhabitants, the great Number of public Expences for which they provide,



the great Trade which they carry on at present, and lastly their Misfortunes and Losses ; which are entirely repair'd. The better to comprehend these matters, we shall only make the following observations. 1. That there were no people in *Carolina* till about 60 Years ago, for the *English* did not begin to send any thither till the Year 1670. 2. That they had at first very fatal Beginnings, being afflicted with Sickesses, and even the Plague, which daily diminish'd the Number of the people. 3. That cruel, destructive Divisions sprung up among them. 4. That they had a very bad Government under the Lords Proprietors, being almost without Order, Justice or Discipline. 5. That at a certain time the pyrates interrupted their Trade and Navigation. 6. That they have often had great Droughts. 7. That a terrible Fire consumed almost all *Charles Town*. 8. That they have been at great Expence in Fortifications, public Edifices, Churches, &c. 9. That they have often sustain'd long Wars with the *French*, *Spaniards*, and particularly with the *Indians*, who once united altogether to destroy the whole province. 10. That notwithstanding all these misfortunes, the People of *Carolina*, except those who give themselves up to Debauchery, are all rich, either in Slaves, Furniture, Cloaths, Plate, Jewels, or other Merchandizes, but especially in Cattle ; which shews the Goodness of the Country they inhabit.

The most part of those who came first thither were very poor and miserable ; Several of those who are most considerable went but as Servants.

The Trade of *Carolina* is now so considerable, that of late Years there has sail'd from thence Annually above 200 Ships, laden with merchandizes of the Growth of the Country, besides 3 Ships of War, which



they commonly have for the Security of the Commerce, and last Winter they had constantly 5, the least of which had above 100 Men on Board. It appears by the Customhouse Entries from *March* 1730, to *March* 1731, that there sailed within that time from *Charles-Town* 207 Ships most of them for *England*, which carried among other Goods 41957 Barrels of Rice about 500 Pound Weight per Barrel, 10754 Barrels of Pitch, 2063 of Tar, and 1159 of Turpentine; of Deer Skins 300 Casks, containing 8 or 900 each; besides a vast Quantity of *Indian* Corn, Pease, Beans, &c. Beef, Pork, and other salted Flesh, Beams, Planks, and Timber for Building, most part of Cedar, Cypress, Sassafras, Oak, Walnut and Pine.

They carry on a great Trade with the *Indians*, from whom they get these great Quantities of Deer Skins, and those of other Wild Beasts, in Exchange for which they give them only Lead, Powder, coarse Cloth, Vermillion, Iron Ware, and some other Goods, by which they have a very considerable Profit.

The great Number of Slaves makes another part of the Riches of this Province, there being above 40,000 Negroes which are worth one with another 100 Crowns each.

There are between 5 and 600 Houses in *Charles Town*, the most of which are very costly; besides 5 handsome Churches, *viz.* one for those of the Church of *England*, one for the Presbyterians, one for the Anabaptists, one for the Quakers, and one for the *French*. If you travel into the Country, you will see stately Buildings, noble Castles, and an infinite Number of all sorts of Cattle. If it be ask'd what has produced all this? the Answer is, 'Tis only the rich Land of Carolina.

There is not the least Appearance but that the Pros-

perity of this Province will still increase ; and, with the Blessing of Heaven, in a few Years be the most flourishing of all *America* ; not only because the King has much at heart the Improvement of this new Country, but because People come thither from all parts. His Majesty has lately sent thither 74 pieces of heavy Cannon, with Powder, Ball, &c. and Governor *Johnson* is setting out from *Charles-town* to mark out the Land, whereon to build two good Forts, one at *Port-royal*, and the other upon the River *Alatamaha*, betwixt which is the River *Savanna*. The People of the *Palatinate*, those of *New-York*, *New-England*, and other parts, sell all that they have to come to *Carolina* ; which has raised the Price of Lands within 50 miles about *Charles-town* to four times the Value in 4 or 5 Years time : It will probably be the same about *Purrysburg*. However, it is a certain Truth, that the same Quantity of Land at *Charles-town* which might be bought for a Crown about 40 Years ago, cannot at this time be bought for 200*l. Sterling*, nor even for 300*l.* in those places which are well situated for Trade.

The good Dispositions which are making daily for a regular Administration of Justice, cannot fail of bringing the Country into Reputation, and drawing thither still great numbers of People. Artificers are so scarce at present, that all sorts of Work is very dear ; Taylors, Shoemakers, Smiths, &c. would be particularly acceptable there. A skilful Carpenter is not ashamed to demand 30*s. per Day* beside his Diet ; and the common Wages of a Workman is 20*s. per Day*, provided he speaks *English*, without which he cannot be understood, and consequently not so useful as others ; and when a Workman has but 10*s. per Day* he thinks he labours for almost nothing, though he has his Maintenance besides. But this is *Carolina Money*.



Most of their Shoes are brought from *England*, and generally sell for 40s. *per* pair. Not but that they have Hides enough, and very cheap, an Ox's Hide being sold for 30s. neither are they destitute of the Means to Tan them: for they make very good Lime with Oyster-shells, and the Bark of Oak-trees is so plentiful, that it costs nothing but the trouble of gathering: They want therefore only a sufficient Number of good Tanners and Shoemakers.

I might say the same of Leather dressers, since they send every Year to *England* above 200,000 Deer-skins undrest. Yet *Carolina* produces Oker naturally, and good Fish-oil may be had from *New-York* or *New-England* very cheap: So that they might be drest and made up into Breeches in the Country, for which those Skins are very proper, being warm in Winter and cool in Summer.

There is not one Potter in all the Province, and no Earthen-ware but what comes from *England*, nor Glass of any Kind: So that a Pot-house and a good Glass-house would succeed perfectly well, not only for *Carolina*, but for all the other Colonies in *America*. There is a kind of Sand and Earth which would be very proper for these Purposes, as also Wood and Fern in abundance, had they but Workmen to make use of them.

The Woods are full of wild Vines, bearing 5 or 6 Sorts of Grapes naturally; but for want of Vine-dressers, &c. scarce any Wine is drank there but what comes from *Madera*, which are indeed cheap, for a Bottle of excellent Wine cost last Winter but 2s. *Carolina* Money to those who bought by the Hogshead. There is something so singular in these Wines of *Madera* that we cannot forbear mentioning it; which is, That Heat preserves them, and Cold spoils them: For as in *Europe* they are



obliged to put their Wine in cool Cellars; these, on the contrary, must be put into the warmest Places. If they begin to be sour, they are exposed to the greatest Heats of the Sun to be recovered: So that to keep them good, you are to do what you would in other Parts to make Vinegar. This seems to be the greatest Paradox in the World, but nothing is more certain: and strange as it may seem, Col. *Bleek* caused a Vault to be made over his Oven, purposely to keep his Wine in all the Year.

The Cattle of *Carolina* are very fat in Summer, but as lean in Winter, because they can find very little to eat, and have no cover to shelter them from the cold Rains, Frosts, and Snows, which last sometimes 3 or 4 Days; Only the Cattle design'd for the Butchery are fed, and they bad enough, with Potatoes, Straw, and Grain; but they always lie in the open Field, for there is not one Hovel in all the Country, either for Oxen or Cows. If you object this to the Planters, they answer that such Houses or Hovels would do very well, but that they have too many other Affairs to think of that. The last Winter being very severe, about 10,000 horned Cattle died of Hunger and Cold. Notwithstanding this, the People will not change their Conduct, because they do not understand the manner of ordering Cattle, nor even know how to mow the Grass, in order to make it into Hay, of which they might have great Plenty for Fodder. Their Ignorance in this respect is very great, which is the reason that Butter is always dear, being sold last Winter at 7s. 6d *per* Pound, and in *Jan.* and *Feb.* last it was sold at *Charles-town* for 12s. *per* Pound: In a word, nothing would be more easy than for Persons who understand Country Affairs to grow rich in a little time. There is so great a Number of Cattle, that a certain Planter had last Spring 200 Calves marked, which he let run in the

Woods with other Cattle: No-body looks after them, or takes any other Care, but to bring them together in the Evening to lie in a Park near the House.

At certain Times they kill a great many to send the Flesh salted to several other Colonies, where there is little Pasturage, particularly to the Isles of *Antilles*, and in general to all those of the *Torrid Zone*.

Horses, the best Kind in the World, are so plentiful, that you seldom see any body travel on foot, except *Negroes*, and they often on horseback; so that when a Taylor, a Shoemaker, or any other Tradesman, is obliged to go but 3 Miles from his House, it would be very extraordinary to see him travel on foot.

There is likewise in this Country a prodigious Number of Swine, which multiply infinitely, and are kept with very little Charge, because they find almost all the Year Acorns, of which there is 5 or 6 Sorts, as also Nuts, Walnuts, Chesnuts, Herbs, Roots, &c. in the Woods: So that if you give them never so little at home they become fat; after which you may salt and send great Quantities of them to the Isles of *Barbadoes*, *St Christophers*, *Jamaica*, &c. which produce very good Returns either in Money or Merchandizes.

Of all Animals in that Country, none are a less Charge than Sheep, for they subsist only on what they find in the Fields; yet are always in good Case, and bring forth their Lambs regularly; and there is a particular Sort, whose Wool is not inferior to the finest *Spanish Wool*.

Flax and Cotton thrive admirably, and Hemp grows from 13 to 14 Foot in Height, but as few People know how to order it, there is scarce any cultivated; besides, they want Dung, which is very necessary for that purpose, few Plants weakening Land so much as Hemp does: However, this is one of the Articles which would



produce most Profit, because the Parliament has allowed so much *per Ton* upon all Hemp which comes from the *English Plantations in America*, in order that in Time of War they may have no need of Hemp from *Russia* and *Poland*; besides this Encouragement, which is to last for 30 Years longer, there is an Exemption from some other Duties on Importation; which, joined together, makes an advantage of about 40 *per Cent.* over that of Hemp from other parts.

Rice and *Indian Corn* produce at least an hundred-fold, and would do much more, if the Land were better cultivated. The Easiness of procuring such a Plenty of Grain, is the Reason that the Planters have or may have at all Times a Court-yard fill'd with Cocks, Hens, Turkeys, Geese, Ducks, &c. also a good Pigeon-house, without being at any Expençe. There is great Plenty of Game of all Sorts, but especially wild Turkeys, some of which are 30 Pound Weight, and those who love Fowling may easily take them. With this *Indian Corn* they make pretty good Bread, for it is much finer and better than in *Swisserland*, or in any other part of *Europe*, where it is commonly call'd *Turkey Corn*.

Persons may grow rich in *Carolina* without being at much Expençe or Labour, by planting white Mulberry Trees for feeding of Silk-worms, there being perhaps no Country in the World where those Trees grow better, nor where the Silk is finer than in *Carolina*. They grow so much in so short a Time, that we dare scarce mention it: Capt. *Scott* has one at the back of his House at *Port-Royal*, not above 7 or 8 Years old, the Body whereof is above 5 foot round. It would be difficult to believe this, if it was not confirmed by other Mulberry Trees of 4 or 5 Years old, at *Port-Royal*, *Westmesa*, *Gooscreek*, and other Plantations, the Trunks whereof



are near a foot in Diameter. But as all the Planters apply themselves chiefly to the production of Rice, Pitch, and Tar, there is very little Use made of them. However, those who have been in *Provence* and *Languedoc* know, that the Strippings of a Mulberry Tree, that is, the Leaves of a Summer, are commonly sold for a Crown, and sometimes two, although the Silk of those two Provinces is but very indifferent; from whence it may be easily conjectur'd, what Riches *Carolina* would produce if this affair was well managed. All other Trees grow there in the same proportion, and much faster than in *Europe*, but particularly the Peach Tree; for the 3d Year it is commonly loaded with Fruit, and is a great Tree the 4th Year.

Some perhaps will object, that this Country is feverish and unhealthy, and all the Advantages which might be found in other Respects, would not make Amends for the loss of Health: Besides, that you are plagued there with several sorts of Insects, and especially with great Rattle-Snakes; so that you are in Danger of your Life every Moment.

To this we answer, that if People are sick there, 't is generally an Effect of their bad Conduct, and not knowing how to regulate themselves suitably to the Country where they live; for 't is very certain, that those who observe Precautions have as good Health there as they would in other places. But the better to understand this Affair; you must know that the uncultivated Lands of *Carolina*, as well as the other adjacent Provinces, which extend much further than *Canada*, being wholly covered with large Pine Trees, very cold in their Nature, and when the Vapours which they have attracted and retained come to be dispers'd by a Northerly Wind, you feel a Cold almost as sharp as in *Europe*; so that

in one Day you may find a considerable change of Air: This then, together with the Debauches made by Punch, strong *Madera* Wines, and the eating unripe Fruits, is the real source of the Sickneses there; for sensual Persons, who have not the power to deny themselves any thing, when they find that a hot Day is succeeded by a great Coolness towards Evening, expose themselves to it with great pleasure, without troubling themselves with the Consequence; and when this pleasure is succeeded by Rheumatisms, Feavers, or other Distempers, they never fail of pouring out Curses on the Country, rather than own their Carelessness or Excess. And 'tis very common for those newly arrived, to say, when they have got an illness, *That 't is a Tribute they must pay to the Climate.* But such as take care to keep their Breasts always warm, to shun the great Transpirations of the Air, to cover themselves well in the Night, especially in Summer, and in other Respects live regularly, will certainly enjoy as good Health there as in any other part of the World.

There are few Insects in *Carolina* that can reasonably be complain'd of, except a sort of Gnats, which they call *Muscatoes*; and there is scarce any of these except in low Grounds, or near the Rivers; but if a House is troubled with them, it is easily remedied, by opening the Windows about Sun-setting, and shutting them again a little before the close of the Twilight, the *Muscatoes* never failing to quit the House about that time: and for better Security, they make fine Gause-work about their Beds; which keeps them off.

There are People in *Europe*, especially in *England*, that tremble only at the name of a Rattle-Snake, imagining, that the Country of *Carolina* is so full of them, that there is no going into the Woods without Danger of



Life: But this is an Error as ill-grounded as the most part of the other Reports spread abroad to the disadvantage of this New World. At least, 't is certain, that this Serpent is very seldom seen, and if they are met, do very little Hurt, except they are provoked to defend themselves: Besides, they never fail of giving you Notice of their Approach by their Rattles, which may be heard at a considerable Distance. 'T is also said, that the Venom of this Serpent is mortal, and kills in a very short time, if not prevented by some Antidotes: But those Remedies are well known by every body in the Country. When Mr. *Purry* went with his small Company to chuse out a Spot of Land on the River *Savanna*, the People told them before their Departure from *Charles Town*, that they had great Reason to fear these Rattle-Snakes, the Country being full of them; and that they ought to keep a good Guard against them; however they did not so much as see one of those Serpents, nor of any other sort for 15 Days that they travelled about in the Woods, though it was in the Middle of Summer at a time when all Serpents are out of their Holes. It is very seldom that any Person is bitten by these Snakes, or by those of other Kinds, which are much more common, that it would be very difficult to find so much as one Person in all *Carolina* that has ever had this Misfortune. There are also some Crocodiles in the Rivers, but the People fear them no more, than if they were so many Fishes, since it was never known that they have hurt any Person whatsoever.

Those that may have any Desire to go and settle there may further take notice of 3 or 4 Observations:

1st, That *South Carolina* is not only situated in the same Degree of Heat, Fertility, and Temperature of Air, which is about 33 Degrees Latitude, as *Barbary*,



the Isle of *Candia*, *Syria*, *Persia*, *Mogolistan*, *China*, and in general all the best Countries in the Universe ; but it is also the only Country of all those the *English* possess that is situated in that Degree ; and there is all the Reason in the World to believe, that if there be now an Opportunity to have Lands there for nothing, this Advantage will not continue long. At least 't is very certain that those who shall come first, will have the Choice of Land, as also the Proximity of Rivers, much better than those that shall come afterwards.

2dly, That by means of the Wool, Cotton, Flax and Hemp, it will be easy to procure all Linnen necessary, as also good Cloth and Stuffs for Cloathing, without being forced to purchase them at a very dear rate from the Shops, as most of the Planters are at present. And what is still an Article very considerable, there will be no Danger of wanting Provisions in a Country so plentiful, unless some Accidents happen, which cannot be foreseen by human Prudence ; we may be assured that Hail-stones will not deprive the Inhabitants thereof.

3dly, That *Carolina* being of all the Neighbouring Provinces which the *English* possess on the Continent of *North America*, from 29 to 49 Degrees of Latitude, is not only the largest and most productive of Necessaries, but also the most Southward, and nearest to *Jamaica*, *Barbadoes*, and all the Islands of the *Antilles*, which have Occasion for salted Provisions, Bread, Wine, Fruits, Roots, and several other Things, we need not hesitate a Moment to prefer it to all the other Colonies on the North side. And besides the great Advantages which may accrue to the Inhabitants by the Fertility of the Land, and the Temperateness of the Climate, the Situation thereof for Trade will always draw Ships into its Ports, which there finding at a reasonable price and

in good Order, all that the other most distant Provinces can have, will hardly go so far, whilst any thing is to be had in *Carolina*.

4thly and *Lastly*, And what is of the greatest Importance of all is, that there is an entire Liberty of Conscience and Commerce for all that come thither, without paying any thing for it; Justice is duly administrated to all; and every body can say that what he possesses lawfully belongs to him in full Propriety. There are no Tenths, Imposts, Tailles, nor Capitation Taxes, nor any of those Burdens which render so many other People unhappy: In a word, you have all the Laws, Liberties, and Privileges there which are enjoyed in *England*: 'T is the Lower House that has the Disposal of the Money of the Province, and who vote the Taxes necessary for the publick Service, however with the Approbation of the Upper House, and that of His Majesty, represented by the Governor; and when one of the two Houses would have an Act passed, on any Subject whatsoever, after having examined and debated all the Clauses thereof, it is ingrossed and sent to the other House for their Concurrence. But this Act, or rather projected Act, has at that time only the Name of a Bill, that is to say, properly, an Act proposed. Now if this Bill is passed by the other House, it is carried to the Governor, who may either approve or reject it; and 't is not till the Moment the Governor gives his Consent thereto, that it takes the Form of a Law, and has all the Force thereof; for if either of the Houses or Governor rejects the said Bill, it drops of course. Therefore nothing better proves, that the Constitution of the Government of *Carolina*, as well as that of *England*, is founded on the Union between the King and the People, since they make only one and the same Body, of which his Majesty is always

the Head; from whence it may be concluded and boldly affirmed, that the *English* are the most free and happy People at this Time in the whole World.

We whose Names are hereunto subscribed, do Attest, that all which is contain'd in this Account of *South Carolina*, is the real Truth, having been Eye-Witnesses of the most part of the Particulars therein mentioned. Done at *Charles-Town*, the 23d of *September*, 1731.

JOHN PETER PURRY, of *Neufchatel*.

JAMES RICHARD, of *Geneva*.

ABRAHAM MEURON, of *St. Sulpy*, in  
the County of *Neufchatel*.

HENRY RAYMOND, of *St. Sulpy*.



A

# NARRATIVE

OF THE

PROCEEDINGS

OF THE

PEOPLE OF SOUTH CAROLINA,

IN THE YEAR 1719:

AND OF

THE TRUE CAUSES AND MOTIVES THAT INDUCED THEM TO RENOUNCE THEIR  
OREDIENCE TO THE LORDS PROPRIETORS, AS THEIR GOVERNORS,  
AND TO PUT THEMSELVES UNDER THE IMMEDIATE  
GOVERNMENT OF THE CROWN.

---

LONDON:

PRINTED IN THE YEAR M.DCC.XXVI.

TO THE RIGHT HONOURABLE

JOHN LORD CARTERET,

LORD LIEUTENANT OF IRELAND.

MY LORD,

THE People of *South-Carolina* are now forced, (by the *Lords Proprietors* Application to His Majesty for a Restitution of their Government) by me, to set forth the true Cause of their Proceedings in the Year 1719, to put themselves under the Protection and Government of the Crown; for which they do not plead *Law*, but *Necessity*. The World, from the Knowledge they have of your Lordship's Humanity, Honour, and Good-Nature, will be induc'd to conclude, You will not insist upon what may be strictly *Your Right*, where the Lives and Estates of upwards of Seventeen Hundred Families may be endanger'd thereby.

I presume also to say, It is equally the *Lords Proprietors* as the Peoples *Interest*, that Province should be govern'd by the Crown, who only can protect that Frontier Colony: For if the Inhabitants are ruined and drove off the Country, their *Lordships* must, in some sort, be Sufferers with them; not to mention the Expence it saves them, of a Salary to a Governor and other Officers of the Government. And tho' I would be thought far from prescribing Rules to their *Lordships*, I dare venture to say, that under proper Regulations, *Their* Estates may be better Augmented and Receiv'd under His Majesty's Government, than under their own, and it would be a Reciprocal Advantage, as well to the Province as Themselves.

I have been forced, in the following Narration, to lay some Mismangements to the Lord Proprietors Charge, which I do truly believe, if your Lordship had not been then on your Embassy in *Sweden*, I should not have had occasion to mention, for they would not have been: But as *Truth*, and the necessary Apology of the People who employ me, have constrained me to it, without the least Intention of blemishing any One's Character; so I hope for their Pardon, and more particularly for that of your Lordship, from whom I have received so many Favours: And I beg leave to assure your Lordship, that I am, with the greatest Respect and Deference,

My Lord,

Your Lordship's

Most Obedient, and

Most Humble Servant,

F. YONGE.

A NARRATIVE  
OF THE  
PROCEEDINGS  
OF THE  
PEOPLE OF SOUTH CAROLINA,  
IN THE YEAR 1719.

THE *Lords Proprietors* of *Carolina* being at this Time soliciting His Majesty for the Restitution of their Government of *South-Carolina*, from whose Authority the Inhabitants revolted in the Year 1719, and humbly besought His Majesty to take them under his own immediate Government and Protection; I could not help thinking this a proper Juncture to acquaint the World how those People came to take such extraordinary Measures, as those they did, has the appearance of, to them who are not acquainted with the Springs and Motives which agitated and push'd them on to such violent proceedings.

And being furnish'd with proper Materials, the *Original Papers*, and an Eye-Witness to most that then pass'd in that Province, I can answer for the Truth of the Facts hereafter related; and as the continuance of the Government of that Province under the Crown is of the



greatest consequence, not only to the Province itself, but to all the Settlements in *North-America*, to which it is a Frontier; I hope it will not be thought an impertinent Work to acquaint the publick with an Affair, which altho' so remote, is of so great Importance.

But before I proceed to particulars, it will be necessary to give the Reader a short View of the Nature of the Settlement and Government of that Province, and of the Accidents and Contingencies that first gave the People a dislike to the *Lords Proprietors*; and which, by degrees, so far irritated them, that they at last resolv'd to be no longer subject to their Government.

This Province was first settled at the Charge and Expende of several Persons of Quality, to whom King *Charles II.* granted it by Charter soon after his Restoration; and a Scheme was then by them drawn, for the forming and settling the Legislature, and for encouraging Settlers to go over: It will be sufficient only to mention here, that by their Charter, they had power given them, to call an Assembly of the Freemen of the Province, or their Delegates, and with them, *either by themselves or their lawful Deputies*, to enact and make Laws, *not repugnant to the Laws of England*; and it had been usual with them to appoint a Governor and seven Deputies, called the Council, the first of which (the Governor) represented the Palatine, and the others the rest of the *Lords Proprietors*, respectively, and were called the Upper House of Assembly: Thus the Laws were pass'd, and the Country govern'd for upwards of Fifty years; when, after some Years Intercourse and Dealing between the Inhabitants and several Nations of the *Indians*, with whom they traded, as they now do, for several Thousand Pounds a Year, the said *Indians*, unanimously agreed to destroy the whole Settlement, by murdering

and cutting to pieces all the Inhabitants, on a Day they had agreed on; and altho' some private Intimations were given the People of their Design, it was totally disbeliev'd; so that on that certain Day, in the Year 1715, they killed all, or most of the Traders that were with them in their Towns; and going among the Plantations, murdered all who could not fly from their Cruelty, and burned their Houses. The occasion of this Conspiracy, which was so universal, that all the *Indians* were concerned in it, except a small Clan or two that lived amongst the Settlements, insomuch, that they amounted to between Eight and Ten Thousand Men, was attributed to some ill Usage they had receiv'd from the Traders, who are not (generally) Men of the best Morals; and that no doubt of it, might give some cause to their Discontents; to which may be added the great Debts they owed the Inhabitants, which it is said amounted to near 10,000*l.* Sterling, with the Goods then amongst them; all which they seiz'd and made their own, and never paid their Debts, but cancell'd them, by murdering their Creditors.

In this War near 400 of the Inhabitants were destroy'd, with many Houses and Slaves, and great Numbers of Cattle, especially to the Southward near *Port-Royal*, from whence the Inhabitants were entirely drove, and forced into the Settlements near *Charles-Town*.

This Town being fortified, they there had time to think what to do; and not mustering above 1200 Men, they sent to *Virginia* and the neighbouring Colonies for Assistance; and for want of Money, of which they have very little in the Country, they formed *Bills of Credit* to pass current in all Payments, of which we shall have Occasion to speak hereafter. This their necessary Defence brought the Publick in Debt near 80,000*l.* and



intail'd great Annual Charges upon them, to maintain Garrisons, which they were forced to erect and keep at great Expences.

In this very great Extremity, they sent Agents to *England* with an Account of their deplorable State, and to beg Assistance from their Proprietors: But not having very great Expectations from them, as very rightly imagining they would not be brought to expend their *English* Estates, to support much more precarious ones in *America*, their Agents were directed to lay a State of their Circumstances before her then Majesty, Queen *Anne*, and to beg the Assistance of the Crown.

Their Agents soon sent them an Account that they found a Disposition in Her Majesty to send them Relief, and to protect them; but that the Objection was they were a *Proprietary Government*; and it was the Opinion of the then Lords Commissioners of Trade and Plantations, that if the Queen was at the Expence of protecting and relieving the Province, the Government thereof should be in the Crown.

This first contracted in the Inhabitants in general, an Opinion of their being very unhappy in living under a Government that could not protect them; the effects of which were also worse, since it hinder'd the Crown from doing what they (the *Proprietors*) could not do themselves.

The Publick Emergencies had occasion'd the Stamping the Sum of 80,000*l.* in Bills of Credit, to pay their Soldiers, and other Charges the Country was forced to be at; and it was Enacted by the Assembly, They should be current in all payments between Man and Man. But the precarious State the Province was in by the *Indian War*, and the Danger it was exposed to, by being a Frontier, to the *French* and *Spaniards*, gave



the Merchants in *England* who Traded thither, and to whom the Inhabitants were considerably indebted, so great an Alarm, that they writ to their Correspondents, to make them Returns at any Rate, for fear of losing the Whole.

The great Demand for the *Commodities* of the Country that this necessarily occasion'd, together with the Scarcity of *them* by the Peoples being taken from their Labour to defend themselves, and there being no other way of paying their Debts to the Merchants in *England* but by the Produce of the Country, the Money being Notional, having no Intrinsick Value in it; all these things concurr'd to raise the price of the Rice, Pitch and Tar, and other Productions to such a height that the Bill that was made for Twenty Shillings, would not purchase what was worth intrinsically more than Half a Crown. From whence it follow'd, that those who had Money owing them on Bond or otherwise before the War, and who must have been paid in Gold or Silver, or its Value, if those Bills had not been made current in all payments, by their being so, lost Seven-Eighths of their Money: These Losses fell chiefly on the Merchants and such of the Inhabitants of *Charles-Town* as were Money'd Men; and, on the contrary, the Planters, who were their Debtors were the gainers.

This so very great a Loss falling upon the *Merchants* (tho' I do truly believe it was not foreseen by the People) made very great clamours in *England*, from *them* who applied to the *Lords Proprietors* for Redress, and desired that a stop might be put to the increase of that sort of Currency, and that some Way might be found for the calling in, and sinking what was then current of them. In this condition and thus circumstanced, Mr. *Johnson* found the People on his Arrival,

who was appointed Governor by the *Lords Proprietors* Commission dated 30th of *April* 1717; and agreeable to an *Act of Parliament* in that case provided, he was Approv'd of by HIS MAJESTY, under his Sign Manual.

At his first coming he applied himself to the Assembly, to call in those Bills, which had brought so great Inconveniencies upon themselves, as well as on the Traders; and in Justice and Honour, (he told them) they ought to make good; and so far prevail'd on them, that altho' there were great Contentions in the Assembly, between the Planting and the Mercantile Interest; altho' the Annual Expences of the Country were then very great, the *Indian* War with some Nations still continuing, the Coast very much infested with Pyrates, who had several times block'd up the Harbour for several Weeks together, and taken all the Ships coming in or going out, which had put the Country to great Expences, they having fitted out Vessels twice, and taken two of them, one commanded by Major *Steed Bonnet* in *Cape-Fear* River, and the other by *Worley* off the Bar of *Charles-Town*; in which last expedition Mr. *Johnson* went himself in Person: I say, notwithstanding they then labour'd under these Difficulties, they pass'd an Act for Sinking and Paying off all their Paper Credit in three Years, by a Tax on Lands and Negroes, which give a general Satisfaction.

It will be necessary here to make a Digression to inform the Reader, that at the first Settling the Country, before it was divided into Parishes, the whole Lower House of Assembly were chosen at *Charles-Town* and were Representatives of the whole Province; which Custom had continued after the Country was laid out in Parishes, until about a Year before Mr. *Johnson* arriv'd:



When in the Government of Mr. *Daniel*, who was left Deputy Governour by Mr. *Craven* when he came for *England*, they pass'd a Law for Regulating the Elections for Members of the Assembly ; wherein amongst other Things it was *Enacted* That every Parish should send a certain Number of Representatives 36 in all, and that they should be Balloted for at their Respective Parish Churches, or some other Place convenient, on a Day to be mention'd in the Writs, which were to be directed to the Church-Wardens, and they to make Return of the Elected Members : and of this *Act*, the People were very fond ; finding it gave them a greater Freedom of Election, and was more to them than going out of their respective Countries to *Charles Town* ; at which Elections there had been very often great Tumults ; and besides, that it came nearer the Methods used in *England*.

On the other hand, as it pleased the Generality of the People, because of the Freedom it gave them in their Choice, it was sure to displease two of the *Lords Proprietors* Principal Officers ; their Chief Justice and Receiver General Mr. *Trott*, and Mr. *Rhett* his Brother in Law ; who by the former Method of Electing at *Charles Town*, had used to have a great Sway in the Elections, which they thought would be lessen'd by this new Method ; and therefore they did what they could to obstruct the passing the Bill, which they failed in ; but so represented it to the *Lords Proprietors* with whom they had always too much Interest, either for their Lordships or the Peoples Good, that just at the Juncture when they had been at the aforesaid great Expence to drive the Pyrates off their Coast, that they were mightily pleased with Mr. *Johnson* for exposing his own Person in that expedition against them, had pass'd the Law for



sinking their Paper Currency, and were contriving to pay for their Expeditions against the Pyrates, and their other contingent Debts, and they were never observ'd to be in so good a Disposition towards the *Proprietors*, but were doing every thing that could be ask'd of them. At this Juncture arriv'd an Order to the Governor to dissolve the Assembly forthwith, and to call a New one to be Elected according to the Ancient Custom, they not acknowledging the new Election Law, because not approv'd and ratified by them in *London*; as the former was, and therefore they insisted, the Legislature of *Carolina* could not Repeal it, and substitute a New one in the Place, without their Consent, they being (notwithstanding their Impowering their Deputies in *Carolina*) the Head of the Legislative Body of the Province, and had a Right to put a Negative on such Laws as they did not approve of; at the same time they also repeal'd an Act of the Assembly for laying a Duty on *Negroes*, Liquors, &c. imported into the said Province, for raising a Sum of Money to defray the Contingent Charges of the Province and for other Services therein mention'd.

Mr. *Johnson* and his Council, (that is, the major part of them, for Mr. *Trott* was of that Body) were very much surpris'd at the Receipt of these Orders; and after having duly consider'd the Consequences they might produce, resolv'd to suspend the Execution of them, especially that part which directed the Dissolution of the Assembly; but on the contrary, thought it best they should sit until they accomplish'd the Business then before them. But as the Repeal of the Duty-Law was by Order of the King in Council, because of a part of it that laid a Duty on Goods manufactur'd in *Great-Britain*, the Council therefore resolv'd to acquaint the Assembly with the King's Dislike to that part of the Law, and require

them to make a New Act, in which to leave out the part complain'd of. These Orders and Repeals, altho' all Endeavours were used that they should be kept secret, came to the Knowledge of the Assembly, and begat prodigious Heats and Debates about the *Proprietors* Right of Repeal, or of their Authority to allow of or disallow any of the Laws pass'd in that Province; which the Assembly alledg'd, being assented by their Deputies who acted for them; and at that time, by a sort of Deputation, every *Proprietor* gave in the Nature of a Power of Attorney, to act for him, and in his stead; they insisted, bound them according to the Tenor of their Charter, as much as if they themselves had been present, and had ratified and confirm'd those Acts.

Just before the arrival of these unhappy Orders, there had been presented to the Assembly, Articles of Complaint against the Chief Justice *Trott*, being Thirty-one in Number, which in the Whole, set forth, "That he had been guilty of many Partial Judgments; that he had contriv'd many Ways to multiply and increase his Fees, contrary to Acts of Assembly, and to the great Grievance of the Subjects, and that amongst others, he contriv'd a Fee for continuing Causes from one Court (or Term) unto another, and then he put off the Hearing for several Years together; that he took upon him to give Advice in Causes depending in his Courts, and did not only act as a Councillor in that particular, but also had and did draw Deeds, and other Writings between Party and Party, some of which had been contested before him as Chief Justice; in the determining of which, he had shewn great Partialities, with many other Particulars; and lastly, complaining that the whole Judicial Power of the Province was lodg'd in his Hands alone; of which it was evident he had made a very



ill Use; he being at that time sole Judge of the *Pleas* and *King's-Bench*, and Judge of the Court of *Vice-Admiralty*; so that no Prohibition could be lodg'd against the Proceedings of that Court, he being in that Case to grant a Prohibition against himself: he was also, at the same time, one of the *Council*, and of consequence, of the Court of *Chancery*."

These Complaints took their Rise from the Attornies who practis'd in the Courts, and were fully made appear to be Facts to the Commons House of Assembly; but the Judges Commission from the *Proprietors* being *Quam diu se bene gesserit*, and he insisting his Actions were not to be tried but before the *Proprietors* themselves, they were constrained to apply to the *Proprietors* for Redress; and therefore sent a Message to the Governor and Council, desiring they would join with them in representing his Male-Administration to the *Lords*, and in supplicating them, that if they did not think fit to remove him entirely from presiding in their Courts of Justice, (which they desired,) then that they would at least leave him only one single Jurisdiction, that they might have the Liberty of Appealing from his *sole*, and too often, Partial Judgment.

The Governor and a Majority of his Council agreed with them, to represent the Grievances they complain'd of, to the *Proprietors*; and thinking it might be better done by one of their own Members, who had been present in all their Debates, than by Letters, they agreed on Mr. *Yonge* to go to *Great-Britain*, to give their *Lordships* a true State of this, as well as of their other Affairs, who was accordingly properly instructed, and in the Month of *May*, 1719, arrived in *London*.

The Lord CARTERETT the *Palatine* was then just going on his Embassy to the Court of *Sweden*, who



therefore was pleased to refer him to the rest of the *Proprietors*; and after having waited on them two or three times, he presented them with the following *Memorial*.

To the Right Honourable the *Lords Proprietors* of the Province of *South-Carolina*.

*The Memorial of Francis Yonge Esq; Surveyor-General of South-Carolina.*

“ The abovesaid *Francis Yonge* being appointed by your Lordships Governor and Council of *South-Carolina*, to lay before you, not only several *Acts of Assembly*, made and passed there the last Sessions of Assembly, for your Lordships Approbation, but also to inform your Lordships of the Reasons that urged them to defer Dissolving of the General Assembly, pursuant to your Lordships Commands; and to shew your Lordships the Arguments between Them and the Commons House of Assembly, touching your Lordships Right of Repealing Laws, ratified and confirmed there by your Lordships Deputies; Does therefore present your Lordships with a *Speech* made by Mr. Chief Justice *Trott*, at a General Conference of both Houses; and the Commons Answer thereunto; as also several Messages that passed between them: Which he hopes will shew your Lordships, that no Arguments or Endeavours were wanting on their part, to assert your Lordships Right of Repealing Laws not Ratified by you.

“ They (your Lordships said Governor and Council) would not have given them an Opportunity of disputing (at least at that time) such your Lordships Power, but should have Dissolv'd them, according to your Lordships Commands, had it been possible to have been done

without the greatest Prejudice to the Country in general as well as to several Merchants and particular Persons, who had either voluntarily furnish'd, or had pressed from them such Things as were necessary for fitting-out the two Expeditions against the Pyrates, which amounted to upwards of 10,000*l.* and which that Commons House of Assembly had provided for the payment of; and they were not certain another would agree to, considering the ill Humour their Dissolution was likely to create amongst them: Beside, that the *Imposition Act* being Repeal'd, and no other substituted in its Place, leaving out the Clause, *laying a Duty upon Goods of the Manufacture of Great-Britain*; which Clause gave Offence; the Duties arising by which *Act* were applied to the Payment of the Clergy, the Maintenance of the Garisons, paying several Publick Debts, and on which Orders were drawn for 30,000*l.* The *Indian Trading Law* being also Repeal'd: The doing of which before the Trade was put under some Regulation might have brought those People down on our Settlements, and have occasion'd another *Indian War*. The *Act for sinking* 35,000*l.* the current Year, in Bills of Credit, had been broken through: which it was absolutely necessary some other Law should be provided to make good.

“ The abovesaid Reasons, they presume, your Lordships will think were such, that they could not then immediately Dissolve the Assembly, who had but Six Weeks to Continue, by their Biennial *Act*: And it is with some Pleasure that they can inform your Lordships, that they think they have preserv'd to your Lordships any Right you were before possess'd of; and at the same time have got such Laws pass'd, as, with your Lordships Approbation, will very much contribute to settle



the Country, and, we hope, give no Offence to *Great-Britain*.

(a) " The Governor and Council have frequently recommended to Mr. Secretary *Hart*, his transmitting to your Lordships copies of the Laws pass'd, that your Lordships may Approve, or signify your Dislike of them: And he has as often complain'd of the Difficulty he has to get them Transcribed, and of the great Charge he must be at so to do, that he is now at 100*l*. a Year Expence for a Clerk; and more than that, for Books, Pens, Ink and Paper, &c. That your Lordships Allowance to him for the Whole is but 40*l*. a Year. They therefore take the Liberty of Requesting your Lordships to Augment the Salary of the said Secretary, or allow a Clerk with a competent Salary to attend the Council, and transcribe such Laws, or other Things, as may at any time be thought needful to send to your Lordships, or done there. They have also formerly, and do again request your Lordships, That the Room they now sit in, and have done for four Years past, and which belongs to Mr. *William Gibbon*, the said Mr. *Gibbon* may have some Allowance for, as well for the Time past, as for the future; they having promis'd him to move your Lordships in his Behalf. They are also in hopes your Lordships will not think it unreasonable to make Themselves some Allowance, to defray the Expence they are at, in Attending the Council, Court of Chancery, and Assembly, which takes up more than one third part of their Time, and is a very great Charge to them. And whereas Fire, Candles, and several other Contingent Charges will accrue, they desire the same may be paid by your Lord-

(a) They had sent orders to have all the *Laws* constantly sent them by their Secretaries.



ships Receiver-General when he shall be Order'd so to do by them.

“ The said *Francis Yonge* is further directed to move your Lordships, to procure Custom-House Officers at the Port of *Beaufort*, that Town increasing very much in Inhabitants, and it being a very great Discouragement to them that they are obliged to bring all their Produce to *Charles-Town*, and will very much retard the Well-Peopling the Southern Parts of the Colony.

“ It is also the humble Request and advice of the said Governor and Council, as a thing that will lay a very great Obligation on the Country in general, That your Lordships will please to grant 6000 Acres of Land *gratis* to the Publick, for the Use of the three Garisons at *Savannah Town*, the *Congrees*, and the *Apalachocoles*; and that some part of the Land to the Northward, may be granted and disposed of on the same Terms as the *Yamazee* Lands, in order to the effectual Securing and Well-Peopling the Frontiers of the Northward as well as to the Southward.

“ As these would be very great Concessions, and they hope very much dispose the People to make your Lordships such Returns of Duty and Respect as they wish had always been done, and will, they hope, very much contribute to the Peopling the Country; so they also hope, your Lordships will secure and preserve them in their Properties, (a much greater Encouragement than all the rest,) by putting it into their Power to assert their undoubted Right of Appealing from any erroneous Judgments in Law; which Right they are now debarr'd by the sole Judicial Power being lodg'd in the hands of Mr. Chief Justice *Trott*, in the *King's Bench*, Court of *Pleas*, Court of *Admiralty*, and Court of *Chancery*; a Trust never repos'd in any one Man before in the World,

and which the General Assembly has desir'd them to joyn, in Addressing your Lordships to have remedied, and which I am directed herewith to present to your Lordships.

"All which is most humbly submitted to your Lordships Consideration, in *London*. The 5th of *June* 1719."

With this, Mr. *Yonge* also deliver'd them a Letter from Governour *Johnson*, the Articles of Complaint against Mr. *Trott*, and an Address from the Governor, Council, and Assembly, that he might be remov'd, or at least be made contented with one single Jurisdiction, and several Acts of Assembly; one of which was, for the better recovery of their Quit Rents, with a Clause in it, making it of no Force, unless approv'd of by their Lordships: This was thought proper to be done, the People still insisting, That an Act ratified by the Lords-Deputies in *Carolina*, could not be repeal'd by them; and this being their own particular Concern, requir'd their more particular Approbation.

Mr. *Yonge* waited upon their Lordships three Months in *London*, and attended their Boards, in order to the satisfying them in any thing they might have had Occasion to have enquir'd after of him, concerning the State of the Country, or of the best Methods to be taken to allay the Heats, and reconcile the People to their Authority; which he apprehended was not more than he ought to expect, since they had done him the Honour to appoint him the Surveyor-General, and one of their Council, and he had sail'd Five or Six Thousand Miles for their Service, in a Conjecture that their Governor and Council thought it most absolutely necessary he should do so. But their Lordships were of other Sentiments; it may be suppos'd they took all for Fact that was sent

them by Mr. *Trott's* private Letters and at last, dispatch'd him back with Pacquets seal'd up, for the Governour, amongst which, upon his Arrival in *Carolina*, was found the following Letter.

S I R,

WE have receiv'd and perus'd your Letters, and all your Papers deliver'd us, by your Agent Mr. *Yonge*; and though we are favourably inclin'd in all our Thoughts relating to our Governor, yet we must tell you, we think you have not obeyed your Orders and Directions given to you, to Dissolve that Assembly, and call another forthwith, according to the ancient Usage and Custom of the Province; and to publish our Repeals of those Acts of Assembly, immediately upon the receipt of our Orders aforesaid: But we shall say no more upon the subject now, not doubting but our Governour will pay a more punctual obedience to our Orders for the future.

"The *Lords Proprietors* Right of Confirming and Repealing Laws, was so particular a Privilege granted to them by the Crown, that we can never recede from it: and we do assure you we are not a little surprised, that you would suffer that prerogative of ours to be disputed.

"We have sent you herewith an Instruction under our Hands and Seals, nominating such persons as we think fit to be of the *Council* with you, six whereof, and your self, and no less Number, to be a *Quorum*. Upon your Receipt of this, we hereby require you to summons the said Council, that they may qualify themselves according to Law, and immediately sit upon the Dispatch of Business.

"We also send you the Repeal of the Acts of Assem-



bly, which we Order you to Publish immediately, upon the receipt of this.

“ We do assure Mr. *Johnson*, that we will stand by him in all Things that relate to the just Execution of his Office, and we are Confident that he will perform his duty to us, and support our Power and Prerogatives to the best of his Abilities.

“ If the Assembly chosen according to your *pretended late Act* is not dissolv'd, as we formerly Order'd, and a New Assembly Chosen, pursuant to the Act formerly Confirm'd by the *Proprietors*, you are forthwith Com-manded hereby, to Dissolve that Assembly, and to Call another, according to the above mention'd Assembly, so we bid you heartily Farewel, and are,

Your very Loving Friends,

*Carteret P.*

*Bertie* for D. *Beaufort.*

*M. Ashley.*

*J. Colliton.*

*J. Danson.*

Although the above Letter has my Lord *Carteret's* Name to it, it was put by Mr. *Ashley*, who had a Power to Act for his Lordship, he being then on his Embassy to the Court of *Sweden*.

With this letter they sent an Instrument under their Hands and Seals, appointing Twelve Gentlemen of the Council ; whereas before, there were but Seven, who (as has been said) represented each one of the *Proprietors*, and was called such a one's Deputy ; and the Governor represented the *Palatine*. They now also again Repeal'd the Duty Law, and two others ; and instead of granting Land for the Publick Use of the Garisons, they gave strict Orders, that no more Land should be granted to any Person whatsoever, but ordered fifteen Baro-

nies each containing 12,000 Acres to be laid out for their own Private Use, as near as might be to *Port-Royal*. They also sent a Copy of the Complaint against Mr. *Trott* to him, and desired he would send them an Answer to it, and with it a Letter of Thanks for the Speech he had made, at the Conference of both Houses, in Justification of their Right of Repealing Laws; and to manifest how much they resented the Conduct of those of the Council, who had join'd with the Lower House of Assembly, in the Complaint against him, who were, Col. *Thomas Broughton*, Mr. *Alexander Skene*, Mr. *James Kinlaugh*, and Mr. *Yonge*, (the first of these the Governor's Brother in Law) they left the three first out of the Council; and one of the *Proprietors* told Mr. *Yonge*, he had also been left out, but in Respect to my Lord *Carteret*, who was his Patron and recommended him.

By this the Governor found Mr. *Trott* was to Rule the Province, tho' he had the Name of it; and therefore he resolv'd for the future to Act by his and the new Council's Advice, that they might be answerable for any ill Effects their future Councils and Transactions might produce. He according to the *Lords Proprietors* Orders, call'd his New Council, and qualified such of them as would serve. Several of them refusing, he declar'd the three Acts of Assembly Repeal'd, and by Proclamation dissolv'd the Assembly, and called a new one, to be chosen all at *Charles Town*, after the old Method. Thus the People were irritated and heated to a violent Degree, and the Basis of all Government being either *Love*, *Fear*, or *Interest*, or perhaps any two, or a Mixture of all the three, but in this there was neither one nor the other; for they thought they had no Reason to love the *Proprietors*, who not only refused them Justice but protected and countenanc'd an Evil Minister in an Office



which most immediately affected their Lives and Properties, who refused to part with the Uncultivated Lands, either for the Publick or any Private Use but their own; tho' it is apparent by their Charter, it was granted to them to be disposed of in such a Manner, as to encourage his Majesty's Subjects to go over and settle there, and to extend his Dominions, and they had just before promis'd it in Tracts of 200 Acres to new Comers; on which Promise several Hundreds had come from *Ireland*, but could not have a Yard of Land to settle on when they came, and this notwithstanding the Country had been put to the Expense of paying some Thousands of Pounds for their Passage to *Carolina*: so that the Number of Inhabitants could not be increas'd nor their Frontiers strengthen'd, neither would they allow them the Freedom they desir'd, and what was the Practice of other Colonies, in chusing their Representatives, *nearest the Methods used in England*, which their Laws are to be, by the express Words of the Charter. Another reason of their not loving the *Proprietors*, is the same that made them not fear them, *i. e.* their Inability to succour and protect them, either from their own Intestine Enemies, the *Indians*, or from the *Spaniards*, with whom at that time there was a War; for it is very natural to think, that if they could not send Forces to assist them, it would be as difficult to correct them; and lastly, they judg'd it plainly their Interest to be under the Crown, who could and would protect them, and also (as they hoped) to put them in the same Circumstances with His Majesty's other Colonies in *America*, who, they found, had proper Assistances from the Crown. As there was therefore neither *Fear*, nor *Love*, nor *Interest* to support this Government, how could it long subsist?



The *Lords Proprietors* who liv'd in *England*, although most of them Men of Quality, whether they left it to an Under-Officer who they trusted with their Dispatches, and who abus'd his Trust, and did not give them just Accounts of their Affairs, for fear it might affect his Friends in *Carolina*, Mr. *Trott*, and Mr. *Rhett*; or whatever was the Cause, we shall leave it to the World to judge, whether they acted as if they knew or desir'd to be inform'd of the State of their Affairs there; for they gave no manner of Credit to what was told, and desir'd of them, by the whole Body of the People, the Governor, Council, and Assembly; but to shew they were resolv'd to be *Despotick* and *Absolute*, they acted just contrary to what they were requested by them, in the most humble manner, to do; and because the Act which was past for the better recovering of their *Quit-Rents*, also oblig'd them to part with their *Lands* at a certain Rate, they disapprov'd of *that*, being resolv'd to part with no more, though at the Hazard of ruining those already settled there. Indeed, my Lord *Carteret* was not then in *England*, or I cannot imagine he would have consented to the acting in this manner, neither were some others of their Board then at Age; but as I am inform'd every thing was left to their Secretary, who sent any Instrument when drawn, by the Post, to such as were out of Town, or carried them to sign, to those that were in Town, which was generally done without any previous Consideration, whether they were fit and convenient to be done or not; and thus a whole *Province* was to be govern'd by the Caprice of one Man. But to return to our History.

The Governor call'd the Assembly according to his new Instruction, to be chosen at *Charles Town*; and now Mr. *Rhett*, and Mr. *Trott* found themselves mistaken, in

fancying they could influence the Elections when in Town, so as to have such Members chosen as they liked: for it proved quite the contrary; they could not get so much as a Man chose that they desir'd, the whole People in general were prejudic'd against the *Lords Proprietors* to such a degree, that it was grown almost dangerous to say any thing in their Favour; and about this time (which added more to their Dislike) the Governor receiv'd Advice, that the *Spaniards* from the *Havanah* design'd to attack the Country. Upon which (the time of meeting of the New Assembly being not yet come) he was oblig'd to call his Council and such of the new-elected Members as could be got together, and inform'd them of the Advice he had receiv'd; and he desir'd they would consider of the ill Conditions the Fortifications were in, and the Necessity there was immediately to repair them; which he propos'd to do by Voluntary Subscription, until the Assembly could provide for the doing it: And to show an Example himself, he subscribed 500*l*. (to such Extremity the Dissolving the former Assembly reduced the Province.) Those of the Assembly made Answer, They thought the Income of their Duties were sufficient for that Service. The Governor objected, that the Law was Repeal'd by the *Proprietors*. To which Answer was again made, That the Publick Receiver was order'd to sue any Man that refused to pay as that Law directed; for they did not nor would look on *their* Repeal as any thing. Mr. *Trott* told them, If any Action was brought into *his Courts* (for so he always call'd them) on that *Act*, he would give Judgment for the Defendant. At this Meeting hot Arguments arose among them, and they broke up without doing any thing, chusing rather to hazard the loss of the Country to the *Spaniards*, than submit to acknow-



ledge a Right in the *Proprietors* of Repealing their Laws.

The Governor was likewise oblig'd by this Advice he had receiv'd of the *Spaniards* Intentions, to call the Field-Officers of the Militia together, to give them Orders to review the Regiments, and settle a Rendezvous, in case of the *Spaniards* attempting to land in any part of the Country. Which Orders they seem'd to receive as usual, and muster'd the Regiments upon the Day prefix'd; but had an Association prepar'd; and when together, got all the People to Sign it almost to a Man; and so the whole Province was at once brought into a Confederacy against the *Lords Proprietors*, unknown to the Governor.

In this Assembly Mr. *Skene* was elected a Member; who being one of those remov'd from the Council by the *Proprietors*, went in amongst the rest, full of Resentment against them, and having been for many Years Secretary to the Island of *Barbadoes*, was look'd upon as a Man that understood Publick Affairs very well; and several others of the best Understanding had frequently private Meetings, in which they resolv'd to have no more to do with the *Proprietors*. And they were the more encourag'd to throw off their Authority, by a Vote that had passed in the House of Peers some Years before, That the *Lords Proprietors* had forfeited their Charter: And an Address their Lordships made to her then Majesty Queen *Anne*, wherein they desired she would be pleas'd to order her Attorney-General to Prosecute the same, and to assume the Government of the Country to herself. Besides, they had been told by their then Agents, That when Her Majesty was desired to send them Relief in their *Indian* War, and the Government was expected, if she did so, that my Lord *Carteret* was



so good, as publickly to declare to the then Lords of the Trade, He should be willing (as to his own particular) to give up the Government, rather than they should want that Relief. And the Time seem'd to be now coming, by the Attack threatned by the *Spaniards*, when they should more than ever want the Assistance of the Crown; and therefore they were resolv'd to remove the former Objection, and put themselves under His Majesty's immediate Protection.

The first Notice that the Governor had of the Certainty of this, and of their being come to a fix'd Resolution, was by a Joint-Letter from Mr. *Skene*, Col. *Logan*, and Major *Blakenway*, in these words :

SIR,

“ We doubt not but you have heard of the whole Province entering into an Association to stand by their Rights and Privileges, and to get rid of the Oppression and Arbitrary Dealings of the *Lords Proprietors*: And as we always bore you the greatest Deference and Respect imaginable, we take this Opportunity to let you know, that a Committee of the Peoples Representatives were last Night appointed to wait on you this Morning, to acquaint you, That they are come to a Resolution, To have no Regard to the *Lords* Officers, nor their Administration; And withal, To beg that your Honour would hold the Reins of Government for the King, 'till His Majesty's Pleasure be known.

“ The great Value the whole Country expresses for your Honour's Person, makes them desirous of having no body but your Self to Govern them: And as you must be convinc'd that no Person can be more passionately desirous of your Government than our selves, we hope you will not take amiss any Advice given by faith-

ful and affectionate Friends ; and therefore we take the Liberty to tell you freely, That we are of Opinion, that your Honour may take the Government upon you, upon the Offer of the People, for the KING ; and represent the *Proprietors*, That rather than the whole Country should be in Confusion and want a Governing Power, you held it for their *Lordships* ; tho' you were oblig'd to comply with the Province, who were unanimously of Opinion that they would have no *Proprietors* Government.

“ We could wish for a longer and better Opportunity to explain this Affair to you ; but it is impossible, for the Gentlemen will be with you in two Hours at the farthest. We heartily wish your Honour the utmost Success, let it go which way it will ; but beg Leave to observe, That your Compliance, will be not only the Greatest Satisfaction imaginable to the Province in general, but in particular to,

“ Your most Obedient, &c.

“ Sign'd *A. Skene*,

“ *Geo. Logan*,

“ *William Slakeway*.”

“ 28th Nov. 1719.”

The Governor being at his Plantation about four Miles off when he receiv'd this Letter, he came immediately to Town, and summon'd such of his Council as he could get together, who were Mr. *Izard*, Judge *Trott*, Mr. *Hart*, Mr. *Delaconsiliere*, Col. *Bull*, Mr. *Butler*, and Mr. *Jacob Satur*, and acquainted them with what he had heard, and that he had met in the Town Mr. *Skene* and Mr. *Berrisford*, who told him that those who had designed to wait on him as above related, had chang'd



their Minds, and were dispers'd and gone to their respective Homes. Upon all which he desir'd the Council's Opinion what was proper to be done ; who unanimously advis'd him, That considering they had alter'd their Resolution of waiting on their Governor, no further Notice should be taken of their Proceedings, until such time as they should meet as an Assembly, and the matter should be reviv'd.

This I have mention'd more particularly, to shew that if Mr. *Johnson* did not act in a more vigorous Manner, on the first Notice he had of the Designs of the People, it was owing to the Advice of his Council, who he was resolv'd to be guided by, tho' contrary to his own Opinion, especially by Mr. *Trott*, in whose Favour the *Proprietors* had shewn themselves so partial.

Before and after this, the Gentlemen that were chosen to be of the Assembly had many private Meetings in the Country ; their Association was form'd, as before mention'd, and almost every body in the whole Province did sign it, except some few who more immediately belong'd to the *Proprietors*: In it they promis'd and agreed to stand by and support whatsoever should be done by their Representatives then newly chosen, in disengaging the Country from the Yoke and Burthen they labour'd under from the *Proprietors*, and putting the Province under the government of His Majesty.

Having thus previously fortified themselves by the Consent of the People, they met according to the Tenor of their Writs, about the 10th of *December*, 1719 : and the Governor sending them a Message as usual, that he was ready, with the Council, to receive them, and to order them to chuse the Speaker ; they came in a Body, and Mr. *Middleton* deliver'd himself in the following Manner.



*May it please your Honour,*

"I am order'd by the Representatives of the People here present, to tell you, that according to your Honour's Order, we are come to wait upon you; I am further order'd to acquaint you, that we own your Honour as our Governour, you being approv'd by the King; and as there was once in this Province a legal Council, Representing the *Proprietors* as their Deputies; which Constitution being now alter'd, we do not look upon the Gentlemen present to be a legal Council; so I am order'd to tell you, That the Representatives of the People do disown them as such, and will not act with them on any Account."

This *Speech* was deliver'd in Writing, at the Governor's Desire, and sign'd by Mr. *Middleton*, as President, and Twenty-two more of the Assembly. They had (I suppose, before they came to the Governor) in their own House, come to the following Resolutions, viz.

"That the several Laws hereafter mention'd, and pretended to be Repeal'd, are still in Force within this Province, and could not be Repeal'd, or made Void or Null, but by the General Assembly of this Province: and that all Publick Officers, and others, are to have due Regard to the same accordingly.

(a) "*An act intituled, An Act for declaring the Rights of the House of Commons for the Time being, to Nominate a Publick Receiver.*

"*An Act, intituled, An Act for Laying an Imposition on Negroes, Liquors, and other Goods and Merchandizes, &c.*

"*An act intituled, An Act to Ascertain the Form and*

(a) These Three Acts are those the Lords Repeal'd, at the same time they appointed a new Council.

*Manner of Electing Members to Represent the Inhabitants, &c.*

*Resolv'd,*

“ That the Writs whereby we the Representatives here met were elected, are illegal: First, Because they are sign'd by such a Council, as, we conceive, the *Proprietors* have not a Power to appoint.

“ Secondly, For that their Council does consist of a greater Number of Members than the *Proprietors* themselves are, which, we believe, is contrary to the Design and original Intent of their Charter, and approaching too near the Method taken by His Majesty and his Predecessors, in his Plantations, whom they ought not to pretend to imitate or follow; His Majesty not being confin'd to any Number in his Council in his Plantations, but as he thinks fit Himself; but the *Proprietors*, as Subjects, we believe, are bound by a Charter.

“ Thirdly, Were there no Doubt of the Legality of the Council, yet, according to the *Proprietors* Instructions, there was not a sufficient Number to dissolve the last Assembly, one of the Council Signing being a Foreigner, not Naturalized, and consequently not capable of doing any Act of Government in any of the *British* Dominions, and expressly contrary to the *Lords Proprietors* Charter; and a high Act of Presumption in them thus to impose upon His Majesty's Free People of this Province, for the aforesaid Reasons.

*Resolv'd,*

“ That we cannot Act as an Assembly, but as a Convention, delegated by the People, to prevent the utter Ruin of this Government, if not the Loss of the Province, until His Majesty's Pleasure be known.

“ That the *Lords Proprietors* have, by such their Proceedings, unhing'd the Frame of Government, and for-



feited their Right to the same ; and that an *Address* be prepared, to desire the Honourable *Robert Johnson* Esq; our present Governor, to take the Government upon him in the King's Name, and to Continue the Administration thereof until His Majesty's Pleasure be known."

These bold proceedings very much alarmed the Governor and his Council, and put them on considering what could be done, Whether rough or gentle Means were to be used ? It was Mr. *Trott's* and the Majority of the Council's Opinion, That the Defection was too general to use any other Means than mild Expostulations, the People being all engaged in their Interest ; but if those should fail, they might then be Dissolv'd, which would make them disperse, and so put an end to the Dispute for the present ; but this, it was thought, might have its ill consequences, and therefore was the last Method to be try'd : For how should they raise Money to fortify and secure themselves from the *Spaniards*, who they expected every Day to attack them ? The *Lords Proprietors* had again Repeal'd the *Duty Law*, so that many People refus'd to pay any Duties ; and this was the only Fund they had to repair their Works.

The Result of these Debates, was, a Message, That the Governor and Council desir'd a Conference with them. To which they answer'd, That they would not receive any Message or Paper from the Governor, in Conjunction with those Gentlemen he call'd his Council ; and this constrain'd Mr. *Johnson* to send for them in his own Name, when he made them the following Speech :

" When I sent for you the other Day, I intended to have desir'd you to have chosen your Speaker, to be presented to me as usual, and then I did propose to have spoke to you in the following Manner :

" Your being met together at a Time when there was



never more Occasion for a ready Dispatch of Publick Business, and a good Harmony betwixt the Upper and Lower House ; I must recommend that to you, and nothing will be wanting on my Part to promote a good Understanding betwixt the *Lords Proprietors* and the People, at present (to my great Affliction) I fear too much interrupted: I must therefore in the first Place, recommend to you, That you will, without Delay, or other Matter intervening, fall upon proper Methods for raising Money for finishing the Repairs of the Fortifications, and providing Stores of War, which are much wanted. The Intelligence which I have of the Designs of our Enemies, which makes this Work so necessary shall be laid before you.

“ I am sorry the *Lords Proprietors* have been induced (by a Necessity, to Defend and Support their just Pre-rogatives) at this Juncture to disannul some of your Laws ; if they had not thought the letting those Acts subsist, might have render'd their Right of Repeal precarious, they would have suffer'd them still to continue. I hope from you therefore a Respectful behaviour towards them, that we may not feel any more their Displeasure in so sensible a Manner, as the Loss (in this Time of Need) of our *Duty Law*, and which has also occasion'd an Injunction to Me and the Council, from acting with any Assembly who shall dispute their *Lordships* undoubted Right of Repealing Laws, and appointing Officers Civil and Military.

“ I find some are jealous and uneasy on Account of Rumours spread, That you design to alter the *Tax Act*, for sinking your Paper Currency. Publick Credit ought to be Sacred, and it is a standing Maxim, *That no State can subsist longer than their Credit is maintain'd*: I hope therefore you have no such Intentions, which

would put me under a Necessity of doing what I have never yet done ; I mean, disagreeing with you.

“ I expect therefore you will make good what the Publick is answerable for, and proceed to such farther Methods for paying our Debts, as shall be both Honourable and Proper, and best adapted to our Circumstances.

“ The Alarm from the Southward, about five Months since, obliged me to be in a Posture of Defence, and occasion'd some Charges, the Accounts of which shall be laid before you ; and I desire you will provide for the Discharge of them : I think also the *Militia Acts* want some Amendments, and that you should contrive to keep a good Watch in *Charles Town*.

“ This is what I intended to have recommended to you : but Mr. *Middleton's* telling me, in the Name of the rest, that you would not Act *with*, and your surprising Message since, that you will not receive any thing *from* me, in Conjunction with my Council, has made it necessary for me to take this Occasion of talking with that Plainness and Freedom so Extraordinary a Proceeding of yours requires. And First, I must take Notice of your Message, wherein you say, you own me as Governor because I am approv'd of by the King ; but that you disown the Council to be a Legal one, nor will act with them on any account whatsoever ; and this is subscrib'd by all your Members : but upon Examining, I find it to be pretty Dark and Evasive, and seems, as you would avoid expressing in plain Terms, what I have too much Cause to fear is your Design, I mean, to Renounce all Obedience to the *Lords Proprietors* : And this I cannot but think you propose from all your Words and Actions. You say, you acknowledge me, because I am approv'd of by the King ; but you take no notice of my



Commission from the *Proprietors*, which is what makes me Governor. The Confirmation of the King, only signifies his Majesty's Approbation of the Person the *Lords Proprietors* have Constituted; but it is my Commission and Instruction from them, that not only grants, but limits my Power, and contains the Rules by which I must Act, and are to warrant and vouch my Actions; therefore to avoid declaring in express Terms, your renouncing the *Lords* Power, and at the same time doing it in effect, is to create perpetual Doubts and Disputes, and is not acting with that Sincerity and Plainness which ought to be used in all Publick Debates, and especially in Matters of so great Concern as this is, and upon which so great Consequences depend.

“ I do Require and Demand of you therefore, and expect you Answer me in plain and positive Terms, Whether you own the Authority of the *Lords Proprietors* as Lords of this Province, and having Authority to Administer or Authorise others to Administer the Government thereof; saving the Allegiance of Them and the People to His Most Sacred Majesty King GEORGE? Or, Whether you absolutely renounce all Obedience to Them, and Those Commission'd and Authoris'd by Them? Or, Whether you admit their General Power, and only dispute that particular Branch of their Authority, in Constituting a Council after the Manner they have now done? If you deny their General Power and Authority in this Province, and say, that their Lordships have forfeited their Charter, as Mr. *Berrisford* Asserted, and you all Acquiesc'd in; Then I demand of you that you signify wherein the Lords have forfeited their Charter, and what particular Branch thereof they have broken: And I demand of you, That supposing (not granting) they have made a Forfeiture of their Charter; by what Power



do you presume to renounce their Authority, and to model a Government out of your own Heads, before such time as that, by a Court having Lawful Jurisdiction of the same, it shall be Adjudged that the Lords have made a Forfeiture of their Charter, and that the Powers granted them are Null and Void? If the King is of Opinion, that any Corporation or Society has made a Forfeiture of the Rights and Powers granted by their Charter, although His Majesty may have the Advice of his Attorney and Solicitor General, and his Judges and Council Learned in the Law, that such a Forfeiture has been made; and this He may more reasonably depend upon than any Advice or Assurance you can have: yet notwithstanding this, and His Supreme Authority as KING, He never dispossess'd the Persons of the Powers Granted them, before a *Quo Warranto* or some other Process had been brought, and Judgment obtain'd against the same. And if the King doth not assume such a Power, by what Authority do you assume it?

“I desire you further to consider the Consequence that attends that Assertion, Of the Charter being forfeited, before Judgment is given upon the same. For if it be so, then the Forfeiture must be from the time that the Fact was committed that caused the Forfeiture; and then you must remember, that by the Charter, the *Lords* have granted to them, not only the Power of ordering the Government, but also the Lands are granted to them by the said Charter; so that if there is a Forfeiture of the Rights and Prerogatives of the Government, there is also a Forfeiture of their Rights to the Lands; and to Grants made by their Authority of any Lands, since the Fact committed that caused the Forfeiture, according to your own Doctrine and Assertion, must be Null and Void: And therefore, how many Persons

Titles to their Lands will become Void, I leave you to consider: and tho', it may be you will assign some new late Fact, that you say you will cause such a Forfeiture, by which you may think to avoid the ill Consequences that attends the Titles to the Lands; yet know, that the Facts that you assign, may not be the only ones that may be thought to have made the Forfeiture of their Charter. And if your present Assertion is true, that they may be Dispossess'd before a Judgment; it may be other Persons may assign other Causes of the Forfeiture, besides those which you assign, which may have been committed many Years ago: For you cannot but know there have been Persons in the Province, that for several Years past have publicly asserted, that the Lords have done Facts, for which their Charter was become forfeited. Which if so, I leave you to consider what a Gate you will leave open to call in question, nay, utterly destroy several Hundreds of Peoples Titles to their Lands. And tho' you have most unjustly and untruly suggested to the People, to create a Prejudice in them to the *Lords Proprietors*, that their *Lordships* design'd to dispute their Titles to their Lands; yet, by this Assertion and Practice, you are the Persons that will not only call in question, but effectually destroy their Titles.

“ And if you persist in disowning the Council as now authoriz'd, then I desire you further to consider, in what Capacity I can act with you, and to what Purpose you pretend to sit and transact the Publick Business of the Province. You know very well I am not able to joyn with you in Passing any Law without the Consent of my Council; and surely you cannot pretend to pass Laws without me; And what an absolute Occasion there is now to pass some Laws, that the Province may be put in a Posture of Defence, and the contingent Charges



thereof defray'd, I leave you seriously to consider, and hope you will not lose the whole Province to the Enemy, for your own Humours.

“But I am further to tell you, That in case you continue to deny the authority of the Council, you cannot properly style yourselves the Representatives of the People; for you know very well you were chosen Members of Assembly, pursuant to, and by virtue of the Writs sign'd by my Self and Council; for it is not the People's Voting for you, that makes you become their Representatives; the Liege People of this, nor any other Province have Power to convene and chuse their Representatives without being authoriz'd so to do by some Writ or Order coming from Authority lawfully empower'd. And if you pretend that the Writs sign'd by me, as Governor, were sufficient: To that, I answer, That I do not pretend to any such Authority, but joyntly, and with the Consent of my Council, it being the express Words of my Commission; nor did I Sign the Writs in any other Capacity, than in Conjunction with my Council, who also sign'd the same. But if my Signing the Writs, were sufficient Authority for the People to chuse you; then you must allow, that as the Power lies solely in me to Call you, it lies also solely in me to Dissolve you; and therefore, if by your Actions you will force me to make use of that Power, I do hereby publickly Protest and Declare, you only must be answerable for the ill Consequences may attend such a Dissolution, and for the Loss of the Lives and Estates of the King's Subjects in this Province by any Attack may be made upon them by our publick Enemies the *Spaniards*, or from the *Indians*, by reason of the Province's not being put into such a Posture of Defence as it ought, and would, if you proceeded to transact the Publick Business under



a Lawful Authority ; and this I would have you seriously to consider of.

“Notwithstanding Stories that have been industriously spread to possess the People, that you are the only Persons who stand up for their Rights and Privileges ; by which, it may be, you have so far engag’d them in your Favour, that you may have their Assistance to enable you to commit any Act of Force or Violence upon the Government, and the Authority of the *Lords Proprietors* ; yet know, and be assur’d, That the Matters in Dispute are of that Consequence, that they must and will be decided by an Authority in *England*, having lawful Jurisdiction of the same ; and that there it must be a Law and Right that must justify your Claims, and not the Consent and Approbation of the People of *Carolina*, who will have no Weight there, but the Right and Merit of the Cause.

“I must farther mention to you, That ’t is notoriously known, you have promoted two Forms of Associations, and have perswaded the People to sign them. How far you can be justified at Home, behoves you to consider : But as I am satisfied no Matter of such Publick Concern ought to be carry’d on without my Knowledge, so I do hereby (a) Require and Demand of you, an attest-ed Copy of both Associations ; and though it may not concern me to have the Names of every individual Person that has sign’d them, yet I do insist upon it, that you do acquaint me, which of your own Members have sign’d both, or either of them, as also the Names of such Persons who have Commissions, or hold any Places Civil or Military under their *Lordships*, or of such Persons who practice the Law in their *Lordships* Courts, and have sign’d them.

(a) Mr. *Johnson* never saw either of them.

“ To what is here Demanded of you, I do Require your plain and positive Answer in express Terms, and that you do in Writing give me the same in a Body, and under your Hands.”

This long Speech, which was also given them in Writing, they were not long considering of, but soon return'd with the following Message:

“ We have already acquainted you, That we would not receive any Message or Paper from your Honour, in Conjunction with the Gentlemen you are pleas'd to call your Council; therefore we must now again repeat the same, and beg Leave to tell you, That the Paper your Honour read and deliver'd to us, we take no Notice of, nor shall we give any farther Answer to it but in *Great-Britain*.

Immediately after this, they came with the following Address to the Governor.

*South-Carolina,*

To the Honourable *Robert Johnson, Esq;*

*The Humble ADDRESS of the Representatives of the Inhabitants of the said Province, now conven'd at Charles Town.*

*May it please your Honour,*

“ It is with no small Concern that we find ourselves oblig'd to Address your Honour, in a Matter which nothing but the absolute Necessity of Self-Preservation could at this Juncture have prevail'd on us to do. The Reasons are already by us made known to your Honour and the World, therefore we forbear to rehearse them; but proceed to take Leave to assure you, That it is the



greatest Satisfaction imaginable to us, to find throughout the whole Country, that universal Affection, DefERENCE and Respect the Inhabitants bear to your Honour's Person, and with what passionate Desire they wish for a Continuance of your gentle and good Administration; and since we, who are intrusted with, and are the Assertors of their Rights and Liberties, are unanimously of Opinion, That no Person is fitter to Govern so Loyal and obedient a People to His Sacred Majesty, King *GEORGE*, so we most earnestly desire and intreat your Honour, to take upon you the Government of this Province, in his Majesty's Name, 'till his Pleasure shall be known; by which Means we are convinc'd, that this, (at present) unfortunate Colony may flourish, as well as those who feel the happy Influence of his Majesty's immediate Care.

“ As the Well-being and Preservation of this Province depends greatly on your Honour's complying with our Requests, so we flatter our selves, that you who have express'd so tender a Regard for it on all Occasions, and particularly in Hazarding your own Person in an Expedition against the Pirates, for its Defence, an Example seldom found in Governors; so we hope, Sir, that you will exert your self at this Juncture for its Support; and we promise your Honour, on our Parts, the most faithful Assistance of Persons duly sensible of your Honour's great Goodness, and big with the Hopes and Expectation of his Majesty's Protection and Countenance.

“ And we farther beg Leave to assure your Honour, That we will in the most Dutiful Manner Address His Most Sacred Majesty King *GEORGE*, for the Continuance of your Government over us, under whom we doubt not to be a Happy People.”



To this the Governor return'd the following Answer :  
*Gentlemen,*

" I am Oblig'd to you for your good Opinion of me ; but I hold my Commission from the *true and absolute Lords and Proprietors of this Province*, (a) who recommended me to His Majesty, and I have His Approbation ; it is by that Commission and Power I Act, and I know of no Power or Authority can dispossess me of the same, but those only who gave me those Authorities. In Subordination to them, I shall always Act, and to my utmost maintain their *Lordships* just Power and Prerogatives, without encroaching on the People's Rights and Privileges. I do not expect or desire any Favour from you, only that of seriously taking into your Consideration the approaching Danger of a Foreign Enemy, and the Steps you are taking to involve your selves and this Province in Anarchy and Confusion."

And now, they having fully declar'd what they intended, and the Governor and his Council finding nothing was to be expected from them, but to put the Country into the utmost Confusion, he resolv'd to Dissolve them immediately ; and accordingly, that very Afternoon, he issued a Proclamation to that Purpose : But they order'd it to be tore out of the Martial's Hands, and the *Convention* (as they now call'd themselves) issued a Proclamation in their own Names, which was in Substance, To Order and Direct all Officers Civil and Military, to hold their Offices and Employments until farther Orders from them ; And finding Mr. *Johnson* would not come into their Schemes, they resolv'd to have a Governor of their own Chusing. And accordingly they chose Colonel *Moor*, who was Commander in Chief of the Militia, under and next to the Governor,

(a) This is the Title the Charter gives them.

but had been remov'd from his Command some small Time before, on account of his being very warm in opposing the Authority of the *Proprietors*.

On *Monday* the 21st of *December*, 1719, Mr. *Johnson* came to Town from his Plantation, being inform'd they design'd to Proclaim their Governor in the King's Name, and writ Circular Letters to his Council to meet him, but they did not come; he had talk'd to Colonel *Paris*, the Commanding Officer of the Militia of the Town, and engag'd him in his Interest, as he thought, and as he had order'd the Town Companies to be Review'd the 21st of *December*, on Account of the Advice he had receiv'd from the *Havanah*, as before related; and finding they pitch'd on that Day to Proclaim their Governor, that they might have the better Opportunity to draw them, when together, in Arms, to forward their Purposes, (for they could not well be in Arms, but by some Authority) he, on the *Saturday before*, order'd, That they should not Muster, but wait for farther Orders; and had given particular Orders to Colonel *Paris*, That he should not suffer a Drum to beat in the Town; and had Assurances from him, his Orders should be obey'd: Notwithstanding which, when he came early on the *Monday Morning*, he found the Militia drawn up in the Market-Place, with Colours flying at the Forts, and on-board all the Ships in the Harbour, and great Solemnity preparing for their Proclaiming their Governor. It would be tedious to the Reader, to enumerate all that he did at this Juncture to oppose their Proceedings; some he menaced, and handled more roughly, and some spoke fair to, to perswade them from what they were doing; and going to the Commanding Officer, he ask'd him, how he durst appear in Arms, contrary to his Orders? and commanded him in the King's Name to disperse his Men.



But he answer'd, He was obeying the Orders of the Convention. And the Governor approaching him, he commanded his Men to present their Muskets at him, and bid him stand off, at his Peril. Mr. *Johnson* was in hopes some Gentlemen and others might have joyn'd him ; but the Defection was so general, that hardly a Man but was in Arms ; and only one of his Council and Mr. *John Lloyd* walk'd with him ; and it appear'd the latter of these was sent under pretence of being his Friend, by the other Party, to prevent any hot action he might have been provok'd to do, for that was his Business all the Day ; and Two Days afterwards he was sworn into their New Council.

Col. *Rhett*, who had always pretended to be very Popular, and to have great Power with the People, and to be extremely in the Interest of the *Lord's Proprietors*, did not appear in the *Lords* Behalf to assist Mr. *Johnson* : And indeed this whole affair was owing to his and Mr. *Trott's* Councils, who did, as usual in such Cases, Leave their Masters in the Lurch ; as will appear by their future Transactions. In short, they proceeded to Proclaim their Governor, which they did in spite of all the opposition Mr. *Johnson* could give them ; which could not be much, he being, as I have said, left entirely alone ; altho' he did, in their March, stop the Militia that attended them, and had almost perswaded them to alter their Opinion ; which if he could have effected, he might have been able to have given a great deal of Trouble to the opposite Party : But Sir *Hovendine Walker* was with them, and put them in mind to keep up the Spirits of the People ; which occasion'd their turning back and Haranguing their Men, who thereupon marched on as they formerly intended.

Surely, after this, no one will say but Mr. *Johnson* did



all that was possible to prevent the Defection of the People: And these minute circumstances we have been the more particular in, because their *Lordships* have been made believe, that he was himself in the Design, and conniv'd at Their transactions, which he might have prevented if he would. A thing very improbable, that he should join with the People to Divest himself of his Government: and when he had done so, refuse to Govern them in their own Way as they desir'd: Which, it is plain, he might have done, but that he thought it was inconsistent with his Honour, and the Trust repos'd in him by the *Lords Proprietors*; and that his so doing, might have been resented by His Majesty as a presumptuous Act he had no Authority for.

The People having thus overcome all the little Opposition could be made, proceeded to chuse a Council of Twelve, after the manner of the King's Governments; of these, Sir *Hovendine Walker* was chosen President; so they had now their Governor, Council, and Convention, (as they call'd themselves;) but they soon after voted themselves an Assembly, and as such, made Laws, appointed Officers, especially a new Chief Justice in the Place of Mr. *Trott*, a Secretary, a Provost-Marshal, and voted, That no one should be capable of bearing an Office in the Province that own'd the Authority of the *Lords Proprietors*, except such as related to their own particular Revenue, which were Mr. *Rhett* and Mr. *Yonge*, their Receiver and Surveyor-General: they also pass'd a new Duty Law, and several laws for raising Money to defray the Expence of the Government, to pay Agents whom they sent to represent their Affairs to His Majesty, and for other Uses.

Governor *Johnson* immediately writ home to the *Lords Proprietors*, to give them an Account of what had hap-

pen'd, as he did also to the Lords Commissioners for Trade and Plantations, to the following Effect.

“ That the People labouring under great Difficulties occasion'd by the Debts contracted by the late *Indian* War, and their having receiv'd Intelligence of the Designs of the *Spaniards* to attack the Place, which is unhappily situated as a Frontier, not only to them, but also to the *French*, who had lately made a great Settlement, and sent many people to *Mississippe*, together with the Danger that continually threaten'd them of another *Indian* War, and some Differences lately arisen between the *Lords Proprietors* and the People, about their Privileges.

“ These Things had stirred up the Minds of *several* of the richest Inhabitants, who had put it into the Heads of the rest, that neither They nor their Proprietors could be safe in their Persons or Estates, nor the Province subsist, without the immediate Protection of the King ; so that they had with one Accord disclaim'd all Obedience to the *Proprietors*.

“ That he apprehending himself bound in Honour to Govern those People in no other Way than as he was Commission'd by the *Lords Proprietors*, and *instructed* by his Majesty, to whom he had always been a Faithful and Loyal Subject, and the People having for that Cause disown'd his Authority, with that of the said *Lords*, he humbly hop'd their Lordships would interest themselves so far, as that if His Majesty thought fit to take the Government into his own Hands, he might be honour'd with his Majesty's immediate Commission, or otherwise, that he might be restor'd to his Government as formerly, by his Majesty's special Command ; the present Disturbances not being in any wise owing to his Male-Administration, as might appear by the *Ad-*



*dress* of the People to him, a copy of which he inclosed them.

He also writ to Col. *Rhett*, who was Surveyor and *Comptroller* of the Customs, as well as the *Lords Proprietors* Receiver, to the following Purpose :

“ That the People having found Means to hinder almost all the Masters of Ships from coming to him with their Clearances, or from Clearing in the Lawful Secretaries Office, notwithstanding the Laws of Trade made such Neglects the Forfeiture of Ship and Cargo, and that the Naval Officer by his Order, did all he could to induce them to act according to Law.

“ And that whereas he was sensible the Defection was so general, and his Authority so depress’d by them, that he had no Power left to punish them ; he therefore could think of no other way to oblige them to their Duty, but by stopping their being Clear’d by the Custom-House Officers, until they paid their Duty to him as the Lawful Governour of the Province. He therefore desir’d that Col. *Rhett* would consult his Powers and Instructions, as Surveyor and *Comptroller* of the Customs, and act in this Affair as he should think agreeable to them, the Laws of Trade, and the Service of His Majesty, and the *Lords Proprietors*, as he was likewise their Lordships Officer.”

If Mr. *Rhett* had thought fit to have order’d this to have been done, according to Mr. *Johnson’s* Project, and which he would have done, if he had consulted the *Lords Proprietors* Interest, it would have given the Revolutioners a great deal of Trouble : They would have seen their Authority disown’d by all the transient People, and two Governments kept up in Opposition one to the other. The Fees due to the Governor and Secretary, would have gone in their proper Chanel, in



spite of all Opposition, which were otherwise transferr'd to those which had no Right to them; and the Masters of Ships would most readily have gone where they could have had the most authentick Clearances. But the Colonel's Spleen to Mr. *Johnson* outweighed his Duty to his Masters; and the new Government was so sensible of the Service he did them in refusing this, (that, contrary to their own Vote, that no one should bear an Office in the Province, who own'd the Authority of the *Proprietors*,) they made him Overseer of the Repairs of the Fortifications in *Charles Town*, by which he got considerably; and he, at the same time also, accepted of a Commission from the new Governor *Moor*, of Lieutenant-General of the Militia. This might be deem'd a *Salvo* for their Vote, for it was tacitly disowning the *Proprietors* Authority, and owning theirs: But it is wonderful he could still keep his Credit with the *Lords Proprietors*, to whom he wrote on this Occasion, to assure them that he accepted of that Commission from Mr. *Moor* to promote their Service, because it might give him an Opportunity of bringing the People again over to their Interest: And (as I am inform'd) they readily believ'd him, and sent him a Letter of Thanks, and a Confirmation of his Commission.

Soon after this, the New Government sent Home Col. *Barnwell*, their Agent, to lay their Grievances before His Majesty, to beg his Protection, and that he wou'd be pleas'd to take them under His own immediate Government. Much about the same time, Mr. *Trott* went also to *England*, and offer'd Governor *Johnson* so to represent Affairs, that he might have his Government restor'd him, if he would contribute to his Expences. Which he refusing, from thence may very reasonably be attributed the *Proprietors* Neglect of him; for they never

so much as wrote him one Line, to Approve or Disapprove of his Proceedings ; which shew'd their utmost Neglect of him. No equal Return for the Expence and Fatigue he had been at for their Service.

Much about this Time, there came certain Advice, That the *Spaniards* were actually fitting out a Fleet at the *Havana*, to attack *Providence* and *South-Carolina*, and that it was uncertain which of the two Places they would begin with. The New Government proclaim'd Martial Law, and order'd all the People to be in Arms at *Charles Town*. Governor *Johnson* took this Opportunity again, to try to bring the People to Reason, by Representing to them the ill Consequences that might attend their acting under an unlawful Authority ; on which Occasion he writ the following Letter to the *Convention*, who had then voted themselves an *Assembly*.

*Gentlemen,*

“ I Flatter my self, that the Invasion which at present threatens the Province, has awaken'd a Thought in you, of the Necessity there is of the Forces acting under a Lawful Authority and Commission. The Inconveniences and Confusion of not admitting it, are so obvious, I need not mention them. I have hitherto born the Indignities put upon me, and the Loss I sustain by being put out of my Government, with as much Temper as the Nature of the Thing will allow of, 'till such time as His Majesty's Pleasure shall be known ; but to have another assume my Authority, when Danger threatens the Province, and Action is expected, and to be depriv'd of the Opportunity of Serving the Publick in my Station, as I am indispensably bound to do upon such Occasions, I being answerable to the King for any Neglect regarding



the Welfare of the Province, is what I cannot sit down patiently with.

*Gentlemen,*

“ I am willing, with my Council, to consult and advise with you for the Good and Safety of the Province in this Time of imminent Danger, as a *Convention* of the People, as you first call'd your selves. Nor do I see, in this present Juncture of Affairs, any Occasion of Formalities in our Proceedings, or that I explain by whose Authority I Act in Grants of Commissions, or other Publick Orders. (a) Mr. *Moor's* Commission you have given him, does not pretend to say it is deriv'd from the King. You have already confess'd, I am invested with some Authority you do approve of, and that's enough.

“ What I insist upon, is, To be allow'd to Act as Governor, because I am approv'd of by the King; I do not apprehend, at present, there is a Necessity of Acting any Thing but what relates to Military Affairs; and I do believe People will be better satisfy'd, and more ready to advance Necessaries, to trust the Publick, and to obey my Commands, (by Virtue of the King's Authority, which I have) if left to their Liberty, than any other Person in the Province, and in a short Time we may expect His Majesty's Pleasure will be known.

“ If my Reasons have not the Weight with you I expect they should, you ought at least to put it to a Vote; that if a Majority be against it, I may have that to justify my self to the King and the World, who ought to be satisfy'd that I have done all I can to serve the Country, and do my Duty in my Station.”

The *Convention* did not think fit to give any Answer to this Letter, but continu'd their Sitting, and doing Busi-

(a) This *Convention* gave Mr. *Moor* a Commission to Govern them.



ness in the same Way they had begun: But Sir *Hovendine Walker* being Out-of-Humour at some of their Proceedings, he retir'd to his Plantation, and they chose Mr. *Richard Allein* (who they had before appointed Chief Justice) President of their Council in his stead.

They order'd the Fortifications of the Town to be repair'd; which was done in a great Hurry and Haste, under the Inspection of Colonel *Rhett*, but so slightly, that in a very little time they wanted as much Repairing as ever. This necessary Work cost a great Sum of Money; besides which, they voted their Governor 2500*l.* a Year, and their Chief Justice 800*l.* current Money of the Province, and transmitted to their Agents in *England* 1000*l.* Sterling. To defray all which Expences, they pass'd a Law for laying a Tax on Lands and Negroes, to raise 30,000*l.* for the Service of the current Year.

The Governor and his Friends refus'd to pay this Tax, the Act not being made by lawful Authority; but they were resolv'd to be obey'd, and forc'd every Body (except Mr. *Johnson*) to comply, by Distraining on their Negroes, who they took and sold at publick Auction, and apply'd the Money to the paying their Taxes; and thus they were intirely fix'd, both in their Legislative and Executive Capacity, in the full Possession of the Government.

The whole Country was in Arms for above a Fortnight, and several of the Country Companies of the Militia were drawn down to defend the Town; there being an Account, That the *Spanish* Fleet from the *Havana* was actually sail'd. But this Expedition of theirs, ended in an Attempt they made on *Providence*; where they were repuls'd by Governor *Rogers*, and lost

most of their Fleet by Storm, in endeavouring to return back to their Port.

The *Spaniards* Designs being frustrated, and at an end, gave Leisure to the *Flambrough* Man of War to come from *Providence* to *Carolina*, to her Station, when the Commander, *Captain Hildesley*, was courted by the Contending Governors, who thought himself oblig'd to declare for Mr. *Johnson*. This, with Mr. *Johnson's* ordering the Secretary Mr. *Hart* to keep from the Publick Records, and the Clergy's refusing to marry without his License, gave them no small Trouble; and which, with the Perswasion of him and his Friends, had gain'd him (as he was in hopes) a considerable Party; inso-much that he propos'd, with the Assistance of the aforesaid Capt. *Hildesly*, and Capt. *Pearce*, Commander of His Majesty's Ship the *Phoenix*, who then happen'd to come into the Harbour, to frighten them into a compliance of Surrendring to him the Government, by a Shew of their Men before the Town. But they were not so to be terrfy'd, they being in a Town regularly fortify'd, and 70 Pieces of Cannon mounted on their Ramparts, and near 500 Men within it. So that Project was frustrated, and cost Mr. *Johnson* a great deal of Trouble as well as Expençe.

And now Letters came from *England*, That the *Lord's Proprietors* had sold their Charter to three *Quakers*, who pretended to divide the Country into Shares, which were to be Stock-Jobb'd in *Exchange-Alley*. This again reviv'd and added Fuel to their old Animosities: They now became Outragious, and so Angry, there was no composing them. What had us'd to be said to them by the Friends of the *Proprietors*, That tho' they were our Fellow Subjects, yet some of them were Men of the best Quality in *England*, and on that score ought to



have a Deference shewn between them, was no longer an Argument. The *Lords Proprietors* were now *Quakers*, and might in time be transferr'd to no Body could know who, perhaps the meanest of the People. But this Project was put an End to, by an *Act of Parliament for Suppressing Bubbles*, in the Year 1720.

The Country's Agents procur'd a Hearing before the then Lords of the Regency in Council, His Majesty being in *Germany*; when their Excellencies were of opinion, The *Lords Proprietors* had forfeited their *Charter*, and order'd the Attorney General to take out a *Scire facias* against it. They also appointed General *Francis Nicholson*, Provisional Governor, with His Majesty's Commission. And this put an End to any farther Attempts on the Part of Mr. *Johnson*, and was a good Reason to perswade any of his friends from joining with, or Assisting him any farther, now that what was done had a sort of a Sanction from the Government of *England*.

And thus the Government became the King's, to the great Joy of the People of that province, who, if they have acted (as it cannot be deny'd they have) in a Manner not the most Legal; the Necessities of their affairs must plead their Excuse. It plainly appears, by their Address to Mr. *Johnson*, they did it with great Regret towards him, (a) whose Father had formerly done great Services to the Province, and they never had a Governor they lov'd better. And I believe it will be thought that the *Lords Proprietors* gave them no small Provocations, but made it almost absolutely Necessary for them to do what they did, since they found there was no other Way of getting rid of their Chief Justice *Trott*, who had Ty-

(a) The Country was attack'd by the *French* and *Spaniards* in 1706, when he was Governor; and he fortified *Charles Town*.



raniz'd over them for many Years, and tho' often complain'd of, they could never get remov'd: Which together with the Right the *Lords Proprietors* insisted on, of Repealing their Laws, the absolute Necessity they lay under of the more immediate Assistance of the Crown, together with their refusing to part with their Lands; all these concurring, made them resolve to run all Hazards, to have them remedied.

To sum up all therefore, It is most Humbly Hoped, That after the Charge the Crown has been at in Protecting and Supporting the People of *Carolina*, and which is the only Power that can Protect them, (the End of all Government) that they will not now again be left destitute of that Support, without which they cannot subsist, but must abandon the Country the first war that may happen with the Crown of *Spain*, or if their *Indians* should think fit again to Quarrel with them. Their Defending themselves in the last War with the *Indians*, Maintaining Garisons in several Forts on their Frontiers ever since, and erecting them; repairing their Fortifications at *Charles Town* which were destroy'd by a Hurricane, and fitting out their Expeditions against the Pyrates, has put them very greatly in Debt, and would make it very difficult for them to defend themselves if the like Occasions should again present.

They therefore Pray for the Continuance of His MAJESTY's Government, who, ever since He has been pleas'd to take it upon Him, has Protected their Trade by His Ships of War, and their Country by His Forces, and who is always ready to hear the Complaints of His Subjects, tho' never so remote, and is the Only Power (under GOD) that is able to Defend them.

A  
DESCRIPTION  
OF  
SOUTH CAROLINA:  
CONTAINING  
MANY CURIOUS AND INTERESTING PARTICULARS  
RELATING TO THE  
*Civil, Natural and Commercial History of that Colony,*

NAMELY,  
THE SUCCESSION OF EUROPEAN SETTLERS THERE; GRANTS OF ENGLISH  
CHARTERS; BOUNDARIES; CONSTITUTION OF THE GOVERNMENT; TAXES;  
NUMBER OF INHABITANTS, AND OF THE NEIGHBOURING INDIAN NATIONS,  
&c. : THE NATURE OF THE CLIMATE; TABULAR ACCOUNTS OF THE ALTI-  
TUDES OF THE BAROMETER, MONTHLY, FOR FOUR YEARS; OF THE  
DEPTHS OF RAIN, MONTHLY, FOR ELEVEN YEARS; AND OF THE WIND'S  
DIRECTION, DAILY, FOR ONE YEAR, &c.  
THE CULTURE AND PRODUCT OF RICE, INDIAN CORN, AND INDIGO; THE  
PROCESS OF EXTRACTING TAR AND TURPENTINE; THE STATE OF THEIR  
MARITIME TRADE IN THE YEARS 1710, 1713, 1723, 1740, AND 1748,  
WITH THE NUMBER OF TONNAGE OF SHIPPING EMPLOYED, AND THE  
SPECIES, QUANTITIES AND VALUES OF THEIR PRODUCT EXPORTED IN ONE  
YEAR, &c.

*To which is added,*  
A VERY PARTICULAR ACCOUNT OF THEIR RICE TRADE, FOR TWENTY YEARS,  
WITH THEIR EXPORTS OF RAW SILK, AND IMPORTS OF BRITISH  
SILK MANUFACTURES FOR TWENTY-FIVE YEARS.

---

LONDON:  
PRINTED FOR R. AND J. DODSLEY, IN PALL MALL, 1761.

## P R E F A C E .

THE thing chiefly intended by this Description of South-Carolina, is, to give the people of Great Britian, an Account of all such matters and things relating thereto as they are most interested in knowing; for which purpose, the Maritime trade of that Colony is here traced, as far back, as any particulars of it could be met with, relating to the species, quantity or value of their exports or imports or to the quantity of shipping: from whence this great and national advantage will arise, that by knowing at what rate the trade of South-Carolina hath increased within forty years, from 1710 to 1750 the surest judgment may be formed of its future increase: and these facts may be collaterally useful by serving as a sort of scale to measure the increase of trade in the other British Colonies of North America; about which the people of this nation know much less than concerns them.

After saying this, it is unnecessary to mention more by way of preface than to acquaint the reader that every material fact or circumstance in this description is indexed under its proper head; and that such of them as depend upon time, or have relation to others under the same head are all arranged in such order as date, place, or natural gradation seem to require, leaving the miscellaneous matters still the last: by which means the trouble of refering to and reading page after page only to know one single fact or circumstance may be all avoided, for every article of product export and re-export is indexed and each particular thereof repeatedly referred to; so that if there be ten, twenty, or more particulars mentioned concerning any one species of product, and there are about forty about rice, the index will show in what page each of them is to be found, and which species of product are not articles of trade.\*

\* Owing to a difference between the paging of the original and the copy, we have omitted the index.



## CONTENTS.

---

### SECTION I.

THE first European settlers there; their expulsion by the natives; England's prior right by discovery; Grants of English charters; Ancient and present names and Boundaries; the latitude and longitude of principal places.

### SECTION II.

Quality of Land; nature of the soil; the methods of cultivating rice, Indian corn and Indigo; the Quantities of labor required for such culture; and the usual yearly crops per acre.

### SECTION III.

The nature of the climate; uncommon extremes of heat and cold; Tabular account of the highest and lowest altitudes of the Barometer; of the depth of Rain, and of the Wind's direction; various observations relating to heat, cold, vegetation, &c.; and the extraordinary effects produced by a severe frost.

### SECTION IV.

The present number of White inhabitants; of Militia Forces, and of negro Slaves; late increase of people by new settlers, and the probability of many thousand more being induced to come and settle there.

### SECTION V.

The nature of the constitution and government; the principal officers in each branch thereof, and by whom appointed and elected.

### SECTION VI.

The principal Taxes laid for the ordinary and extraordinary expenses of the province, government, and heads of expense whereto the moneys thereby raised commonly are appropriated.

## SECTION VII.

Their maritime Trade; the number and qualities of Seamen and shipping therein employed; the species of merchandize imported from Great Britain; the species, quantities and value of their own produce exported from thence; and of imported merchandize by them re-exported.

## SECTION VIII.

The situation, strength and connections of the several Indian Nations of neighbouring Indians; the hostilities they have committed on British subjects at the instigation of the French; and lately upon those instigators themselves; some particulars relating to the French forts, forces and proceedings in Louisiana and Mississippi.

A  
DESCRIPTION  
OF  
SOUTH CAROLINA.

---

SECTION I.

*The first European Settlers there ; their Expulsion by the Natives ; England's prior Right of Discovery ; Grants of English Charters ; ancient and present Names and Boundaries ; the Latitudes and Longitudes of principal Places.*

SOUTH CAROLINA is a part of that vast Tract of Land which extends northward as far as the Confines of *Virginia*, in the Latitude of Thirty six Degrees ; and Southward as far as the Bay of Mexico.

The whole Extent was formerly called *Florida*, and hath been successively possessed by the Spaniards, the French, and the English.

The Name Carolina, afterwards given to that Country, and still retained by the English, is generally thought to have been derived from Charles the Ninth of France ; in whose reign Admiral Coligny made some settlements on the Florida Coasts ; but the French were soon after driven from thence by the Spaniards, who in their turn were also expelled by the Natives.

From that time the whole Country lay a Derelict, abandoned by the European Nations, till Charles the



Second of England, in right of our first discovery by Sebastian Cabot, made a grant thereof to the Earl of Clarendon and Seven other Proprietors, by Charter bearing date at Westminster, the 27th of March 1663.

But the Limits mentioned in that Grant not reaching so far as our right of Discovery extended it was thought expedient to fix a boundary more conformable thereto, which was done by a second Grant of the same Prince, dated in June 1665, and it is by vertue of those Two Grants so founded upon our Right of first Discovery, as also in Right of several Purchases from the Princes and Cassiques, the original Inhabitants of Florida, that the English nation do most justly possess such parts of the said Country as are now known by the several names of North Carolina, South Carolina and Georgia.

The part called South Carolina, is bounded on the East by the Atlantic Ocean; on the West by the several nations of Indians; on the north, by North Carolina; and on the South it extends far beyond the southern limits of Georgia, which is bounded on that side by the river Alatomaha, but this not being so far to the Southward as the Limits prescribed by the before mentioned Charters, nor even so far as the Spaniards have at all times readily admitted to be our right, it is evident that a considerable part of the Territory of South Carolina lies to the Southward of Georgia.

The northern boundary of South Carolina is not so well agreed upon, as might be expected which is owing to the dishonest intentions of many lawless People, settled in those parts without legal Titles, and not to any want of attention in government, nor to any difficulty in the thing itself; but those people by keeping up a dispute about the boundaries of North and South Carolina, evade paying Quit-rents for their lands, &c: and so long

as they can enjoy the protection of Government without contributing their Quotas towards the expense of it, they will be keeping up the Dispute about Boundaries.

This they have hitherto done in such a manner as to defeat the good intention of all the Orders and Instructions from time to time given for terminating those Disputes and ascertaining the Boundary : which, in his Majesty's Instructions, is directed to be done by running a line thirty Miles to the Southward of Cape Fear River, parallel to, and observing the Course of that River to its Head, for the Boundary on that Side ; and though this Order is not only too explicit to be mistaken, but hath been put in Execution, or at least is said to have been so, the good Intention of it nevertheless Continues to be evaded.

The Western Boundary of South Carolina is formed by various Nations of Indians, viz, the Catawbaus, the Cherokees, the Chickesaws, the Creeks, and the Choctaws.

The Catawbaus are situated about Eighty miles from Saxagotha, a new Township in South Carolina, and are in Amity with the British Government.

The Cherokees form the northwestern Part of that Boundary : their nearest Towns are Three hundred Miles from Charles-Town, and they are in Alliance with us.

The Chickesaws, Creeks, and Choctaws form the other part of that western Boundary.

The latitude of the Bar of Charles-Town, the principal port in South Carolina, by the exactest Observations is 32 Degrees 40 Minutes North, the latitude of Win-yaw, another of the ports there, is———; and of Port Royal is 32 Degrees 5 Minutes ; these three are all the Ports of Trade at present in South Carolina.

St Augustine belonging to the Spaniards, lies in the



latitude of 29 Degrees 50 Minutes. The Havana is 23 Degrees, Isle Dauphine, or Massacre, at the Mouth of the river Mobile in the bay of Mexico, is in the Latitude of 30 Degrees North. The Town or Fort Condea is about Thirty miles due North from the Mouth of the River, these belong to the French: but Pensacola on the Isle St. Rose is Spanish, and is Fourteen leagues due East from the Isle of Dauphine: The other French Settlements upon the Mississippi, and in what they call Louisiana are all within our Charters.

The Longitudes have not been determined by good Celestial Observations: but by the best Correction are as follows—Charles-Town Bar 78 Degrees 45 Minutes West from the Meridian of London; Port Royal 79 Degrees 5 Minutes: and Winyaw———; St Augustine is reckoned 79 Degrees; The Havana———; and Mobile 90 Degrees 3 minutes.

## SECTION II.

*Quality of Land; Nature of the Soil; the Methods of Cultivating Rice, Indian Corn, and Indigo; the Quantities of Labour required for such culture; and the usual Yearly Crops per Acre.*

The land of South Carolina for a hundred and Fifty Miles back, is flat and Woody: intersected with many large Rivers, some of which rise out of the Cherokee Mountains, and after a winding course of some hundred miles, discharge themselves into the sea.

It is remarkable for the diversity of its soil: that near the Coast is generally Sandy, but not therefore unfruitfull; in other parts there is Clay, Loam, and Marl. I have seen of the Soil of some high Bluffs near the sides



of Rivers that exactly resemble Castile Soap, and is not less variegated with red and blue veins, nor less Clamy— There are dispersed up and down the Country several large Indian old Fields, which are lands that have been cleared by the Indians, and now remain just as they left them.

There arise in many places fine Savannahs or wide extended plains, which do not produce any trees : these are a kind of natural Lawns, and some of them as beautiful as those made by Art.

The Country abounds every where with large Swamps, which when cleared, opened and sweetened by Culture, yield plentiful crops of Rice : Along the Banks of our Rivers and Creeks, there are also Swamps and Marshes, fit either for Rice, or, by the hardness of their Bottoms for pasturage.

It would open too large a field to enter very minutely into the nature of the soil : and I think that this will sufficiently appear by the following account of what the Labour of one Negrœ employed on our best Lands will annually produce in Rice, Corn, and Indigo. The best land for Rice is a wet, deep, miry Soil : such as is generally to be found in Cypress Swamps ; or a black greasy Mould with a Clay foundation ; but the very best lands may be meliorated by laying them under water at proper seasons.

Good Crops are produced even the first year, when the surface of the Earth appears in some degree covered with the Trunks and branches of Trees : the proper Months for sowing Rice, are March, April, and May : the method is to plant it in Trenches, or Rows made with a hoe, about three Inches deep ; the Land must be pretty clear from Weeds ; and at the latter end of August or the Beginning of September, it will be fit to be reaped.

Rice is not the Worse for being a little green when cut, they let it remain on the stubble till dry, which will be in about two or three days, if the Weather be favorable, and then they house or put it in large stacks.

Afterwards it is threshed with a *flail*, and then winnowed; which was formerly a very tedious operation, but it is now performed with greater ease, by a very simple machine, a Wind Fan, but lately used here, and a prodigious Improvement.

The next part of the process is grinding which is done in small mills made of wood, of about two feet in diameter; it is then winnowed again and afterwards put into a Mortar made of Wood, sufficient to contain from Half a Bushel to a Bushel, when it is beat with a Pestle of a Size suitable to the Mortar and to the Strength of the Person who is to pound it; this is done to free the Rice from a Thick Skin, and is the most laborious Part of the Work. It is then sifted from the Flour and Dust, made by the pounding; and afterwards by a Wire-sieve, called a Market-sieve, it is separated from the broken and small Rice, which fits it for the Barrells, in which it is carried to Market.

They reckon thirty Slaves a proper number for a Rice Plantation, and to be tended with one Overseer; these in favourable Seasons and on good Land, will produce a surprising quantity of Rice; but that I may not be blamed by those, who being induced to come here on such favourable accounts, and may not reap so great a harvest; and that I may not mislead any person whatever, I choose rather to mention the common computation, throughout the Province, Communibus Annis: which is, that each good working hand employed in a Rice Plantation makes Four barrells and a half of Rice, each Barrel weighing Five Hundred Pounds neat; Besides a



sufficient Quantity of Provisions, of all Kinds for the Slaves, Horses, Cattle, and Poultry, of the Plantation, for the ensuing Year. Rice last Year bore a good price, being at a medium about Forty-five Shillings our Currency per Hundred Weight; and all this Year it hath been Fifty-five Shillings and Three pounds; though not many years ago it was sold at such low prices, as Ten and Twelve Shillings per Hundred.

Indian Corn delights in high loose Land, it does not agree with Clay, and is killed by much Wet; it is generally planted in Ridges, made by the Plow or Hoe, and in Holes about six or eight feet from each other; it requires to be kept free from weeds, and will produce, according to the goodness of the Land, from fifteen to fifty Bushels an Acre: Some extraordinary rich Land, in good Seasons, will yield Eighty Bushels: But the common Computation is, that a Negro will tend Six Acres, and that each Acre will produce from Ten to Thirty-five Bushels; it sells generally for about Ten Shillings Currency a Bushel, but is at present Fifteen.

Indigo is of several Sorts; what we have gone mostly upon, is the Sort generally cultivated in the Sugar Islands, which requires a high, loose Soil, tolerably rich, and is an Annual Plant; but the nilco Sort, which is common in this Country, is much more hardy and luxuriant, and is Perennial; its Stalk dies every Year, but it shoots up again next Spring: the Indigo made from it is of as good a Quality as the other, and it will grow on very indifferent Land, provided it be dry and loose.

An Acre of good Land may produce about Eighty Pounds Weight of good Indigo; and one Slave may manage Two Acres and upwards, and raise Provisions besides, and have all the Winter Months to saw Lum-



ber and be otherwise employed in ; but as much of the Land hitherto used for Indigo is improper, I am persuaded that not above Thirty Pounds Weight of good Indigo per Acre, can be expected from the Land at present cultivated. Perhaps we are not conversant enough in this Commodity, either in the Culture of the Plant, or in the Method of managing or manufacturing it, to write with certainty.

I am afraid that the Lime-water that some use to make the Particles subside, contrary, as I have been informed, to the practice of the French, is prejudicial to it, by precipitating different Kinds of Particles : and consequently incorporating them with the Indigo.

But I cannot leave this subject without observing how conveniently and profitable, as to the charge of Labour, both Indigo and Rice may be managed by the same Persons, for the Labour attending Indigo being over in the Summer Months, those who were employed in it may afterwards manufacture Rice in the ensuing Part of the Year, when it becomes most laborious ; and after doing all this, they will have some Time to spare for sawing Lumber and making Hogsheads, and other Staves, to supply the Sugar Colonies.

This Colony abounds in many other usefull Productions, of which it is not in my power to give a very particular Account ; but such of them as there is a Demand for in other Countries, are all specified in my Account of the exports of Charles-Town herewith transmitted. I have also mentioned the Quantity of each Species so exported, and the price it bore with us at the Time ; the knowledge of which two Particulars, in relation to each Sort, will, I believe, be more satisfactory in a National Sense, than any thing else that could be said about them.

I must therefore beg leave to refer to the said Account, and shall conclude this Head with observing, that hitherto there have not been any Mines discovered in the Province.

### SECTION III.

*The Nature of the Climate ; uncommon extremes of Heat and Cold ; Tabular Accounts of the highest and lowest Altitudes of the Barometer ; of the Depths of Rain, and of the Wind's Direction ; various Observations relating to Heat, Cold, Vegetation, &c. and the extraordinary Effects produced by a severe Frost.*

Our Climate is various and uncertain, to such an extraordinary Degree, that I fear not to affirm, there are no People on Earth, who, I think, can suffer greater extremes of Heat and Cold ; it is happy for us that they are not of long duration.

No Idea of either the one or the other can be formed from our Latitude, which, on other Continents, is found to be very desirable ; nor dare I to trace, by any physical reasoning, the Causes of these extremes ; lest I should amuse with vain Conjectures, those to whom I would not write any thing but Truth. I shall therefore content myself with setting down what we are sure of by Experiments.

In Summer the Thermometer hath been known to rise to 98 Degrees, and in Winter to fall to 10 Degrees.

I had for some time kept a Diary of the Weather, to please myself only—But having met with a Gentleman, who is curious in my own Way, and who hath done it with more Accuracy than the little Portions of Time stolen from the Duties of my Station would permit me

to do, I shall here give you his Tables, which are the result of Four Years' Barometrical Observations, taken Twice a Day, viz. at Noon and at Night. And of Four Years' Thermometrical Observations by Farenheit's Thermometer; and also his Account of the Depths of Rain which have fallen in Charles-Town within each Month and Year, for Eleven Years past; together with a Table of the Winds.



# TABLES

*Of the Highest and Lowest Altitudes of the Barometer at Charles Town, in South Carolina, within each month of the years 1737 to 1740 :*

AND ALSO,

*The Several Directions which the Wind had at the Times of these Altitudes.*

## EXPLANATIONS.

Where a \* is annexed to the Wind's Direction, it is to be understood that a North or East Wind preceded or succeeded. And where a ‡ is so annexed, it is to denote that a West or South Wind blew before or after.

### No. I.—IN THE YEAR 1737.

MONTHS.	The Greatest Altitudes.		WIND'S DIRECTION	The least Altitudes.		WIND'S DIRECTION
	Inches	100 parts		Inches	100 parts	
January, . . . . .	—	—	—	—	—	—
February, . . . . .	—	—	—	—	—	—
March, . . . . .	—	—	—	—	—	—
April, . . . . .	30	42	E.	29	48	W.
May, . . . . .	30	23	N.E.	29	85	S.
June, . . . . .	30	20	N.E.	29	85	W.
July, . . . . .	30	13	S.S.W.*	29	83	S.W.
August, . . . . .	30	18	E.	29	88	S.W.
September, . . . . .	30	33	N.N.E.	29	85	S.E.
October, . . . . .	30	33	E.	29	83	W.N.W.
November, . . . . .	30	58	N.	29	72	S.
December, . . . . .	30	60	N.	29	93	W.

## No. II.—IN THE YEAR 1738.

MONTHS.	The Greatest Altitudes.		WIND'S DIRECTION	The least Altitudes.		WIND'S DIRECTION
	Inches	100 parts		Inches	100 parts	
January, . . .	30	48	N.	29	88	S.W.
February, . .	30	38	N.E.	29	68	S.
March, . . . .	30	26	S.E.	29	58	S.
April, . . . . .	30	33	W.*	29	78	W.S.W.
May, . . . . .	30	35	E.	29	30	W.
June, . . . . .	30	30	E.	29	98	S.W.
July, . . . . .	30	38	E.	30	00	S.W.
August, . . . .	30	38	N.E.	29	98	S.W.
September, . .	30	38	E.	29	88	N.W.
October, . . . .	30	45	E.	29	68	W.
November, . . .	30	35	N.E.	29	58	W.
December, . . .	30	58	N.	29	75	N.N.W.†

## No. III.—IN THE YEAR 1739.

MONTHS.	The Greatest Altitudes.		WIND'S DIRECTION	The least Altitudes.		WIND'S DIRECTION
	Inches	100 parts		Inches	100 parts	
January, . . . .	30	70	N.	29	50	N.W.†
February, . . .	30	55	N.	29	85	W.
March, . . . . .	30	50	S.E.	29	65	W.
April, . . . . .	30	32	E.	29	75	N‡
May, . . . . .	30	28	E.	29	85	S.
June, . . . . .	30	18	S.*	29	86	S.
July, . . . . .	30	8	S.S.E.*	29	85	S.S.W.
August, . . . . .	30	26	E.	29	85	W.
September, . .	30	28	N.E.	29	85	N.E.‡
October, . . . .	30	32	N.N.E.	29	72	S.W.
November, . . .	30	51	N.	29	72	S.
December, . . .	30	60	E.N.E.	29	86	S.W.

## No. IV.—IN THE YEAR 1740.

MONTHS.	The Greatest Altitudes.		WIND'S DIRECTION	The least Altitude.		WIND'S DIRECTION	††
	Inches	100parts		Inches	100parts		
January, .	30	46	N.N.E.	29	76	W.	83
February,	30	54	N.N.E.	29	72	W.S.W.	74
March, . .	30	40	E.N.E.	29	60	W.	78
April, . .	30	48	E.	29	58	W.	75
May, . . .	30	30	S*	29	90	S.S.W.	44
June, . . .	30	28	E.S.E.	29	90	N.E.‡	34
July, . . .	30	22	W.	29	98	S.W.	29
August, .	30	25	N.E.	29	95	N.	37
September	30	36	N.E.	29	86	S.	48
October, .	30	50	N.	29	95	W.	61
November,	30	55	N.N.W.	29	73	S.W.	81
December,	30	58	N.N.E.	29	65	W.N.W.	79

†† The Barometer's mean Range.

The greatest Height of the Mercury in the Barometer in this Province is 30:70 Inches : its least Height is 29:48 Inches : and for these Twelve years last past, all the variations of the Barometer have been confined between these two extremes. Therefore, its Range in this Province, being 1:22 Inch. our Atmosphere varies only  $\frac{1}{25}$  [one twenty-fifth] Part of its Whole Weight, and in the warm months I have never seen the Range of the Barometer exceed  $\frac{58}{1000}$  [fifty-eighth Hundredth] parts of an Inch.

The mean Barometrical Station, taken from its greatest and least Heights is 30:09 Inches.

Our Easterly and Northerly Winds elevate the Mercury in the Barometer: and by Southerly and Westerly Winds the Mercury subsides.



The Weather, perhaps, is no where more variable—with respect to Heat than in Carolina; The changes are frequent, sudden and great, but the Decreases of Heat are always greater and more sudden than its Increases.

The greatest Incalescences of the Air which, in the course of Eight Years' Observation, I have known to take Place, in Twenty-four or Thirty Hours, were, 19 Degrees in the Spring, 24 in the Summer, 13 in Autumn, and 16 in the Winter.

Whereas the greatest Decrease of Heat in twenty-four or thirty Hours, were 35 Degrees in the Spring, 32 in the Summer, 27 in Autumn, and 44 in the Winter, and it frequently happens one Day is 10 or more Degrees colder or warmer than the preceding Day. On the tenth of January, 1745, at Two o'clock in the Afternoon, the Thermometer was at 70 Degrees; but the next Morning it was only at 15 Degrees, which was the greatest and most sudden change that I have seen.

In Summer, the Heat of the shaded Air, at two or three o'clock in the Afternoon, is frequently between 90 and 95 Degrees, but such extreames of Heat being soon productive of Thunder Showers, are not of long duration.

On the 14th, 15th, and 16th of June, 1738, at Three o'clock in the Afternoon, the Thermometer was at 98 Degrees; a Heat equal to the greatest Heat of the Human Body in health. I then applied a Thermometer to my Arm-pits, and it sunk one Degree, but in my Mouth and Hands it continued at 98 Degrees.

In my Table of Thermometrical Observations, 20 Degrees is the lowest Station of the Thermometer; but since the Time for which that Table was formed, I have

frequently seen the Thermometer much lower: Particularly on the 6th of February, 1747, at 8 o' th' Clock in the Morning, it was at the tenth Degree, and no doubt had been lower some hours before that, as the Spirits in the Thermometer were then rising, the Air being warmed by the Sun.

The Difference therefore between the most intense Heat and Cold of the shaded Air in this Province is Eighty-eight Degrees, which is a much greater Range than could well have been expected in this Latitude.

If the mean is taken between these Extreames of Heat and Cold, Fifty-four Degrees should be the temperate heat of this Province—but the Sum of the Thermometrical Stations divided by the Number of Observations which I have made, for some Years together, gives 65 and a half Degrees, which may therefore more justly be called the Temperate Heat in Carolina, which exceeds 48 Degrees, the Temperate Heat in England, more than that exceeds 32 Degrees the freezing Point.

The mean Heat of the shaded Air taken from the mean Nocturnal Heat and from the Mean Heat, at two or three o'Clock in the Afternoon, during the Four Seasons of the Year, is as followeth: In Spring, 61 Degrees, in Summer, 78, in Autumn 71, and in Winter 52.

The mean Heat of the shaded Air, at two or three o' th' Clock in the Afternoon, is 65 Degrees in the Spring, 82 in the Summer, 75 in Autumn, and 55 in Winter.

The mean Nocturnal Heat in those Seasons is, 57 Degrees in the Spring, 74 in Summer, 68 in Autumn, and 49 in the Winter. Therefore our Winter's mean Nocturnal Heat, exceeds the temperate heat in England.

As the Weather here is generally very serene the Sun's Rays exert more constantly their full Force ; and therefore when we are abroad and exposed to the Sun, we are acted upon by a much greater Degree of Heat, than that of the shaded Air ; for the Thermometer when suspended Five Feet from the Ground, and exposed to the Sun, and the reflected Rays from our Sandy Streets hath frequently risen in a few Minutes from 15 to 26 Degrees above what were at those times the Degrees of Heat in the shaded Air.

But I have never yet made that Experiment when the Heat of the shaded Air was above 88 Degrees ; when therefore we are in the Streets in a serene Day in the Summer, the Air we walk in and inspire is many Degrees hotter than that of the Human Blood :—for supposing the Heat of the shaded Air to be 88 Degrees, when the Thermometer would rise 26 Degrees higher, if suspended and exposed to the Sun, &c. as before mentioned ; or suppose that the Heat of the shaded Air be 98 Degrees, when the Thermometer would rise 26 Degrees higher by such Suspension and Exposure ; in the first of those Two Cases, the Heat of the Air in the Streets would exceed 98, the natural Heat of the Human Blood, by Sixteen Degrees ; and in the last Case it would exceed such Heat by twenty-six Degrees.



## T A B L E S

*Of the Depths of Rain, which fell at Charles-Town in South Carolina, within Eleven Years from 1738 to 1748 ; Shewing the Depth that fell in each Month, in each Season, and, in each Year ; Also, The general Medium Depths taken upon all those Eleven Years, for each Month, for each Season, and for a Year.*

THE WHOLE IS EXPRESSED IN INCHES AND MILLESIMAL PARTS OF INCHES.

No. V.—FOR THE YEARS 1738, 1739, 1740.

In what Times each Month.	Inches & Millesimal parts.	Inches & Millesimal parts.	Inches & Millesimal parts.
January, . . . .	1.097	2.310	4.873
February, . . . .	4.415	2.875	3.084
March, . . . . .	4.532	5.609	1.141
April, . . . . .	1.082	0.195	1.092
May, . . . . .	3.127	5.120	5.612
June, . . . . .	1.567	15.839	4.648
July, . . . . .	10.660	5.452	3.013
August, . . . . .	4.104	12.211	7.301
September, . . . .	10.792	4.834	3.200
October, . . . . .	1.358	6.593	1.258
November, . . . .	2.656	1.235	1.848
December, . . . .	3.877	3.689	2.736
<i>Each Season.</i>			
Spring, . . . . .	10.330	8.679	5.317
Summer, . . . . .	15.054	26.411	13.273
Autumn, . . . . .	16.254	23.638	11.759
Winter, . . . . .	7.630	7.234	9.457
Each year, . . . .	49.263	65.962	39.806

## No. VI.—FOR THE YEARS 1741, 1742, 1743.

In what Times each Month.	Inches & Millesimal parts.	Inches & Millesimal parts.	Inches & Millesimal parts.
January, . . . .	4.492	2.189	3.172
February, . . . .	4.615	1.550	2.436
March, . . . . .	5.713	5.203	0.621
April, . . . . .	1.308	0.918	5.292
May, . . . . .	4.841	5.878	2.535
June, . . . . .	5.538	3.250	1.903
July, . . . . .	3.399	1.252	7.738
August, . . . . .	7.144	7.647	3.767
September, . . . .	6.734	2.895	4.686
October, . . . . .	3.399	0.759	1.672
November, . . . . .	2.964	3.388	3.220
December, . . . . .	1.919	0.957	2.706
<i>Each Season.</i>			
Spring, . . . . .	11.636	7.771	8.348
Summer, . . . . .	13.778	10.400	12.176
Autumn, . . . . .	17.277	11.301	10.125
Winter, . . . . .	9.375	6.534	9.098
Each year, . . . .	52.066	36.006	39.747

## No. VII.—FOR THE YEARS 1744, 1745, 1746.

In what Times each Month.	Inches & Millesimal parts.	Inches & Millesimal parts.	Inches & Millesimal parts.
January, . . . . .	1.994	0.863	1.144
February, . . . . .	3.063	7.739	2.701
March, . . . . .	0.532	3.229	1.628
April, . . . . .	2.866	3.842	1.128
May, . . . . .	8.871	1.832	3.988
June, . . . . .	5.814	9.510	4.109
July, . . . . .	8.437	6.772	9.895
August, . . . . .	4.202	9.339	6.114
September, . . . .	5.657	0.754	0.932
October, . . . . .	1.595	2.962	0.506
November, . . . . .	1.562	0.682	3.586
December, . . . . .	9.680	2.623	3.916
<i>Each Season.</i>			
Spring, . . . . .	6.511	14.810	5.475
Summer, . . . . .	17.122	18.113	17.992
Autumn, . . . . .	11.454	13.055	7.552
Winter, . . . . .	13.236	4.168	8.646
Each year, . . . .	48.323	50.146	39.653

## No. VIII.—FOR THE YEARS 1747, 1748.

In what Times each Month.	Inches & Millesimal parts.	Inches & Millesimal parts.	General mediums. Inches & Millesimal parts.
January, . . . .	3.429	2.212	2.516
February, . . . .	2.860	1.573	3.365
March, . . . .	2.585	3.047	3.081
April, . . . .	0.292	0.979	1.727
May, . . . .	0.924	1.826	3.507
June, . . . .	2.470	1.859	5.137
July, . . . .	6.413	9.273	6.573
August, . . . .	4.895	6.881	6.691
September, . . . .	7.216	7.442	5.013
October, . . . .	9.504	5.550	3.196
November, . . . .	1.056	5.368	2.506
December, . . . .	2.921	5.588	3.692
<i>Each Season.</i>			
Spring, . . . .	5.737	5.599	8.082
Summer, . . . .	9.807	12.958	15.217
Autumn, . . . .	21.615	19.873	14.900
Winter, . . . .	7.406	13.068	8.714
Each year, . . . .	44.565	51.498	46.912



No. IX—A Table of the Wind's Direction at Charles-Town in South Carolina.

THE WIND'S		SPRING.			SUMMER.			AUTUMN.			WINTER.			TOTAL NO. OF TIMES IN THE			
Nature.	Direction.	February....	March.....	April.....	May.....	June.....	July.....	August.....	September..	October.....	November...	December...	January.....	Spring....	Summer..	Autumn...	Winter....
		2	3	3	18	10	6	7	19	3	3	4	4	16	34	29	7
Warm.	S.	1	1	1	2	5	6	1	1	2	4	3	3	12	13	14	7
	S.S.W.	7	6	5	10	18	8	6	1	4	3	4	4	18	36	11	7
	S.W.	1	3	6	11	9	4	2	4	8	3	4	2	10	24	14	9
	W.S.W.	6	14	10	8	9	29	7	2	10	12	14	11	30	49	19	37
Moist but Temperate.	W				4	4		1	8	6			3	8	15	3	
	S.S.E.		2	3	4	1	2	2	2	2			3	3	7	5	
	S.E.																
	E.S.E.	3	5	3	2	3	2	6	5	3	3	1	1	11	7	14	5
Cold.	E.	8	6	5	5	8	6	13	8	2	7	6	11	19	19	23	24
	E.N.E.	12	7	2	2	2	5	7	2	1	3	3	8	21	9	10	14
	N.E.	7	9	1	4	10	1	10	6	2	1			17	15	18	2
	W.N.W.	5	5	5	4	1	5	3	1	9	4	18	6	15	10	13	28
	N.W.	6	4	3	1		3	3	2	9	3	11	5	13	4	13	19
	N.N.W.	3	2	1	2			1		2	4	2	1	6	2	3	7
	N.E.	3	5		3	2	1	3	5	2	1	4	3	8	6	10	8
	N.	7	8	1	2	4	2	11	12	24	14	9	6	15	8	47	29
		100															

This Table of the Wind's Direction is for one year, during which three Observations were made almost every day: viz. in the Morning, at two o'clock in the Afternoon, & at Bedtime. The Numerical Figures in the Columns, for each Month, Season, or whole Year, shew how many Times within each, respectively, the wind, at the hours of Observation, blew from those Points of the Compass which are expressed by the Initial Letter thereof, and severally placed on the same lines as the Numerical Figures whereunto they belong.

These Observations and Tables were made and formed by a very Curious Gentleman, one Doctor Lining; and to them I shall add a few other Observations—relating to the intense cold we sometimes have here: because it is much to be wondered at considering how intense the heat is at other times, and what great deviations there are from those superior and general Laws of Nature, whereby heat and cold in every Climate are commonly understood to be chiefly governed and graduated.

The first instance of intense cold that I shall mention, relates to a healthy young Person of my Family, who at the time was two or three and twenty Years of age, and usually slept in a Room without a Fire. That Person carried two Quart Bottles of Hot Water to Bed, which was of Down, and covered with English Blankets: the Bottles were between the Sheets; but in the Morning they were both split to Pieces, and the Water solid Lumps of Ice.

In the Kitchen where there was a Fire, the Water in a Jar in which there was a large Live Eel, was frozen to the Bottom: and I found several Birds frozen to death near my House; they could not have died for want of Food, the Frost having been but of one Day's Continuance.

But an Effect much to be regretted is that it destroyed almost all the Orange Trees in the Country: I lost above three hundred bearing Trees, and an Olive Tree of such a prodigious Size, that I thought it proof against all Weathers; it was near a Foot and a half diameter in the Trunk, and bore many Bushels of excellent Olives every Year. This Frost happened on the 7th of February, 1747; and the Winter having been mild with us till then, the Juices were so far risen that the Orange

Trees were ready to blossom ; under which Circumstances, that Frost burst all their Vessels, for not only the Bark of all of them, but even the Bodies of many of them were split, and all on the side next the Sun.

Last Year, however, many of them shot up again from the Root, and I have measured many Shoots which were from twelve to fifteen Feet in Height, and of a tolerable thickness !—a surprising Instance of Vegetation in a few Months ; and though about the first Week in January in this Winter, we had a pretty smart Frost of two or three Days Continuance, with some Snow—it did not injure the tenderest Shoots, but a Month after we had another smart Frost, when the Juices were rising, and that has quite killed most of those Shoots.

#### SECTION IV.

*The present Number of White Inhabitants ; of Militia Forces, and of Negro Slaves ; late Increases of People by new Settlers ; and the probability of many Thousands more being induced to come and settle there.*

The Number of White Inhabitants in South Carolina, is at present nearly twenty-five thousand ; and the Number of Negroes there, is at least Thirty-nine thousand ; of the latter I can be more positive, because a tax is paid for them ; and I make my computation of the former by the Number of Men borne on the Muster Rolls for the Militia, which is about five thousand, between the ages of sixteen and sixty.

Within these three or four Years, above two hundred Families of Germans have come and settled in this Province ; and within the last Year or two about the like



number of families from the British Colonies have come to us ; while on the other hand, the number of Inhabitants who have left this Province is but about Five or Six, and those being indebted here, run off with their Slaves into Georgia.

As numbers of People well employed make the riches and strength of the Country, I am determined, from the time of the Proclamation of Peace, to observe very particularly the increase of the Inhabitants of this province, either in the Natural Way, or by the Accretion from other British Colonies, or by the accession of Foreigners ; which by the blessing of God, and His Majesty's Protection and favour, I think may be several Thousands in a few Years.

And my reasons for being of that opinion are because here is a large tract of territory hitherto but thinly inhabited, Numbers of Navigable Rivers, which make Carriage easy, and afford safe Ports, a fertile Soil, and a pretty healthful Climate, Liberty of Conscience, equal Laws, easy Taxes, and I hope I may add with truth, a mild Administration of the Government.

## SECTION V.

*The Nature and Constitution of the Government ; the principal Officers in each branch thereof, and by whom appointed and elected.*

The Government of South Carolina is one of those called Royal Governments, to distinguish it, I presume, from the Charter Governments, such as Massachusetts-Bay, Connecticut, and Rhode Island : and from the Proprietary Governments, such as Pensilvania and Maryland.

Its Constitution is formed after the model of our Mother Country: The Governor, Council, and Assembly, constitute the three branches of the Legislature, and have power to make such Laws as may be thought necessary for the better Government of the Province not repugnant to the Laws of Great Britain, nor departing from them beyond what necessity may require.

The Governor is appointed by Patent, by the title of Governor in Chief, and Captain-General in and over the Province; He receives also a Vice Admiral's Commission: But alas! these high sounding titles convey very little Power, and I have often wished that Governors had more; I cannot, however, help making this disinterested Remark, that though a Virtuous Person might be trusted with a little more power, perhaps there may be as much already given, as can safely be delegated to a weak or a wicked Person; and considering, that such may in ill times happen to be employed, a wise and good Prince will therefore guard against it.

The Members of the Council are appointed by the King, under his Royal Sign Manual, and are twelve in number; to which number the Surveyor-General of the Customs must be added, he having a Seat in Council, in all the Governments within his district.

The Assembly consists of Forty-four Members elected every third year by the Freeholders of Sixteen different Parishes: but the Representation seems to be unequal; some Parishes returning Five, others Four, Three, Two, or only One: and some Towns which, by the King's Instructions have a right to be erected into Parishes, and to send two Members are not allowed to send any.

There is a Court of Chancery, composed of the



Governor and Council, and there is a Master in Chancery, and a Register belonging to the Court.

The Court of King's Bench consists of a Chief Justice appointed by his Majesty and some Assistant justices: The same Persons constitute the Court of Common Pleas: there is a Clerk of the Crown who is also Clerk of the Pleas: an Attorney-general, and a Provost-Marshal.

There is a Secretary of the Province, who is also Register, and Pretends a Right to be, and appoints, the Clerk of the Council; there is also a Clerk of the Assembly, a Surveyor-general of the Land, a Receiver-general of the Quit rents, a Vendue Master, and Naval Officer, all which Officers are appointed by the Crown.

There is a Court of Vice-Admiralty; the Judge, Register and Marshall thereof are appointed by the Lords Commissioners of the Admiralty.

There is a Comptroller of the Customs; Three Collectors, one at each port, viz. Charles-Town, Port Royal, and Winyaw; there are likewise Two Searchers at Charles-Town; all these are appointed by the Commissioners of the Customs, or by the Lords Commissioners of the Treasury.

The public Treasurer, the County Comptroller, the Commissioners for Indian Affairs, and several other Officers are appointed by the general Assembly.

The Clergy are elected by the People.

The Governor appoints Justices of the Peace, and Officers in the Militia, which are offices of no profit, and some trouble, and therefore few will accept of them unless they are much Courted.



## SECTION VI.

*The principal Taxes laid for the Ordinary and Extraordinary Expenses of the Province Government: and the Heads of Expense whereto the Monies thereby raised commonly are appropriated.*

The Public Revenues within the Province of South Carolina, arise partly from Goods imported, imposed by a law, called the general Duty-Law: and partly from Taxes upon Real and Personal Estates, wherein are comprehended Lands, *Houses*, Money at Interest, Stock in Trade, &c.

The Species of Goods liable to Duties, are Sugar, Rum, Madeira Wine, and a few other Sorts of Commodities: but not one Commodity of the Produce or Manufacture of Great Britain is charged with any Duty in this Province. The Monies raised as aforesaid are appropriated to defray the ordinary and extraordinary Expenses of the Province Government—excepting some particular Expenses which are provided for by other Funds: and the after mentioned Heads of appropriation, will best shew in what manner those public Revenues are applied.

Province Debts, such as were contracted by the Expedition to St. Augustine, and for the Relief of Georgia.

The Salaries of such Officers as have not appointments upon Quit-Rents.

The Stipends of our Clergy.

The Salaries of School-masters and Ushers.

The Salary &c. of our Agent in Great Britain.

The pay of Gunners at our several Forts.

The settling Foreign Protestants in this Province,

The additional pay allowed to the Three Independant Companies of regular Troops serving here.

The keeping in Repair our Fortifications and Public Buildings.

Presents to the Chiefs of the Indian Nations: but his Majesty has been graciously pleased to relieve us from this Article of Expense.

Troops of Rangers, casually taken into pay upon any Alarm, for which I hope there will not hereafter be much Occasion.

Two Gallies Equipped and kept in pay for the defence of our Island Passages: they are now laid aside, but the Expense of them used to be about fourteen thousand Pounds a year.

Eight Look outs, which are also laid aside; the expense of them was about Three thousand Five hundred pounds per Annum.

## SECTION VII.

*Their maritime Trade; The number and quality of Seamen and Shipping therein employed: The Species of Merchandize imported there from Great Britain: The Species, Quantities, and values of their Own produce exported from thence; and of imported merchandise by them re-exported.*

The maritime Trade of South-Carolina hath of late years been much more beneficial to the Inhabitants of that Province than formerly it was; which is partly owing to the great increase in the Value of their Exports; and partly to a considerable decrease in their Imports from the Colonies of New-York, Pensilvania, &c. For those two Colonies used to drain us of all the little Money and bills we could gain upon our trade

with other places, in Payment for the great Quantities of Flour, Bread, and Beer, Hams, Bacon and other Commodities of their Produce wherewith they then supplied us, all which, excepting Beer, our new townships, inhabited by Germans, begin to supply us with.

And the Importation of Negroe-Slaves which formerly was a considerable article of expense to us, hath not only been saved for a time, but is likely to continue so for the future. A law having been made in this Province whereby a duty was laid on Negroes imported here, that it amounted to a prohibition: and though since the expiration of that Law, the war hath hitherto prevented any from being imported, I do not find that in about nine years time, our number of negroes is diminished, but on the contrary, increased: so that from all appearances the negroes bred from our own Stock, will continually recruit and keep it up, if not enable us to supply the sugar Colonies with a small number of Negroes. As to the increased value of our Exports, I have already said that the price of our principal Commodity, Rice, was some years ago so low as Ten or Twelve Shillings per Hundred pounds weight, which is only one Fourth part of the price we have lately sold our Rice for; the medium Price last year being about 45 shillings Currency per Cent. lb. and all this year it has been 55 shillings to 60 shillings per Cent. lb: so that our main article of export is not only quadrupled in Value to us, but much increased in Quantity also; and the quick Progress we have already made in the culture of Indigo, gives reason to expect that it will one time or other prove to be a commodity of as great profit as Rice has been. But with all this trade we have few or no ships of our own: We depend in a great measure upon those sent from Great Britain, or on such as are built in



New-England for British merchants, and which generally take this Country in their way, to get a Freight to England: the Consideration thereof naturally leads me to take notice of the advantage we bring to our Mother Country, by producing such vast quantities of Marketable Commodities which do not interfere with her own produce, and by confining ourselves to the Colony profits from thence arising, the latter whereof is a matter of the highest Importance to Great Britain as a naval power, and it would be doing injustice to South Carolina not to shew our national value in that respect.

*An account of the Number of Vessels which have loaded at the Port of Charles-Town in South-Carolina in each year between Christmas 1735 and Christmas 1748; with the amount of Tonnage, computed from Cargoes and not taken from the Registers: the Rates of Freight, and the Numbers of Seaman, for the three Last of those years.*

Between Christmas,	Vessels.	Between Christmas,	Vessels.
1735 and 1736 . . . .	317	1740 and 1741 . . . .	256
1736 " 1737 . . . .	217	1741 " 1742 . . . .	190
1737 " 1738 . . . .	198	1742 " 1743 . . . .	206
1738 " 1739 . . . .	222	1743 " 1744 . . . .	230
1739 " 1740 . . . .	257	1744 " 1745 . . . .	208

*From Christmas, 1745, to Christmas, 1746.*

No. of Vessels.	Whither Bound.	Tonnage.	Rates of Freight.	Amount of Freight.
86	Europe.	10,555	£6 10	£68,607 10
121	West Indies.	4,018	4 10	18,081 00
48	Northern Colonies.	1,720	3 10	6,020 00
Total, 255		16,293		£92,708 10

*From Christmas, 1746, to Christmas, 1747.*

No. of Vessels.	Whither Bound.	Tonnage.	Rates of Freight.	Amount of Freight.
105	Europe.	12,714	£6 10	£82,628
93	West Indies.	4,712	4 10	21,207
37	Northern Colonies.	1,332	3 10	4,662
<hr/>		<hr/>		<hr/>
Total, 235		18,758		£108,497

*From Christmas, 1747, to Christmas, 1748.*

No. of Vessels.	Whither Bound.	Tonnage.	Rates of Freight.	No. of Men.	Amount of Freight.
68	Europe.	8,465	6 00	769	£50,790
87	West Indies.	4,299	4 00	499	16,196
37	Northern Colonies.	1,189	3 00	241	3,567
<hr/>		<hr/>		<hr/>	
Total, 192		13,953		1509	£70,553

From the preceding account it appears, that the trade of South Carolina gives employment to Fifteen Thousand Ton of Shipping, and to Fifteen Hundred Seaman, all of which are or might be, British; and admitting them to be such the very Freight of our produce brings in a profit of about One hundred Thousand Pounds Sterling a year to our Mother Country, and over and above the addition of Naval power from thence arising: than which there needs not a more striking proof how nearly it concerns Great Britain to keep the Freight of all her Colony produce to herself.

For there is a reason to believe that the Rice, and other principal Articles exported from South Carolina, do not in Tonnage make more than one Tenth part of the useful commodities which all the British Northern Colonies are very capable of producing for exportation: and this without interfering with Great Britain or with Ireland, by exporting Corn, Flour, Biscuit, Cheese, Butter, Beer, Beef, Pork, and by catching, curing, and car-

rying Salted Cod and other Fish to various Markets ; for the single article of Tobacco yearly exported from North America makes about thirty thousand Ton.

And when it is considered how naturally capable the Northern Colonies are of wholly supplying Great Britain, Ireland, the Sugar Colonies, &c. with Ship Timber, Masts, Lumber, Pitch, Tar, Turpentine, Hemp, Flax, Iron, &c. and what great numbers of Ships are employed in carrying Commodities from one part of America to another, besides those employed in catching, curing, and carrying to various Markets Salted Cod and other Fish ; there will upon the whole appear abundant reason for thinking, that the Freight of all those commodities might be made to employ Fifteen Thousand British Seaman, and to bring one Million Pounds Sterling yearly into Great Britain.

Much more might be said upon this important subject, but what I have already mentioned sufficiently shews, the National value of South Carolina in respect of Shipping and Naval Power: I shall therefore proceed to show how *far* we contribute to the Prosperity of our Mother Country by the Consumption of such Commodities and Manufactures as she produces or supplies us with ; but previous thereto, I cannot help expressing my surprise and Concern to Find that there are annually imported into this Province, considerable quantities of Fine *Flanders Laces*, the Finest Dutch Linens, and French Cambricks, Chints, Hyson Tea, and other East India Goods, Silks, Gold and Silver Lace, &c.

By these means we are kept in low circumstances ; and though it may have the appearance of being for the present beneficial to the British Merchants, yet it retards our increase both in people and wealth, and consequently renders us less profitable to Great Britain,



for the Riches of all Colonies must at length Centre in the Mother Country, more especially when they are not encouraged to go upon Manufactories, and when they do not rival her in her produce.

For these reasons I have always endeavoured to correct and restrain the vices of Extravagance and Luxury by my own example ; and by my advice to inculcate the necessity of Diligence, Industry, and Frugality ; telling them, that by pursuing these Maxims, the Dutch from low beginnings climed up to be high and mighty States ; and that by following the contrary methods, the Commonwealth of Rome fell from being mistress of the World.

The following Lists of various sorts of Commodities and Manufactures usually imported into this Province from Great Britain contains the best information I can give in relation to the several Species and Quantities of British Manufactures consumed here : The duties of my station not permitting me to spare so much time as would be requisite to find out the precise Quantity of each Species of Manufactures so imported ; however I am enabled to say thus much concerning them, that in general the Quantity seems to be too great, and the Quality of them too fine, and ill calculated for the circumstances of an Infant Colony.

## A LIST

*Of the several Species of Commodities and Manufactures which are usually imported into the Province of South Carolina from Great Britain.*

*British  
Woolen  
Manufac-  
tures*

Druggets and Drabs  
Daffils and Duroys  
Sherges and Shalloons  
Camblets and Grograms  
Cloths, Broad and narrow of all sorts from the finest Broad cloth down to Negro Cloth; none having been manufactured here, excepting a little Negro Cloth, and that only when the produce of this Province bore but a low price  
Cloaths, ready made: our Imports in these two last articles are to a great value  
Blankets of all sorts  
Flannells  
Hats wollen and beaver  
Stockings  
Shrouds  
Carpets  
Buttons and mohair

*Linen Man-  
ufactures*

Cloth of every kind, from Cambrick to Osnabrigs; of the manufacture of Germany, Holland, England, Scotland, and Ireland, to a great Value. We also import small quantities of Linen that is made by Irish People settled in the Townships of Williamsburg in Virginia.

<i>Linen Man- ufactures</i>	{ Sail-Cloth Ticking Checquered and printed Linens Haberdashery-wares
<i>East India and Cotton Manufac- tures</i>	{ Callicoes white and printed Muslins Dimity and Fustian
<i>Silk Manu- factures</i>	{ Stuffs of British manufacture —— of East India Manufacture Stockings and Handkerchiefs, Gloves and Ribbons
<i>Laces</i>	of Gold, Silver and Thread
<i>Mettalic Manufac- tures</i>	{ Iron, cast and wrought into all sorts of Houshold Utensils and Cutlery-wares Guns, Pistols, Swords, &c. Nails of all sorts Lead in sheets, Bullets and Shot Tin ware Pewter, in Houshold utensils &c. Brass wrought of all sorts Copper wrought of all sorts Plate and Silver wrought Watches, Gold and Silver
<i>Miscellane- ous Manu- factures</i>	{ Books Cables and Cordage China and other Earthen-wares Chairs and beds Fans and other Millinery-wares Glass-wares as Looking Glasses, Drinking Glasses, and Bottles



<i>Miscellaneous Manufactures</i>	{	Leather wrought into Shoes, Boots, Saddles, Bridles, &c.
		Gloves of all sorts
		Paper of all sorts
		Pictures and Prints
		Stationary wares
		Files
<i>Edibles</i>	{	Cheese
		Grocery-wares
		Oil, sallad, &c.
		Salt
<i>Liquors</i>	{	Beer in Casks and Bottles
		Tea of all Sorts
		Wines of various Sorts; but the Wine chiefly drank here is Madeira, imported directly from the place of growth.
<i>Miscellaneous Commodities</i>	{	Coals
		Corks
		Drugs and Medicines
		Grind Stones
		Gunpowder
		Iron, in Bars
		Painters Colours
		Quills
		Snuff

We have very little Trade with any Foreign Plantation; and none with any part of Europe besides Great Britian, unless our sending Rice to Lisbon may be called so.

The Civilities I had an Opportunity of showing to the

Spanish Prisoners of Distinction who have been brought in here during the war, and the humanity with which even the meanest were treated, was opened \* \*

\* \* \* \* \*

\* \* \* \* \*

[hath been productive of such national advantages as might be expected, from men who have a high sense of honour and Obligation.]

No Country in this part of the world hath less illegal trade than South Carolina; at least so far as I can learn, though if there was any it would be difficult to prevent it, by reason of the great number of Rivers and Creeks, and the small number of the Officers of the Customs.

I therefore think it would be of service, if the Commissioners of the Customs were to appoint another Searcher for this province, and Two Waiters for the Port of Charles-Town, with Salaries which they may live upon; for at present it is almost impossible for a Collector and two Searchers to transact all the business in that Port.

The two following accounts of exports from Charleston, in the year 1748, exhibit a view of the several species of commodities and manufactures usually exported from this Province. I have been very careful in separating such of them as are of our own produce from those which were brought here from Great Britain and other Countries, well knowing that without such distinction some or other of the latter might have been mistaken for the former, and prejudicial notions thereby raised upon a false foundation.

But nothing of this sort can happen, now that the exports of South Carolina Produce are inserted in one account, and the Re-exports of imported Commodities and Manufactures in another; the latter whereof may

be of farther use, in helping more nearly to determine what Quantities of British Commodities and Manufactures really are consumed in this Province. Because in such Cases, the value of a Colony to her mother Country is not to be estimated by the Quantities of Commodities and Manufactures yearly exported from the latter to the former; but by the Quantities consumed thereof in such Colony, or by people with whom that Colony *can* and her mother Country *cannot* carry on trade in such sort of Merchandise.

And considering that the Re-exportation of British Commodities and Manufactures from our Northern Colonies may be a means of introducing Colony Manufactures of the like sorts into various foreign Markets: The same disposition that led me to shew the National value of South Carolina, in respect of Freight and naval Power, also leads me to make these Observations concerning Re-exports.



## AN ACCOUNT

*Of several Species and quantities of Commodities of the produce of South Carolina, which were exported from thence at the Port of Charles-Town, in one year, from first November 1747 to 1st November 1748, together with the rate and amount of the value of each, in Sterling money and in South Carolina Currency.*

COMMODITIES.		RATES OF VALUE IN				Per	Amount of Value, in South-Carolina Currency.
Species.	Quantities.	Sterling Money.		S. Carolina Currency.			
		£	s. d. <sup>7</sup> lbs.	£	s. d.		£ s. d.
Rice, Indian Corn, Barley,	CORN AND GRAIN.						
	55,000 Barrels.	6	5 1	2	5 00	Ct. lb.	618,750 00 00
	39,308 Bushels.	1	5 1		10 00	Bushel.	19,654 00 00
	15 Casks.	14	3 3	5	00 00	Cask.	75 00 00
Oranges, Pease, Potatoes, Onions,	ROOTS AND FRUITS.						
	296,000 in Number.	17	1 5	6	00 00	1000.	1,776 09 00
	6,107 Bushels.	1	5 1		10 00	Bushel.	3,053 10 00
	700 Bushels.		8 4		5 00	Bushel.	175 00 00
	10 Casks.	14	3 3	5	00 00	Cask.	50 00 00
	200 Ropes.		4 2		2 6	Rope.	25 00 00
Live Stock,	CATTLE, BEEF, PORK, &c.						
	Bullocks, 28.	1	11 5 1	11	00 00		308 00 00
	Hogs, 150.	8	6 6	3	00 00		450 00 00
Beef,	Sundries.						500 00 00
	1,764 Barrels.	18	6 6	6	10 00	Barrel.	11,466 00 00

*An Account of Exports from South-Carolina in 1747-48.—[Continued.]*

Species.	COMMODITIES.	RATES OF VALUE IN			Per	Amount of Value, in South-Carolina Currency.
		Sterling Money.		S. Carolina Currency.		
		£ s. d. <sup>this</sup>	£ s. d.	£ s. d.		£ s. d.
Pork,	CATTLE, BEEF, PORK, &c.—Continued.	1 8 6	6 10 00	31,140	Barrel.	31,140 00 00
Bacon,	3,114 Barrels.	4 2	2 6	275	Pound.	275 00 00
Butter,	about 2,200 Pounds weight.	1 2 10	2 8 00	1,040	Cask.	1,040 00 00
	130 Casks.					
	NAVAL STORES.					
Pitch,	5,521 Barrels.	6 5 1	2 5 00	12,422	Barrel.	12,422 5 00
Tar,	Common, 2,784 Barrels.	5 00 0	1 15 00	4,872	Barrel.	4,872 00 00
	Green, 291 Barrels.	7 1 5	2 10 00	727	Barrel.	727 10 00
Turpentine,	2,397 Barrels.	7 1 5	2 10 00	5,992	Barrel.	5,992 10 00
Rosin,	97 Barrels.	7 1 5	2 10 00	242	Barrel.	242 10 00
Masts,	9 in Number.	2 2 10	2 15 00	135	Each.	135 00 00
Boltsprits,	8 in Number.	17 1 5	6 00 00	48	Each.	48 00 00
Booms,	6 in Number.	1 8 6	6 10 00	60	Each.	60 00 00
Oars,	50 Pairs.	2 10 2	1 00 00	50	Pair.	50 00 00
	VEGETABLE PRODUCE OF OTHER SORTS.					
Indigo,	134,118 Pounds weight.	2 6 0	17 6	117,353	Pound.	117,353 5 00
Potashes,	3 Barrels.	2 17 1	5 20 00	60	Barrel.	60 00 00
Oil of Turpentine,	9 Jars.	1 8 6	6 10 00	90	Jar.	90 00 00
	7 Barrels.	2 2 10	2 15 00	105	Barrel.	105 00 00
Cotton Wool,	7 Bags.	3 11 5	1 25 00	175	Bag.	175 00 00

*An Account of Exports from South-Carolina in 1747-48.—[Continued.]*

COMMODITIES.		RATES OF VALUE IN				Per	Amount of Value, in S. Carolina Currency.
Species.	Quantities.	Sterling Money.		S. Carolina Currency.			
		£	s. d.	£	s. d.	Ton.	£
VEGETABLE PRODUCE, &c.—Continued.							
Sassafras,	22 Tons.	2	2 10 2	15	00 00		330 00 00
LUMBER.							
Boards,	61,448 Feet.	5	14 3 3	40	00 00	1000 ft.	2,457 18 4
	8,189 Feet.		17 1 5	6	00 00	100 ft.	491 3 4
Cedar,	1,331 Feet.		1 5 1	10	00 00	Foot.	665 10 00
	52 Feet.		1 5 1	10	00 00	Foot.	26 00 00
Cypress,	21,000 Feet.	5	14 3 3	40	00 00	1000 ft.	840 00 00
	979 Boards.		1 9 3	12	6	Each.	611 17 6
Heading,	13,975	5	14 3 3	40	00 00	1000.	558 00 00
	127,652 Feet.	4	5 8 4	30	00 00	1000 ft.	3,829 11 2
Pine,	148,143 Feet of Boards.	5	14 3 3	40	00 00	1000 ft.	5,928 14 4
	1,293 Boards.		10 2		6 00	Each.	387 18 00
Plank,	22 in Number.		2 1 5		15 00	Each.	16 10 00
	98 in Number,		8 6 0	3	00 00	Each.	294 00 00
Bay Wood Plank,	2,000 Feet.		10 00 0	3	10 00	100 ft.	70 00 00
Scantling,	665,170 in Number.		11 5 1	4	00 00	1000.	2,547 00 00
Shingles,	132,567 in Number.	4	5 8 4	30	00 00	1000.	3,977 00 10
Staves,	4,000 Feet.		14 3 3	5	00 00	E 100ft	200 00 00
Timber,	9 Pieces.		5 8 4	2	00 00	Each.	18 00 00



*An Account of Exports from South-Carolina in 1747-48.—[Continued.]*

COMMODITIES.			RATES OF VALUE IN				Per	Amount of Value, in S. Carolina Currency.
Species.	Quantities.		Sterling Money.		S. Carolina Currency.			
			£	s. d.	£	s. d.		£. s. d.
LUMBER,—Continued.	Walnut,	739 Feet.	1	14 3 3	12	00 00	100 ft.	88 00 00
	Casks,	66 Pieces.		2 10 3	1	00 00	Each.	66 00 00
{	Empty,	Hogsheads, 80 in Number.		8 6 6	3	00 00	Each.	240 00 00
	Hoops,	Tierces, 43 in Number.		7 1 5	2	10 00	Each.	107 10 00
Canes,		3000 in Number.	1	14 3 3	12	00 00	1000.	36 00 00
	Pupms,	800 in Number.		5 8 4	2	00 00	100.	16 00 00
		1 Sett.					18 00 00	
ANIMAL PRODUCE OF OTHER SORTS.								
{	Skins,	Beaver 200 pounds weight.	4	3 3	1	10 00	Pound.	300 00 00
		Calve 141 in Number.	5	8 4	2	00 00	Each.	282 00 00
{	Tallow,	Deer 720 Hogsheads.	50	00 00	0 550	00 00	Hhd.	252,000 00 00
		81 Barrells.	1	8 6 6	10	00 00	Barrel.	810 00 00
{	Hogs Lard,	25 Jars.		17 1 5	6	00 00	Jar.	150 00 00
		26 Casks.	2	00 00	0 14	00 00	Cask.	364 00 00
{	Silk raw,	8 Boxes.	28	11 5	2 200	00 00	Box.	1,600 00 00
		Bees 1000 pound weight.		8 4		5 00	Pound.	250 00 00
{	Wax,	Myrtle 700 pounds weight.		8 4		5 00	Pound.	175 00 00

*An Account of Exports from South Carolina in 1747-48.--[Continued.]*

Species.	COMMODITIES.	RATES OF VALUE IN			Per	Amount of Value, in S. Carolina Currency.
		Sterling Money.		S. Carolina Currency.		
		£	s. d. <sup>7th</sup>	£	s. d.	
Leather	MANUFACTURE.		5	1	15	00
Soap,	Tann'd 10.356 pounds weight.		8	10	00	00
Candles,	7 Boxes.	1	2	15	00	00
Bricks,	34 Boxes.	2	10	5	00	00
	7000 in Number.	14	3			00
Total Amount,	{ In South Carolina Currency, . . . . . } £1,129,561 6 00 { In Sterling Money Exchange at £700 Currency for £100 Sterl. } £161,365 18 00					

*An Account of the several Species and Quantities of such Commodities and Manufactures, not of the Produce of South Carolina as were re-exported from thence at the Port of Charles-Town in one Year from 1 November 1747 to 1 November 1748.*

#### CLOTH STUFF, &c. MANUFACTURES.

Broad Cloths 4 Pieces  
 Duroys 6 Pieces  
 Camblets 3 pieces  
 Cloaths ready made 1 chest, 1 case, 1 bale  
 Hats 1 barrell, 2 boxes  
 Hose, Wollen 8 Dozen Pairs  
 Various Sorts 10 Bales, 50 Trunks  
     1 Tierce 77 Casks  
     14 Bundles 1 Chest and  
     6 Boxes  
 Linens 3 Cases 1 Chest  
     5 Bales, 3 Casks  
 Oznabrigs 1 Cask 4 Pieces  
 Haberdashery-wares 2 Trunks and sundries  
 Dimity 4 Pieces  
 Chints and Callicoes 22 Pieces  
 Lace 3 Gross

#### METALLIC MANUFACTURES.

Artillery, 12 Guns with Carriages  
 Small Arms, 1 Chest  
 Graplings, 3 "  
 Iron Pots, 10 cent. lb.  
 Iron Wares, 3 Casks



Pewter wrought, 2 Casks  
 Miscellaneous Manufactures  
 Cordage about, 130 Coils  
 Shoes 1 Barrel, 10 dozen pairs  
 Saddler's-Wares, 3 Trunks  
 Household Furniture, quantity not inserted  
 Earthen-Wares, one Hogshead, 7 Casks  
                                     3 Crates  
 Glass Wares, 1 Case, 1 Cask, 7 Boxes  
                                     6 Gross Bottles  
 Tobacco Pipes, 9 Boxes  
 Medicines 2 Chests, 1 Cask

## EDIBLES.

Flour 1143 Barrells  
 Biscuit 99 Barrells  
 Cheese about 3.500 pounds wt.  
 Fish 5 Hogsheads 17 Barrells and 2.300 pounds  
     weight  
 Salt 28 Barrells, and 280 bushels  
 Sugar 69 Hogsheads 24 Tierces and 262 Casks  
 Melasses 47 Hds—8 Bbls  
 Raisins 3 Casks 1 Hogshd  
 Cocoa 7 Barrells  
 Pepper 8 Cask, 320 lb. wt.  
 Cinnamon 1 Cask  
 Apples 10 Barrells  
 Pickles 6 Cases 2 Barrells,  
 Ginger Bread 2 $\frac{1}{4}$  Cent. lb

## LIQUORS.

Beer 90 Bbls, 18 Hogshds  
 — 11 Hampers, 96 Dozen in Bottles

Cyder 66 Bls  
 Vinegar 5 Barrel, 1 Tierce  
 Wines Claret, 2 Hogshds  
 Other Sorts 53 Pipes 19 Bbls  
 ——— 30 Hogshds, 124 Casks  
 Spirits Rum 49 Hogshds, 6 Bbls  
 Cordials 19 Casks  
 Other Sorts 2 Cags  
 Tea 1 tub

## ANIMAL PRODUCE OF OTHER SORTS.

Oil 21 Bbls 22 Cases and  
 15 Casks  
 Tortoise Shell 136 pounds wt.

## VEGITABLE PRODUCE OF OTHER SORTS.

Mahogany Planks 4.132 in number and  
 Plank 1.627 Feet  
 Logwood 91 Tons and a half  
 Brazilletto Wood 299 Tons  
 Ligum-Vitæ 35 Tons  
 Fustic Wood 3 Tons  
 Bahama Bark, 1 Bag, 1 barrel  
 Sarsaparilla 7 bags 1.636 lb. wt.  
 Tobacco 76 Hogsheads 4 Casks

## MINERAL PRODUCE OF OTHER SORTS.

Quicksilver 88 Chests  
 Salt Peter 1 Cask  
 Gunpowder 59 Barrels  
 Copperas for Brewers 1—  
 Coals 28 Bushels  
 Grindstones 115

## SECTION VIII.

*The Situation, Strength, and Connections of the several Nations of Neighbouring Indians; the Hostilities they have committed on British Subjects, at the Instigation of the French, and lately upon those Instigators themselves; some Particulars relating to the French Forts, Forces and Proceedings in Louisiana and Mississippi.*

The concerns of this Country are so closely connected and interwoven with Indian Affairs, and not only a great branch of our trade, but even the Safety of this Province, do so much depend upon our continuing in Friendship with the Indians, that I thought it highly necessary to gain all the knowledge I could of them; and I hope that the accounts which I have from time to time transmitted of Indian affairs will shew, that I am pretty well acquainted with the subject.

However I think it expedient upon the present Occasion to give a general Account of the several Tribes and Nations of *Indians* with whom the Inhabitants of this Province are or may be connected in Interest: which is the more necessary as all we have to apprehend from the French in this part of the world, will much more depend upon the Indians than upon any Strength of their own; for that is so inconsiderable in itself, and so far distant from us, that without Indian Assistance, it cannot if exerted, do us much harm.

There are among our Settlements several small Tribes of Indians, consisting only of some few families each: but those Tribes of Indians which we, on account of their being numerous and having lands of their own, call Nations, are all of them situated on the



Western Side of this Province, and at various distances as I have already mentioned.

The Catawbaw Nation of Indians hath about Three hundred Fighting Men; brave fellows as any on the Continent of America and our firm friends; their Country is about two hundred miles from Charles-Town.

The Cherokees live at the distance of about Three hundred miles from Charles Town, though indeed their hunting grounds stretch much nearer to us—They have about Three thousand Gun men, and are in Alliance with this Government.

I lately made a considerable purchase from that Indian Nation, of some of those hunting grounds, which are now become the property of the British Crown, at the Charge of this Province: I had the deeds of conveyance formally executed in their own Country, by their head men, in the name of the whole people, and with their universal approbation and good will.

They inhabit a Tract of Country about Two hundred miles in Extent, and form a good barrier, which is naturally strengthened by a Country hilly and mountainous, but said to be interspersed with pleasant and fruitful vallies, and watered by many limpid and wholesome Brooks and rivulets, which run among the Hills, and give those real pleasures which we in the lower Lands have only in imagination.

The Creek Indians are situated about Five hundred miles from Charles-Town; their number of fighting men is about two thousand five hundred, and they are in Friendship with us.

The Chickesaws live at the distance of near Eight hundred miles from Charles-Town: they have bravely stood their ground against the repeated attacks of the

French and their Indians : but are now reduced to Two or Three hundred men.

The Chactaw Nation of Indians is situated at a somewhat greater distance from us, and have till within this year or two been in the Interest of the French, by whom they were reckoned to be the most numerous of any nation of Indians in America, and said to consist of many Thousand Men.

The people of most experience in the affairs of this Country, have always dreaded a French war; from an apprehension that an Indian war would be the consequence of it; for which reasons, I have ever since the first breaking out of the war with France, redoubled my Attention to Indian Affairs: and I hope, not without Success.

For notwithstanding all the intrigues of the French, they have not been able to get the least footing among our Nations of Indians; as very plainly appears by those Nations still continuing to give fresh proofs of their attachment to us: and I have had the happiness to bring over and fix the Friendship of the Chactaw Nation of Indians in the British Interest.

This powerful Engine, which the French for many years past, played against us and our Indians, even in times of Peace, is now happily turned against themselves, and I believe they feel the force of it.

For according to last accounts, which I have received from thence, by the Captain of a Sloop that touched at Mobile about two months ago, the Chactaw Indians had driven into the Town of Mobile all the French Planters who were settled either upon the river bearing the same name or in the Neighbouring Country, and there kept them in a manner besieged, so that a few of the French



who ventured out of the Town to hunt up Cattle were immediately scalped.

Monsieur Vaudreuille the Governor of Louisiana was then in Mobile endeavoring to support his people, and trying to recover the friendship of those Indians. At the same time there were some head men with about Twenty of their People in Charles-Town.

I have been the fuller in my Relation of this matter, because I humbly conceive it to be a very delicate Affair, for these Chactaw Indians, have formerly and even so lately as I have been in this Province, at the instigation of the French and assisted and headed by them, in time of Peace, murdered our Traders in their Way to the Chickesaw Indians, and Robbed them of their goods: but I hope the French Governors will never have it in their power to charge us with such unfair Practises.

I shall be particularly cautious of doing any thing inconsistent with the peace so lately concluded: but I think it incumbent on me to say, that it will be impossible to retain those Indians, or any other, in his Majesty's interest unless we continue to trade with them.

And since war and hunting are the business of their lives, both Arms and Ammunition as well as Cloaths and other necessities, are the goods for which there is the greatest demand among them—I therefore hope to receive instructions in this particular, as a rule of my conduct.

There are a pretty many Indians among the Kays, about the cape of Florida, who might be easily secured to the British Interest: but as they have little communication with any others on the main Land, and have not any goods to trade for, they could not be of any advantage either in peace or war.



There are also a few Yamasees, about twenty men, near St. Augustine : and these are all the Indians in this part of the world that are in the Interest of the Crown of Spain.

The French have the Friendship of some few of the Creek Indians, such as inhabit near the Holbama Fort : and some of the Chactaw Indians have not as yet declared against them : They have also some tribes upon Mississippi River, and Ouabash, and in other parts : but most of these and all other Indians whatsoever, inhabit above a Thousand miles from Charles-Town ; and yet it may be proper to give attention even to what happens among those who are so far from us ; for to an Indian, a thousand miles is as one mile their Provisions being in the Woods, and they are never out of the way : they are slow, saying the Sun will rise again to-morrow, but they are steady.

We have little intercourse with the French ; but unless there have been alterations lately, the Accounts I have formerly sent may be relied on, there are not above six hundred men (Soldiers) in what they call Louisiana, and those thinly spread over a widely extended Country : some at New Orleans some at Mobile, and some as far up as the Illinois.

They had a Fort at the Mouth of the Mississippi river called the Balise, but they found it was not of any service, and therefore they have built another farther up, where it commands the passage : their Forts Holbama, Chactawhatche, Notche, Notchitosh, and another on Ouabash are all inconsiderable stockadoed Forts, garri-soned by 40 and some by only 20 men each. If ever the French settlements on the Mississippi grow great, they may have pernicious effects upon South Carolina, because they produce the same sorts of Commodities as

are produced there, viz: Rice and Indigo : but hitherto, the only Inconvenience that I know of, is, their attempting to withdraw our Indians from us, and attacking those who are most attached to our interest.

I beg Leave to assure you that I shall never do any thing inconsistent with that good faith which is the basis of all his Majesty's Measures, but it is easy for me at present to divert the French in their own way, and to find them business for double the number of men they have in that Country.

However, this, and even the Tranquility of South Carolina will depend upon preserving our Interest with the Indians, which it will be very difficult to do, unless the presents are continued to them, and those Forts built which I have formerly proposed, or at least, one of them, and that to be in the Country of the Cherokees.

The two next sections will shew what a great increase there hath been in the Trade of South Carolina since the year 1710, according to the best accounts which could be met with after much Inquiry, and they contain various other particulars relating to the Natural Produce, Husbandry, Coin, Paper Currency, Inhabitants, Prices of Labour, Rivers, Sea-ports, &c. not mentioned in the former Sections. The account of Natural Produce might have been made a few Lines shorter by leaving out such Species thereof as are named in the seventh Section, but that would have made this account much less satisfactory : especially as the aboriginal Species of Produce are here distinguished from those which have been transplanted to South Carolina from other Countries ; which many persons will be apt to think a necessary Distinction.



## SECTION IX.

*Species of Natural Produce, Particulars relating to the Culture, Manufacture, &c. of Indian Corn, Rice, Turpentine, Tar, Pitch, Oil of Turpentine, Rosin and Silk: Accounts of their Maritime Trade—Paper Currency, Current Coins, Taxes, Prices of Labour, &c. Written in the Year 1710.*

## NATURAL PRODUCE.

*Roots, Fruits, Corn and Grain.*

South Carolina naturally produces black Mulberries; Walnuts; Chesnuts; Chincapins; which are small Chesnuts; Acorns, of five or six sorts, which the Indians, like the primitive race of mankind, make use of for food; wild Potatoes, and several other eatable Roots; wild Plums; variety of Grapes; Medlars; Huckleberries; Strawberries; Hasel-nuts; Myrtle-berries, of which Wax is made; Cedar berries; Shumac; Sassafras; China root; great and small Snake root; with a variety of other physical roots and herbs; and many flowers, which spring up of themselves, and flourish in their kind, every season of the year.

Other fruits, and several sorts of Corn, which have been transplanted in South Carolina, thrive very well there, viz: White Mulberries; Grapes, from the Madeira Islands and other Countries; all sorts of English Garden herbs; Potatoes, of six or seven sorts, and all of them very good; Indian Corn, three sorts; Indian Pease, of five or six sorts; Indian Beans, several sorts; Pumpions; Squashes; Gourds; Pomelons; Cucumbers; Muskmelons; Watermelons; Tobacco; Rice of three or four Sorts; Oats; Rye; Barley; and some



Wheat, tho' not much. Their other Fruits, are, Apples; Pears; Quinces; Figs, of three or four Sorts; Oranges; Pomegranates; and Peaches of 14 or 15 sorts.

Though they have as great variety of good Peaches, as there are in any Country, perhaps, in the whole World, yet the principal use made of them is to feed Hogs; for which purpose large orchards of them are planted. The Peach trees there, are all standards; they yield fruit in three years from the time of setting the stone: the fourth year they bare plentifully: and the fifth, are large spreading trees. Most kinds of British Fruits, prosper best up in the Country at some distance from salt water: But Figs, Peaches, Pomegranates, and the like grow best nigh the sea. Peaches, Nectarines, &c. of one sort or other, are in perfection from 20 June, to the end of September.

*Neat Cattle, Hogs, Sheep, &c.*

South Carolina abounds with black Cattle, to a degree much beyond, any other English Colony; which is chiefly owing to the mildness of the Winter, whereby the Planters, are freed from the charge and trouble of providing for their cattle, suffering them to feed all the Winter in the Woods.

These creatures have mightily increased since the first settlement of the Colony, about 40 years ago: It was then reckoned a great matter for a planter to have three or four cows: but now, some people have a thousand head of cattle, and for one man to have two hundred is very common. They likewise have hogs in abundance, which go daily to feed in the woods, and come home at night. Also some sheep and goats.

*Wild Beasts, &c. of the Forest.*

The wild Beasts which the woods of South Carolina afford for Profit and for game, are Rabbits, Foxes, and Raccoons, Possums, Squirrels, Wild cats, Deer, Elks, Buffaloes, Bears, Tygers, wild Kine and wild Hogs. Some of these creatures may indeed be thought dangerous in that Country, as they are in other parts of the world; but the Carolina People find by Experience that every sort of wild Beast there will run from a man. the fiercest of them not venturing to attack any larger or better defended animals than Sheep, Hogs or young Calves, and the Devouring of some of these is all the injury sustained by wild Beasts there.

*Fowls, Tame, and Wild.*

There are tame Fowls of all sorts; and Great variety of wild Fowl; the sorts of wild fowl that frequent the inland parts of the Country, are Turkeys, Geese, Ducks, Pidgeons, Patridges, Brants, Sheldrakes, and Teal: the other sorts found near the Sea, are Curlews, Cranes, Herons, Snipes, Pelicans, Gannetts, Sea larks, and many others.

*Fish for Sustenance, or for Trade.*

The Sea Coast is full of Islands, Sounds, Bays, Rivers, and Creeks, which are well stored with great variety of Excellent Fish: the most common whereof are, Bass, Drum, Whitings, Trouts, Herrings, Mulletts, Rocks, Sturgeons, Shads, Sheepheads, Plaice, Flounders, small Turtel, Crabs, Oysters, Muscles, Cockles, Shrimps, &c. the other sorts of Fish common there and

not eaten, are Whales, Grampoises, Porpouses, Sharks, Dog Fish, Garb, Stingrays, Saw Fish, Fiddlers, and Perewinkles.

### *Timber, &c. Trees.*

The uncultivated part of South Carolina may be called one continued Forest, well stocked with Oaks of several sorts, Chesnut, Walnut, Hickery, Pine, Fir of several Species, Two sorts of Cypress, Cedar, Poplar, or the Tulip Tree, Laurel, Bay, Myrtle, Hasel, Beech, Ash, Elm, and variety of other Sorts of Trees, the names of which are scarcely known.

### HUSBANDRY, &c.

#### *Concerning the Produce of Indian Corn.*

The usual Produce of an Acre of Indian Corn is from Eighteen to Thirty bushels and six Bushels of Indian Pease, which run like a vine among the Corn. About a Gallon of indian Corn sows an acre.

#### *Concerning the Culture, Produce, and Manufacture of Rice.*

Rice is sowed in furrows about Eighteen Inches distant: a peck usually sows an Acre, which yields seldom less than thirty bushels, or more than sixty bushels, but generally between these two according as the land is better or worse. Rice is cleaned by mills turned by Horses or Oxen. The Planters in this Colony sow much Rice, not only because it is a vendable commodity, but thriving best in low moist lands, it inclines people to improve that sort of ground, which being planted a few



years with Rice, and then laid fallow, it turns to the best Pasture.

*Concerning the Extraction, Preparation, &c. of Turpentine, Tar, Pitch, Oil of Turpentine and Rosin.*

The five sorts of Commodities known by these names are all extracted from a Species of Pine Tree, called the Pitch pine, and may rather be said to be one and the same thing under different modes of preparation, than five different sorts of Commodities, because they are all included in the Gum or Resin of the Pine Tree.

Turpentine is the Gum in the liquid state, extracted by Incision and the Heat of the Sun while the Tree is growing.

Oil of Turpentine is obtained by the Distillation of Turpentine.

Rosin is the Residum, or Remainder of such Turpentine, after the oil is distilled from it.

Tar is the Gum in a liquid State, but forced out by a proper degree of confined fire heat after the Tree is cut down, split in pieces and dried.

Pitch is the Solid part of Tar, seperated from the liquid part by boiling.

Turpentine is obtained by cutting channels in the standing Green Trees, so as to meet in a point at the foot of the Tree where a box or several pieces of board are fitted to receive it: The channels are cut as high as a man can reach with an axe, and the bark is peeled off from those parts of the Tree which are exposed to the sun, that the heat of it may more easily draw out the Turpentine. The process of extracting Tar is as followeth.—First they prepare a circular floor of clay, declining a little towards the centre; from which there is

laid a pipe of wood, extending near horizontally, two feet without the Circumference, and so let into the ground that its upper side is near level with the floor; at the outer end of this pipe they dig a hole large enough to hold the Barrels for the Tar, which when forced out of the wood naturally runs to the centre of the Floor as the lowest part, and from thence along the pipe into the barrels; These matters being first prepared, they raise upon that clay floor, a large pile of dry pine wood, split in pieces, and enclose the whole pile with a wall of earth, leaving only a little hole at the top, where the fire is to be kindled; and when that is done, so that the inclosed wood begins to burn, the whole is stopped up with earth; to the end that there may not be any flame, but only heat sufficient to force the tar out of the wood and make it run down to the floor: they temper the heat as they think proper, by thrusting a stick through the earth and letting the air in, at as many places as they find necessary.

*Concerning the Breeding of Silk-Worms and the production of Silk.*

Silk Worms in South Carolina are hatched from the Eggs about the sixth of March; Nature having wisely ordained them to enter into this new form of being, at at the same time that the mulberry leaves, which are their Food, begin to open. Being attended and fed six weeks, they eat no more, but have small bushes set up for them, where they spin themselves into Balls, which are thrown into warm water and then the Silk is wound off them.

## MARITIME TRADE.

The Trade between South Carolina and Great Britain, one year with another, employs Twenty two Sail of Ships. Those Ships bring from Great Britain to South Carolina all sorts of Wollen Cloths, Stuffs, and Druggetts; Linens, Hollands, Printed Calicoes and Linens; Silks and Muslins; Nails of all sizes, Hoes, Hatchetts, and all kinds of Iron-wares; Bedticks, Strong Beer, Bottled Cider, Raisins, Fine Earthern wares, Pipes, Paper, Rugs, Blankets, Quilts; Hats from 28 to 12s. price; Stockings from 1 to 8s. price; Gloves; Pewter Dishes and Plates; Brass and Copper wares; Guns, Powder, Bulletts, Flints, Glass Beads, Cordage, Wollen and Cotton cards, Steel Hand mills, Grind-stones; Looking and Drinking Glasses; Lace, Thread coarse and fine; Mohair, and all Kinds of Trimmings for Cloaths, Pins, Needles, &c.

In return for these commodities and manufactures there are sent from South Carolina to Great Britain about seventy thousand Deerskins a year; some Furs, Rosin, Pitch, Tar, Raw Silk, Rice and formerly Indigo: But all these not being sufficient to pay for European Goods, and negro Slaves with which the English Merchants are continually supplying the South Carolina people. The latter likewise send to England for some Cocoa nuts; Sugar, Tortoise shell, Money, and other things which they have from the American Islands, in return for the provisions they send there.

Besides the twenty two sail of Ships which trade between South Carolina and Great Britain, as before mentioned; there enter and clear annually at the Port of Charles-Town, about Sixty sail of Ships, Sloops, and Brigantines, which are employed in carrying on the



after named branches of Trade, between South Carolina and other Countries.

*The Trade between South Carolina and Jamaica, Barbadoes, the British Leeward Islands, the Island of St. Thomas, (a Danish Sugar Colony), and Curaso (a Dutch Sugar Colony).*

The Commodities sent from South Carolina to those Places, are, beef, Pork, Butter, Candles, Soap, Tallow, Myrtle wax candles, Rice, some Pitch and Tar, cedar and pine boards, Shingles, Hoop Staves and Heads for Barrels.

The Commodities sent in return from those places to South Carolina, are Sugar, Rum, Melasses, Cotton, Chocolate made up, Cocoa Nuts, Negro Slaves, and Money.

*The Trade between South Carolina and New England, New York and Pennsylvania.*

The Commodities sent from South Carolina to other Northern Colonies, are tanned hides, small Deer Skins, Gloves, Rice, Slaves taken by the Indians in War, some Tar and Pitch.

The Commodities sent in return from those other Northern Colonies, to South Carolina are, Wheat, Flour, Biscuit, Strong Beer, Cyder, Salted Fish, Onions, Apples, Hops.

*The Trade between South Carolina and the Maderia, and Western Islands [belonging to Portugal.]*

The Commodities sent from South Carolina to those Islands, are, Beef, Pork, Butter, Rice, Casks, Staves, Heading for Barrels, &c.

The Commodities sent in return from those Islands to South Carolina, are Wines. N. B. The Salt used in South Carolina is brought from the Bahama Islands. From Guinea, and other parts of the Coast of Africa, Negroe Slaves are imported into South Carolina; But the Ships which bring them there, being sent from England with effects to purchase them, the Carolina Returns for the same are sent thither.

#### PAPER CURRENCY.

During the former part of Queen Anne's War, the Inhabitants of South Carolina Exerted themselves very much in defence of that Colony, not only by fortifying Charles-Town, and building a fort to command the entrance of Ashley river, but by undertaking several Expeditions against the Spaniards and Indians in Florida, &c. the charges of all which Fortifications and expeditions, brought the South Carolina People so much in debt, that their Assembly finding it was in vain to struggle with difficulty, by raising annual taxes, which could not have been levied soon enough to answer the present exigency they came to the determination to strike Bills of Credit; at first, for about six thousand Pounds, and having had experience of them, they afterwards issued more, to the amount of ten thousand Pounds.

By the laws which established those bills of Credit, their Currency was secured; to proffer any Payment with them was a tender in Law, so that, if the creditor refused to take them he lost his money, and the Debtor was discharged from the minute of such refusal; but they had not any instance of that kind, the Funds upon which those bills were charged being so good, that they Passed in all payments without any demur or disatis-

faction. The first issued of those Bills had an interest of Twelve per cent. per Annum annexed to them; but upon making the second parcel of them, the Assembly was sensible of the great inconvenience of this method. For it not only made the Currency of them more difficult, by reason of the endorsements, and computing the times they had been in the Treasury; but gave the Treasurer an opportunity of injuring the Public, by giving Credit for that time he thought fit, as often as they come into his hands. Besides, the interest gave encouragement to people to hoard them, which was a common prejudice, by keeping so great a part of the cash [paper money] from circulating in Trade, and lastly this devouring rate of Interest was such a constant addition to the public debt, that, if continued, it would have made it impossible to sink, (pay) the Bills in any reasonable time, unless by burthensome Taxes.

For these several reasons, the Assembly enacted, that from that time forward, the Bills of Credit should run to all intents and purposes, as they had done, but without bearing any interest at all; and the people quickly found the benefit of it; For this both eased the public of a great burthen; and made the Bills circulate more in Trade, and with less difficulty among the common people. The Assembly indeed, by this Act, exposed themselves to the censure of those who little regarded the Public so long as their own private Interest was advanced; but they wisely considered that saving the Public Two Thousand Pounds a year was more to be regarded, than gratifying the unreasonable avarice of some particular persons, and such is the opinion of their Integrity, as well as of the ability of the Colony, that those Bills never had yet circulated for less value than they were issued.



## CURRENT COINS.

Besides those Bills of Credit, or paper currency, there are various sorts of gold and silver coins circulating in South Carolina, the most Common of those Coins are, French Pistoles, Spanish and Arabian Gold, all of which passed at six shillings, and three pence the penny weight, and three pence every odd grain, before the currency of money in English Colonies was regulated by an English Law; and before that regulation took place, the several sorts of silver coin current in South Carolina were received and paid at the following rates; viz:—Dutch and German Dollars, and Peruvian Pieces of Eight, passed at Five Shillings each; Mexican Pieces of Eight, weighing twelve penny weight went at the same rate, and for every penny weight above twelve to seventeen, that those last pieces weighed, three pence half-penny more was allowed: other Pieces of Spanish Silver Money, commonly called Ryals and half Ryals were current, the former at seven pence half penny, and the latter at three pence half penny. There was not much English money among them, but what they had, passed [Anno. 1710] at Fifty per cent. advance: that is a crown at seven Shillings and sixpence; a Guinea at thirty two shillings three pence; and so in proportion. Conformable to those rates of currency of English Coins, the course or rate of Exchange between South Carolina and England in the year 1710, was £150, South Carolina Currency for £100 sterling.

## TAXES &amp;c.

There are not at present in South Carolina any taxes upon either real or personal Estate; the Public Revenues being all raised by duties laid upon every sort of Spiritous Liquors, Wines and other liquors; upon Sugar, Melasses, Flour, Biscuit, Negroe Slaves, &c. upon all dry goods imported, Three per cent. and upon all Deer Skins exported, three pence per skin. These several duties have of late produced about Four thousand Five hundred Pounds per Annum; out of which the yearly disbursements, for Charges of Government, are as follows:

Stipends to Ten Ministers of the Church of

England . . . . . £1,000

For finishing and preparing Fortifications . . . 1,000

For the Officers and Soldiers doing duty in

Forts . . . . . 600

To the Governor . . . . . 250

For Military Stores . . . . . 300

Accidental Charges . . . . . 400

---

Total . . . . . 3,500

Which sum being taken out of . . . . . 4,500

---

There will remain yearly . . . . . 1,000

to cancel Bills of Credit to that amount.

## INHABITANTS.

The Proportions which the several sorts of People inhabiting South Carolina bore to each other, as to employment and National distinction.

*Of the White People.*

The Planters were . . . . .	8½	} of 12 Parts
The Traders . . . . .	1½	
The Artisans . . . . .	2	

*Of all the Inhabitants.*

The White People were . . . . .	12	} of 100 Parts
The Indian Subjects . . . . .	66	
The Negroe Slaves . . . . .	22	

The proportions which the several sorts of White People inhabiting South Carolina bore to each other as to matters of Religion.

The Episcopal Party . . . . .	4¼	} of 10 Parts
The Presbyterians including those		
French who retain their own Dis-		
cipline . . . . .	4½	
The Ana Baptists . . . . .	1	
The Quakers . . . . .	¼	

## PRICES OF LABOUR.

	Per Day Currency.
To a Taylor - - - - -	5 shillings
“ a Shoemaker - - - - -	2 shilling 6 pence
“ a Smith - - - - -	7 “ 6 “
“ a Weaver - - - - -	3 “
“ a Bricklayer - - - - -	6 “
“ a Cooper - - - - -	4 “

Carpenters and joiners have from Three to Five shillings a Day.

A Labourer hath from one shilling and 3 pence to 2s. a Day, with Lodging and Diet.

Those who oversee Plantations have from Fifteen to Forty Pounds per Annum.



Such as are employed to trade with the Indians have from twenty to one hundred pounds a year.

## SECTION X.

*The number of Inhabitants ; value of the yearly imports ; Tonnage of Shipping and price of Victualling ; a Description of their Rivers, Seaports, &c. about the year 1724.*

### NUMBER OF INHABITANTS.

The number of white People in South Carolina, including Men, Women and Children, was about 14.000 in the year 1724 ; and the number of Slaves there at that time, reckoning men, women and children was about 32.000 mostly Negroes.

### YEARLY IMPORTS.

In the year 1723, the Imports into South Carolina amounted in Value to £120.000 Sterling, at the first cost ; and had not for four years before been of less than of that value. This Estimate was made from the Account books kept by the Collector of the two and a half per. Cent. duty on all goods imported there ; and if any fraud was committed under reporting to him the value of any such goods, the imports of those years were of so much more value than is mentioned here.

Of the Commodities and Manufactures so imported into South Carolina I reckon to the value £100.000 Sterling, for exports from Great Britain to this Colony ; and for Negroe Slaves brought there in British Ships : the other 20.000 Worth of those imports, I take to be

brought in their own or other trading vessels from the West India Islands and Northern Colonies.

When they trade at any of the French Islands they receive some money along with the Rum and Sugar they bring from thence—I have known a small Sloop bring to South Carolina from Cape Francois, Three hundred Pistoles at one time, besides, Rum Sugar and Melasses, all which were the produce of their own cargo only.

#### SHIPPING AND VICTUALLING.

The quantity of British Shipping employed by means of South Carolina is not less than Eight Thousand tons:—And I cannot estimate the Shipping that is owned and employed by the Inhabitants of that Colony at less than seven hundred Tons. The shipping at Charles-Town are supplied all the year round with Beef, at less than seven shillings Sterling per Hundred pounds weight.

#### SEA COAST, RIVERS, HARBOURS.

South Carolina hath seventy Leagues of Sea Coast, reckoning from Cape Fear Northward to the River May Southward.

I am unacquainted with the Depth of Water in all the Rivers to the Southward of Port Royal, though I have known Sloops sail in most all of them; but of the other Rivers in South Carolina I can speak by my own experience, and therefore shall begin with Port Royal River.

That river hath Depth of Water enough for any ship in the world, in or out, and as good a harbour as

any nature hath made, sufficient to hold and contain all the Royal Navy; and perhaps, in all respects the properest place for Rendezvous of the West India Squadron of Men of War. With regard to its situation for any Expedition to the Windward Islands or for speaking with any Ships coming through the gulf of Florida, it is as well as can be desired; for nothing could escape the sight of a Cruiser there.

The next River is South Edisto, a good River for Ships and Vessels not drawing above Twelve Feet Water.

North Edisto River is equally good, and hath a clear entrance.

Stono Harbour is a very good Harbour for any vessel not drawing above Eleven Feet Water.

Charles-Town Harbour is fit for all vessels that do not exceed Fifteen feet draught.

Sewee and Santee Rivers are for small craft, not drawing more than Eight or nine feet.

Into the Port of Winyaw there is a Channel Twelve Feet deep, as I have lately been told.

Cape Fear River, alias Clarendon River the reputed boundary between North and South Carolina, is a very fine bold River for any ship in fair Weather; or at any other time for Ships not exceeding fifteen or sixteen Feet Draught, there not being less than three Fathom deep at low Water in the Worst part of the Channel.

There are many other Rivers and Creeks of lesser Note, but these are all large Rivers, some of them being navigable Forty or Fifty miles above the Entrances for Ships of any Burthen.

The Tide flows from Five to Seven Feet high, on the Coast of South Carolina.



The following Representation on Behalf of the Province of South Carolina, and of the Merchants concerned in the trade thereof; was made at the beginning of the last War, while a bill was depending before the Honourable House of Commons to prohibit the exportation of Rice and other Produce from North America in order to distress the then Enemies of Great Britain.

It contains an account of the quantities of Rice exported from South Carolina in Twenty years, and many interesting particulars relating to the Rice trade, which make it a valuable and necessary supplement to the preceding Description of that Province, because the matters treated of in the one are not mentioned in the other, though both relate to the same subject.

The Facts therein stated, are printed conformably to the Manuscript Copy: but the other part of the matter appearing to have been hastily put together, it was thought proper to alter the Expression in several Places, and to free it from a number of improprieties, which would of course have been struck out if the Persons who drew up the Representation had afterwards taken the trouble to revise it.

*The Case of the Province of South Carolina, and of the Merchants concerned in the Trade thereof; supposing the present Bill to Prevent the Exportation of Rice to be passed into a Law.*

The Inhabitants of South Carolina have not any Manufactures of their own but are supplied from Great Britain with all their Cloathing, and the other Manufactures by them consumed, to the Amount of One Hundred and Fifty Thousand Pounds Sterling per Annum.

The only commodity of Consequence produced in South Carolina is Rice, and they reckon it as much their staple commodity, as Sugar is to Barbadoes and Jamaica, or Tobacco to Virginia, and Maryland: so that if any Stop be put to the Exportation of Rice from South Carolina to Europe, it will not only render the Planters, there incapable of paying their debts, but will also reduce the Government of that Province to such Difficulties for want of Money as at this present precarious time may render the whole Colony an easy prey to their neighbouring enemies, the Indians and Spaniards, and also to those yet more dangerous Enemies their own Negroes who are ready to revolt on the first opportunity, and are eight times as many in number as there are white men able to bear Arms; and the danger in this respect is greater since the unhappy Expedition to St. Augustine.

From the year 1729, when his Majesty purchased the Colony of South Carolina, the Trade of it hath so increased that their annual exports and imports of late have been double the value of what they were in the said year; And their exports of Rice in particular have increased in a Great proportion, as will appear by the following state of the Quantities of Rice exported from thence in twenty years, viz.

From 1720 to 1729, being 10 years, the whole export was	264,788	} Barrels making 44,081 Tons
From 1730, to 1739, being 10 years, the whole export was	499,525	
So that the last ten years Exports exceeded the former by	235,037	} Barrels, or 55,824 Tons

And of the vast quantities of Rice thus exported



scarcely one Fifteenth part is consumed either in Great Britain or in any part of the British Dominions, so that the produce of the other Fourteen parts is clear gain to the Nation: whereas almost all the Sugar and one Fourth of the Tobacco exported from the British Colonies, are consumed by the People of Great Britain, or by British Subjects, from whence it is evident, that the National gain arising from Rice is several times as great in Proportion as the national Gain arising from either Sugar or Tobacco.

This year in particular, we shall export from South Carolina above Ninety Thousand Barrels of Rice, of which quantity there will not be Three Thousand barrels used here, so that the clear national gain upon that Export will be very great, for at the lowest computation of twenty five Shillings Sterling per Barrel, the Eighty seven thousand barrels exported will amount in value £108,750 at the first hand, whereto there must be added the charge of Freight &c. from South Carolina to Europe, which amount to more than the first cost of the Rice, and are also gain to Great Britain: so that the least gain upon this article for the present year will be £220,000 over and above the Naval advantage of annually employing more than one hundred and sixty Ships, of one hundred Tons each.

Rice being an enumerated Commodity, it cannot be exported from South Carolina without giving bond for double the Value, that the same shall be landed in Great Britain, or in some of the British Plantations, excepting to the Southward of Cape Finisteere; which last was permitted by a Law made in the year 1729; and the Motive for such permission was, that the Rice might arrive more seasonably and in better condition at Market.

We have hereunto subjoined an account of the seve-



ral Quantities of Rice which have been exported from South Carolina to the different European Markets since the said law was made ; and it will thereby appear that we have not in those ten years been able to find sale for any considerable quantity in Spain, for in all that time we have not sold above 3,570 barrels to the Spaniards, making only 357 Barrels annually upon a medium, nor can we for the time to come expect any alteration in favor of our Rice trade, there because the Spaniards are supplied with an inferior sort of Rice from Turkey, &c. equally agreeable to them, and a great deal cheaper than ours ; the truth whereof appears by the Rice taken in the Ship called the Baltic Merchant, and carried in to St. Sebastians, where it was sold at a price so much under the market rate here or in Holland, as to encourage the sending of it from thence to Holland and Hamburgh.

In France, the importation of Carolina Rice without Licence is prohibited ; and though during the last and present years, there hath by permission been some consumption of it there, yet the whole did not exceed 9,000 Barrels ; and they have received from Turkey so much Rice of the present year's growth as to make that Commodity 5s Sterling per cent. lb. cheaper at Marseilles than here ; and even at Dunkirk it is one Shilling and six per cent. lb. cheaper than here so that there is not any prospect of a demand for Carolina Rice in France, even if Liberty could be obtained for sending the same to any part of that Kingdom. Germany and Holland are the countries where we find the best markets for our Rice, and there the far greater part of it is consumed ; so that the present intended Embargo, or prohibitory Law, cannot have any other effect in relation to Rice, than that of preventing our allies from using

what our Enemies do not want, nor we ourselves consume more than a twentieth part of; and which is of so perishable a nature, that even in a cold climate it doth not keep above a year without decaying, and in a warm climate it perishes intirely.

The great consumption of Rice in Germany and Holland, is during the Winter season, when pease and all kinds of pulse, &c. are scarce; and the Rice intended for those markets ought to be brought there before the Frost begins time enough to be carried up the Rivers: so that preventing the exportation only a few days may be attended with this bad consequence, that by Frost the Winter sale may be lost.

And as we have now viz:—since the 11 Nov. above 10,000 Barrels of old Rice arrived, so we may in a few weeks expect double that quantity, besides the new Crop now shipping off from Carolina; the stopping of all which in a country where there is not any sale for it, instead of permitting the same to be carried to the only Places of consumption, must soon reduce the price thereof to so low a rate, that the Merchants who have purchased that Rice will not be able to sell it for the prime cost; much less will they be able to recover the money they have paid for duty freight and other charges thereon, which amount to double the first cost, for the Rice that £100 will purchase in South Carolina costs the importer £200 more in British Duties, Freight, and other Charges. Thus it appears, that by prohibiting the exportation of Rice from this Kingdom, the merchants who have purchased the vast quantities before mentioned, will not only lose the money it cost them, but twice as much more in duties, Freight and other charges, by their having a perishable Commodity embargoed in a country where it is not used.



Or if instead of laying the prohibition here, it be laid in South Carolina; that Province, the Planters there, and the Merchants who deal with them, must all be involved in Ruin. The Province, for want of means to support the Government. The Planters, for want of means to pay their debts and provide future supplies: and the Merchants, by not only losing those debts, but twice as much more, in the Freight, Duties, and other charges upon Rice which they cannot sell.

So that in either case a very profitable Colony, and the Merchants concerned in the Trade of it, would be ruined for the present, if not totally lost to this Kingdom, by prohibiting the exportation of Rice: and all this without doing any National good in another way, for such Prohibition could not in any shape distress our Enemies.

It is therefore most humbly hoped that Rice will be excepted out of the bill now before the Honourable House of Commons.

*An Account of the Quantities of Rice which have been exported from the Province of South Carolina within 10 years from 1730 to 1739; distinguishing the Total Quantity sent to each of the Countries or Dominions whereunto the same was exported.*

	Barrels.
To Portugal in all - - - - -	83,379
“ Gibraltar - - - - -	958
“ Spain - - - - -	3,570
“ France, only the last Two years at most - - - - -	9,500
“ Great Britain, Ireland and the British Plantations—by the largest calculation cannot exceed - - -	30,000



To Holland, Hamburg, and Bremen, including about 7.000 barrels to Sweden and Denmark	-	-	372.118
--	---	---	---------

---

The total Exported in these Ten Years,			499,525
--	--	--	---------

---

The following Extract is inserted to shew by what means that profitable commodity Rice came to be first planted in South Carolina ; for as it was not done with any previous Prospect of Gain, but owing to a lucky accident, and a private experiment, many Persons will naturally be desirous of knowing the several circumstances relating to an affair so fortunate to this Kingdom, and it may serve as a new instance of the great share this accident hath had in making discoveries for the benefit of Mankind.

The production of Rice in South Carolina which is of such prodigious Advantage was owing to the following Accident.

A Brigantine from the Island of Madagascar, happened to put into that Colony :—They had a little Seed Rice left, not exceeding a Peck or Quarter of a Bushel, which the Captain offered and gave to a Gentleman by the name of Woodward :—from a Part of this he had a very good Crop, but was very ignorant for some years how to clean it :—it was soon dispersed over the Province, and by frequent experiments and observations, they found out ways of producing and manufacturing it, to so great Perfection, that it is said to exceed any other Rice in value :—The Writer of this hath seen the said Captain in Carolina where he received a handsome Gratuity from the Gentlemen of that Country, in acknowledgement of the Service he had done that Province.

It is likewise reported, that Mr. Du Bois, Treasurer of the East India Company did send to that Country a small Bag of Seed Rice, some

short time after ; from whence it is reasonable enough to suppose there might come those two sorts of that Commodity, the one called Red-Rice in Contradistinction to the White Rice, from the redness of the inner husk or rind of this Sort, though they both clear and become alike White.

The writer of this extract hath not mentioned the time when Rice was first planted in South Carolina : but it appears in page — of this description, that Rice was generally Planted in that Colony in the year 1710, and therefore the first planting of it must have been about the year 1700, if not sooner.

*An Account of the Quantities of Raw Silk which have been imported from North and South Carolina into Great Britain within twenty-five years from 1731 to 1755 ; and also of the Quantities of Wrought Silk, and mixed Silken Stuffs of the Manufacture of Great Britain which have been exported from thence to North and South Carolina within each of those 25 years.*

YEARS.	IMPORTS.	EXPORTS	BRITISH SILK MANUFAC.		
	Raw Silk.	Silk	Silk with	Silk with	Silk with
	pound wt.	Wrought. pound wt.	Worsted. pound wt.	Incl. pound wt.	Grogram. pound wt.
1731	.....	970	537	.....	.....
1732	.....	774	892	.....	.....
1733	.....	1015	1341	.....	.....
1734	.....	943	937	.....	.....
1735	.....	1487	864	.....	.....
1736	.....	1223	516	.....	.....
1737	.....	691	790	.....	.....
1738	.....	1111	1177	.....	.....
1739	.....	1273	877	.....	.....
1740	.....	1454	1492	.....	.....
1741	.....	2798	2452	440	7
1742	18½	1576	1350	144	.....
1743	.....	1427	1262	122	.....
1744	.....	1035	1296	181	.....
1745	.....	544	615	184	40
1746	.....	929	590	330	3
1747	.....	1313	2050	386	.....
1748	52	1772	1658	155	34
1749	46	1772	1065	74	.....
1750	118	1519	1258	223	50
1751	.....	2404	1933	291	.....
1752	.....	3365	2860	218	7
1753	11	3027	2236	190	.....
1754	.....	2682	2300	374	150
1755	5½	3416	2634	337	.....



POLITICAL ANNALS  
OF THE  
PROVINCE OF CAROLINA:

FROM THE  
POLITICAL ANNALS OF THE UNITED COLONIES,

BY  
GEORGE CHALMERS.

# POLITICAL ANNALS

## OF

# C A R O L I N A .

*Attempts prior to the Restoration to settle the country ;—by the French ;—by the English.—An emigration from Massachusetts.—The first charter granted.—The coast acquires the name of Carolina.—First transactions of the proprietaries.—A second charter obtained.—The colony languishes.—Fundamental constitutions.—Reflections.—Albemarle settled.—Its assembly.—Southern colony encouraged.—Discontents in Albemarle.—An insurrection.—Culpeper, the principal insurgent, tried in England.—Observations.—Government re-established.—Sothel's administration ;—and banishment.—Emigrations to South Carolina.—Charles-Town founded.—An Indian war.—A parliament convened.—Pirates encouraged.—Invasion of the Spaniards.—An attack on St. Augustine meditated.—Remarks.—Factions.—Their consequences.—James II. proclaimed.—Acts of navigation opposed.—A writ of quo-warranto against the charter.—Administration of Colleton.—Usurpation of Sothel.—The fundamental constitutions abrogated.*

THAT level region, which stretches from the thirty-sixth degree of northern latitude to Cape Florida, enjoys the honour of being the first theatre on which the three great naval powers of Europe, Spain, England, and France, contended for American sovereignty. And their pretensions and disputes arose from the discoveries of Columbus, of Cabot, of Verazzan ; who, being all Italians, were all equally strangers in the countries, whose

renown they extended, whose commerce they enlarged. The adventures of the two former have been already noticed. The exploits of the last originated in the anxiety of Francis I. of France to engage in every enterprise that could confer celebrity on his name, who employed him to discover shores then unknown and unoccupied. And, during the years 1523-24-25, Verazzan explored, with some degree of accuracy, the coast of Florida; but returned not, alas! to enjoy those rewards which that munificent prince was ever happy to bestow on superior genius and fortitude. Yet Francis, any more than Elizabeth, did not live to establish any permanent colony of his subjects in the New World. The civil troubles which ensued turned the ardour of the French from colonisation to objects perhaps less salutary. And it was not till the year 1562, that the illustrious, but unfortunate, statesman, the Admiral Coligny, in order at once to promote the interest of his country, and to form an asylum for the French Protestants, sent a colony under the conduct of Ribaud, who built Fort-Charles on the river Edisto. A larger emigration, composed entirely of the same sect, was led thither, in 1664, by Laudonniere, which settled on the river May, that was denominated afterwards, by the Spaniards, St. Matheo. But this people not only observed the proceedings of the French with their accustomed jealousy, but detested their religious tenets: And a croisade was soon carried by Menendez to the western world, with the same zeal and folly as it had been formerly conducted to the east; in order at once to destroy the heretics, and to people Florida with genuine Christians. During the year 1565, the Spaniards massacred the French with the same relentless cruelty as they had atchieved all their American conquests. Yet this signal act of barbarity did



not rouse the indignation of France ; because, during the moment of her zeal, she did not consider the Hugonots as objects of her pity. One man alone, the Chevalier Gourgues, had the spirit to revenge the hard fate of his friends ; who, at his own expence, and without orders, conducted a faithful band against their persecutors, and, during the year 1567, retaliated severely those miseries which they had inflicted on others without remorse. But, as he soon after evacuated Florida, because his sovereign, blinded by bigotry, did not avow his enterprise, his countrymen bade it a final adieu.<sup>1</sup> How often are nations, as well as men, prevented, by their momentary fits of madness or of faction, from perceiving the true interest of the state, or regarding its glory ! Had France given spirit to Coligny, rather than repressed his ardour, had she protected his colony, what a vent had been opened for those humours which then corroded the body-politic ; what an American empire might she have possessed before Virginia had a name ! Englishmen may perhaps now believe what they have been formerly taught to discredit, that their rivals in every laudable pursuit were actually the first *occupiers* of the northern and southern extremities of North-America. Recent events, however, have in some measure rendered problematical what seems formerly to have been sufficiently evident, whether the misconduct of that nation was unfortunate or happy for England. The Spaniards nevertheless soon regained possession of Saint Augustine.

Elizabeth imitated the wise policy of Francis, rather than the bigotted folly of Charles IX. in rousing the ardour of her people, and directing their commercial enterprises to the uses of the state. She conferred the before-mentioned patents of discovery and colonisa-

tion on Gilbert and on Raleigh. And, just eighteen years after the final expulsion of the French, in August, 1585, a colony sent out by the latter, under the conduct of Lane, a person of prudence and spirit, landed on the isle of Roanoak, situated on the same coast, but more northerly than the settlements for which France and Spain had contended. During the twelvemonth that the emigrants remained, they discovered the rivers to be shallow, and the country to be inhabited by men, who "lived by fishing and hunting till harvest," who were extremely powerful, because, though badly armed, they were numerous and brave.

But the colonists seem not to have been provided with what was necessary to maintain them long in a wilderness, because they had been uninstructed in a project so new and uncommon. What was of still greater importance, they seem not to have carried with them minds prepared to encounter every difficulty: And being visited by Drake, so renowned in naval annals, as he returned along the coast from the destruction of St. Augustine, they deemed it prudent to desert "that paradise of the world." The pious among them remarked, that the misfortunes which they had encountered were judgments for the outrages offered to the natives, who merited attention because they were entitled to the rights of men. The French have boasted, that they alone had found the secret of conciliating the affection of the tribes. Yet the inclinations of all governments seem to have been equally good, because every one gave instructions to treat the aborigines with kindness, since they wished to civilize them. The emigrants too generally disobeyed these salutary commands, because they were placed in a singular situation: They were deemed enemies by the natives, because they were strangers:



They enjoyed no common language, by which they could profess friendship, or communicate their intentions. And the tribes, while they seem to have practised few of the rules of morality, were, like all untutored men, extremely revengeful, and therefore prompt to resent supposed injury, because they felt themselves brave. A fresh emigration arrived, under the conduct of Greenfield, in the year 1587, in order to support the former: But it encountered similar dangers, and expired in a similar manner.<sup>2</sup> Thus ended the exertions of Raleigh for colonizing Virginia; which proved unsuccessful, because the enterprise had been undertaken without sufficient information, because the project was new, and the means employed were not equal to the end. His name has been justly celebrated, because his talents and adventures added renown to the English nation; and his fate was pitied, because it was severe, perhaps undeserved.

When Englishmen recollected the misfortunes of their countrymen, they wished not to tread in their steps, lest they should meet with the same success: And they formed, therefore, no projects for planting that part of the Virginian coast, which stretches southward from the 36th degree of north latitude, till the beginning of the reign of Charles I. At a time when many persons of consideration wished to form colonies, because the spirit of emigration ran high, Sir Robert Heath, the attorney-general of that prince, obtained a grant, in the year 1630, of that region, by the name of *Carolana*, for which mighty nations had hitherto contended to so little purpose. But his resolution failed, or, his attention was drawn to other objects; and he seems to have made no one effort to execute the powers conferred on him. At a future day his patent was declared to have become



void, because the conditions on which it had been granted were never fulfilled.<sup>3</sup> Nothing could be more just or wise: It is only to be regretted, that the principle of that decision has not been more generally extended to similar cases, and more steadily applied.

About the epoch of the Restoration, a few adventurers, prompted by their natural disposition, emigrated from Massachusetts, and settled round Cape Fear. It is a characteristic of the Independents to consider themselves as bound by no tie to their native land, because they deride the maxims which knit society together. Their tenets, so contrary to the common law of England, necessarily lead therefore to disunion, to distractions, to constant change: And hence the various emigrations from that colony which have been already noticed. The people who have strongly imbibed their principles are already undone. Those emigrants seem to have carried with them, to their new settlement, little except their habitual prejudices: They consider mere occupancy, with a transfer from the natives, without any grant from the king, as a good title to the lands which they occupied: They deemed themselves entitled to the same "civil privileges" as those of the country whence they had emigrated. While we ought to admire the seeming liberality of these reasonings, we must not approve what in truth leads to universal anarchy. That colonists from England, carrying with them their ancient rights, should claim former privileges, is no less just in theory than wise in practice; but that emigrants from Massachusetts should deem themselves invested with the immunities of this colony, however natural, is not so consistent with the general jurisprudence of the state. Mankind, however, placed in similar situations will at all times reason alike: And such will

always be the arguments and pretensions of the Independents, in whatever clime they inhabit; because, being of the essence of their religion, they are inculcated with the milk of the parent. As neither the climate, nor the lands, where they settled, were equal in goodness to those they had left, as the waters offered not the same advantages of fishery, as they yet enjoyed none of the benefits of neighbourhood, these men for some years experienced the complicated miseries of want. They solicited the aid of their countrymen. And the general-court, with an attention and humanity which do it the greatest honour, ordered an universal contribution for their relief.<sup>4</sup> To the settlement of such colonists may be fairly traced back the various distractions which afterwards ensued. For, when the forms of a government and the principles of a people are contradictory to each other, a sad scene of turbulence necessarily opens, which must close in consimilarity, by making both coincide, or the state is undone.

The country which had been denominated Florida by the French and Spaniards, by the English Virginia, at length owed its final settlement as much to the rapacity of the courtiers of Charles II. as to the facility of a prince, who wished to reward those, to whom he was so much indebted, with a liberality that cost him little. The pretence, which had been used on former occasions, of a pious zeal for the propagation of the gospel among a barbarous people, who inhabited an uncultivated county, was successfully employed to procure a grant of that immense region, lying on the Atlantic Ocean, between the thirty-sixth degree of north latitude and the river Saint Matheo. On the 24th of March, 1663, this territory was erected into a province, by the name of Carolina, and conferred on Lord Clarendon, Duke of



Albemarle, Lord Craven, Lord Berkeley, Lord Ashley, Sir George Carteret, Sir John Colleton, Sir William Berkeley, as absolute lords proprietaries for ever: saving the sovereign allegiance due to the crown. They were invested with as ample rights and jurisdictions within their American palatinate as any bishop of Durham enjoyed within his diocese. And the present charter seems to have been copied from that of Maryland, so extensive in its powers and so noble in its privileges. Whether this fine province derived its name from Charles IX. of France, or Charles II. of England, has been formally debated by historians. In support of the former hypothesis no evidence has been produced; the present patent demonstrates the latter. When the privy-council, not long after, considered the present condition of Carolina, it decided that all former grants were now void, because they had never been executed: Giving a reason for its present conduct, which shews the extent of its zeal; "that the proprietaries ought to be favoured."<sup>5</sup>

Animated by this attention, these noblemen held their first meeting in May, 1663, in order to agree on measures for executing the chief purpose of their patent. They formed a joint stock, by general contribution, for the transporting of colonists, for the payment of other considerable expences: And what was of more real importance, because it more effectually promoted their views, they published "proposals to all that will plant in Carolina," at the desire of "the New-England People" before-mentioned. They declared: That all persons, settling on Charles-river, to the southward of Cape Fear, shall have power to fortify its banks, taking the oath of allegiance to the king and submitting to the government of the proprietaries; that the emigrants may present to them thirteen persons, in order that they may



appoint a governor and a council of six for three years; that an assembly, composed of the governor, the council, and delegates of the freemen, should be called as soon as the circumstances of the colony would allow, with power to make laws, which should be neither contrary to the laws of England nor of any validity after the publication of the dissent of the proprietaries; that every one should enjoy the most perfect freedom in religion; that, during five years, every freeman should be allowed one hundred acres of land and fifty for every servant, paying only one halfpenny an acre; that the same freedom from customs, which had been conferred by the royal charter, should be allowed to every one. Such then were the original conditions on which Carolina was planted.<sup>6</sup> And thus was that colony established upon the broad foundation of a regular system of freedom of every kind; which it was now deemed necessary to offer to Englishmen, to induce them to encounter all the difficulties of planting a distant country, covered with forests, inhabited by numerous tribes, to endure the dangers of famine and the damps of the climate. For men will not generally leave their native land, however wretched, unless they are urged by the strongest incentives.

As early as the year 1609 we have seen a small colony sent out from James-Town, to plant Nansamond, the most southern settlement of Virginia, nearly under the thirty-sixth degree of north latitude. As the aborigines receded from the vicinity of the river, the planters naturally followed their tracks, extending their plantations still farther southwestward, into the bosom of the wilderness. And as colonists increased, and the most desirable situations were occupied, they traversed the forests till they met with the streams, which, instead of

discharging their waters into the capacious Chesapeake, pursued a south-eastern course, and flowed into the ocean.

At the epoch of the Carolinian patent of 1663, a small plantation had been accordingly, for some years, established within its boundaries, on the north-eastern shores of the river Chowan, which was now honoured with the name of Albemarle, in compliment to the title of Monk, who had gained so much renown by restoring a king and saving three kingdoms from destruction. But, as it was so distant from the seat of Virginian government, the inhabitants yielded little obedience to its power, and had lived for some time without any perceivable rule. And nothing could be more wise than the appointment of Sir William Berkeley, the governor of Virginia, as general superintendant of the affairs of the county of Albemarle. In September, 1663, he was empowered, by the proprietaries, to nominate a governor and council of six, who were authorised to rule that little community according to the powers granted by the royal charter; to confirm former possessions, and to grant lands to every one, allowing them three years to pay the quit-rents; to make laws, with the consent of the delegates of the freemen, for the general good, transmitting them for the approbation of the proprietaries. And he was requested to visit the colony in person, and to employ skilful persons to explore its bays, its rivers, and its shores, which were then extremely unknown. From these notices we may judge of the then condition of this most ancient settlement of Carolina, with regard to the freedom of its constitution and the mode of acquiring property; the two circumstances which are the most apt to engage the affections of mankind. Berkeley appears to have discharged the trust reposed in him, during the



subsequent year, with the greatest fidelity. He confirmed and granted lands to every one on the conditions before mentioned; he appointed Drummond, a man of sufficient prudence and abilities, the first governor, with other officers: And he departed; leaving the whole to follow their various pursuits in peace. The colonists for some time remained in this state of happiness; because, governing themselves, they felt not oppression; and, being equally destitute of religion and clergy, they were not disturbed, like the early colonists of the North, with religious controversy. But, as the day approached when the payment of quit-rents was to commence, they became dissatisfied with the tenures by which they held their lands. And the Assembly of 1666, being probably the first of which any memorial now remains, transmitted a petition to the proprietaries; praying, that the people of Albemarle might hold their possessions on the same terms as the Virginians enjoyed theirs. The proprietaries, animated at all times by the strongest inclination to do every thing that might promote the settlement of their province, that might gratify the wishes of the people, agreed to a request which appeared so reasonable; commanding the governor to grant the lands in future on the terms prescribed by themselves.<sup>7</sup> Such is the early history of North-Carolina, which is probably as important and instructive as the annals of the most renowned states of antiquity, if we deduct from them the agreeable fables with which their eloquent authors have adorned them.

The proprietaries having thus reared, with attentive care, the feebleness of Albemarle, turned their chief regard to that finer region which lies more southerly along the coast. In August, 1663, they proposed to establish a new colony, to the southward of Cape Fear, on the



river Charles, which was now denominated the county of Clarendon. Several gentlemen of Barbadoes, dissatisfied with their present condition and anxious to become the heads of a less considerable establishment, proposed to remove thither. But while they solicited the grant of a district, thirty-two miles square, and all the powers of a corporation, they fitted out a vessel, under the conduct of Hinton, an able navigator, to explore the coast from that promontory to the thirty-first degree of latitude; because they had been discouraged by *the evil reports of the New-England people*. The proprietaries mean-while had given orders to dispatch a ship from Virginia to examine the same shores; in order to determine what rivers and countries were the most proper for habitation. These notices demonstrate how much that region had been neglected by England from the days of Raleigh and Drake to the present, and how much better the French had been instructed by the enterprises before-mentioned. The reports above alluded to were happily found, by the most accurate researches, to be entirely groundless. And, though the proprietaries refused to confer the district or the corporate powers which had been asked, they gave the adventurers of Barbadoes every possible encouragement, because they seem to have been perfectly satisfied. In January, 1664-5, John Yeamans, a respectable planter of this island, was appointed commander in chief of Clarendon county, stretching from Cape Fear to the river Saint Matheo, and he was at the same time created a baronet, in order to give weight to his station, to add splendour to a colony which as yet had but little in itself. The same powers were now conferred and the same constitution was established as those which had made Albemarle happy. He was ordered to grant lands

to every one, according to the conditions agreed on with the adventurers, reserving one halfpenny sterling for every acre, payable in March, 1670: He was directed "to make every thing easy to the people of New-England, from which the greatest emigrations are expected, as the southern colonies are already drained." There was an order at the same time made, that the commission of Yeamans should not prevent the appointment of a new governor for the projected settlement to the southward of Cape Romain, which soon after acquired the name of Carteret. Thus establishing for Carolina a variety of separate and independent colonies, each of which had its own government, its own assembly, its own customs and laws: A policy, which occasioned probably the long continued feebleness and distractions of that province, the proprietaries found leisure to regret. The reigning monarch, desirous to lend his aid to the laudable exertions of his courtiers, gave them twelve pieces of ordnance, which were now sent to Charles-river with a considerable quantity of warlike stores.<sup>8</sup>

Having thus acquired the most minute information of the whole coast, having discovered on both extremes of their province tracts of land that would form advantageous additions, the proprietaries easily obtained, from the facility and favour of their sovereign, a second charter, in June, 1665.<sup>9</sup> It recited and confirmed the former. It granted, to the same patentees, that province situated within the king's dominions in America, extending north-eastward to Carahtuke-inlet, thence in a straight line to Wyonoke, which lies under 36 deg. and 30 min. north latitude; south-westward to the 29th degree; and from the Ocean to the South Seas. It conferred on them all the rights, jurisdictions, and roy-



alties, which the bishop of Durham ever possessed. This region was to be holden of the manor of East-Greenwich, paying a rent of twenty marks and one fourth of the gold and silver that should be found. All persons, except those who should be expressly forbidden, were allowed to transport themselves to Carolina; and they and their children were declared to be denizens of England, who should be always considered as the same people, and possess the same privileges as those dwelling within the realm. They were empowered to trade in all commodities which were not prohibited by the statutes of England: They were authorised to lade the productions of the province, and to bring them into England, Scotland, or Ireland; paying such duties as other subjects: And they were exempted, for seven years, from the payment of any customs on the importation, into any of the dominions of the crown, of wines and other enumerated products of the colony. The proprietaries were enabled to make laws for the province, with the consent of the freemen or their delegates; so that they should be reasonable, and as near as might be to those of England. They were empowered to erect ports for the convenience of commerce; and there were granted to them such customs as should be imposed by the assembly. They were allowed to grant titles of honour by the creation of a nobility. Carolina was declared independent of any other province, but subject immediately to the crown of England; and the inhabitants were never to be compelled to answer in other dominions of the crown, except only within the realm. The Proprietaries were authorised to grant indulgences to those who could not conform to the church of England, who should not be molested for their religion while they disturbed not the peace of the province. Such then is



the substance of the last of the Carolinian charters; which conferred on the noble grantees a most extensive territory and royal rights; on the people, English liberties; which saved the power of parliament with regard to regulation and taxation. But no one prerogative of the crown was reserved, except only the sovereign dominion. Lord Clarendon, the chancellor, was not long after impeached: because among other offences, *he had introduced arbitrary government into the plantations.*<sup>10</sup> Yet they who attentively peruse the charters, granted to Connecticut, Rhode-Island, and Carolina, while he held the seals, will probably be of opinion that his crime consisted in sacrificing the legal powers of the crown, and the national rights, at the shrine of his colonial prepossessions. Against the charges of party that unfortunate statesman easily defended himself, because they were unjust; to this he would have probably found it more difficult to answer.

Though the proprietaries, encouraged by this fresh instance of the royal favour, exerted themselves for several years to procure adventurers from Scotland, from Ireland, the West-Indies, and the northern colonies, Carolina, like almost all the other plantations, increased slowly in population and in power. Owing partly to the climate, which, though celebrated during those times, is known to be unhealthful; but more to the dispersion of a few settlers over the face of an extensive desert, it languished during a considerable length of years; because similar obstructions occurred here to stop its growth. Notwithstanding the greatness of their power, and the expensiveness of their exertions, the noble projectors were taught, by experience, that nature compels all to obey. The emigrants of Barbadoes, conducted by Sir John Yeamans, at length landed, dur-

ing the autumn of 1665, on the southern bank of the river of Cape Fear. Like that of all other men who have undertaken the arduous task of subduing a wilderness, their first labour was applied to the erection of habitations, and to the procurement of food. Their leader ruled them with the affection of a father, rather than with the authority of the governor, according to the instructions that had been given him in charge. At the same time that he cultivated the good-will of the aborigines, he only obeyed the humane orders he was honoured with; which insured a seven years peace, that was at length disturbed by the interestedness of individuals; and the people, as usual, suffered for the follies or crimes of their rulers. While the planters opened the forest, to make room for the operations of tillage, they necessarily prepared timber for the uses of the cooper and builder; which they transmitted to the island whence they had emigrated, as the first object of a feeble commerce, that kindled the spark of industry which soon gave animation to the whole.<sup>11</sup> As the emigrants had no other grievance to complain of than what was incident to the situation which they had chosen for themselves, their early story offers no other lesson to mankind, than by putting future adventurers in constant remembrance of the sufferings of others, to convince them of the necessity and the use of steeling their minds, for the approach of difficulties, for the conquest of danger.

Being gratified in their first request, the inhabitants of Albemarle pursued their original employments in peace, though not with alacrity, because they had emigrated from a colony where the commercial spirit did not exist. Yet, like their neighbours of Virginia, they continued to cultivate tobacco and Indian corn, which promoted



an inconsiderable traffic with the traders of New-England, who seem alone to have then frequented their shallow rivers, and to have supplied their little wants. In October, 1667, Samuel Stevens, a man whose abilities and virtues were thought equal to the trust, was appointed governor of Albemarle, in the room of Drummond. And now was given to that colony such a constitution as must have rendered it completely happy, had it been faithfully supported. He was commanded to act altogether by the advice of a council of twelve; the one half of which he was empowered to appoint; the other six the assembly was authorised to choose. And here seems to be a sufficient remedy for that defect which wise men have discovered in the establishment of that body, in the colonial constitutions, which forms equally the senatorial branch of the legislature, the privy-council of the supreme magistrate, and the court of appeals. The assembly was composed of the governor, of the council, of twelve delegates chosen annually by the freeholders. The legislature was not only invested with the power to make laws, but with a large portion of the executive authority; with the right of convening and adjourning itself, of appointing officers, of presenting to churches. Various regulations provided for the security of property: No taxes could be imposed without the consent of the assembly: Their lands were confirmed and granted to be now holden by the free tenure of soccage, which always carries with it a certain rent and independence. Perfect freedom in religion was offered to a people who seem hitherto to have been little attached to any: And all men were declared to be entitled to equal privileges, upon taking the oath of allegiance to the king, and of fidelity to the proprietaries. This admirable system the inhabitants re-



ceived with a satisfaction in proportion to the importance of it. But it was not till the autumn of 1669 that an assembly thus constituted was convened, for the making of laws for men, who being yet few in number, seem to have been governed chiefly by the customs they had brought with them from their ancient establishment. Owing to peculiar motives it has always been an universal principle of colonial policy *to obstruct the recovery of debts*: And, as the legislature remarked, that sufficient encouragement had not been yet given to the peopling of Albemarle, it was now enacted; that none shall be sued, during five years, for any cause of action arising out of the country; that none shall accept a power of attorney, to receive debts contracted abroad. Hence this colony was long considered as the refuge of the criminal and the asylum of the fugitive debtor. But a more natural mode of promoting population was at the same time established, by *an act concerning marriage*: It declared; that, as people might wish to marry, and there being yet no ministers, in order that none might be hindered from so necessary a work for the preservation of mankind, any two persons carrying before the governor and council a few of their neighbours, and declaring their mutual assent, shall be deemed husband and wife. From this remarkable law we may judge of the then state of religion and of morals. And here we see a prodigious contrast between the Southern and Northern colonists. All the emigrations of New-England were conducted by ecclesiastics, who long directed, with almost equal authority, in temporal as in spiritual affairs. During almost twenty years we can trace nothing of clergymen in the history or laws of Carolina: And it was not till the dissenters had emigrated thither in considerable numbers, and began to con-

tend for equality, perhaps for pre-eminence, that we hear of religious controversy, or indeed any thing of religion. Other regulations, which were equally necessary, were at that time enacted. *New comers* were exempted from taxes for one year. Engrossing was prohibited. The peace of the country was insured, by prohibiting *strangers* from trading with the Indians. Every one was restrained from "transferring his lands for two years." A duty of thirty pounds of tobacco on every law-suit was imposed, for paying the expences of the governor and council during the sitting of assemblies, "*as no course had yet been taken for defraying their charges.*" And these laws, which demonstrate the weakness, and illustrate the early policy of that inconsiderable settlement, were ratified by the proprietaries in January, 1670. As it received little augmentation to its numbers from abroad, the colonists increased but slowly, and they only then began to plant the southern banks of the river Albemarle; which shows that the extent of its frontier was equal to the paucity of its people.<sup>12</sup>

Meanwhile, the proprietaries, dissatisfied with every system which they had hitherto created for their province, in July, 1669, signed by a body of *fundamental constitutions*, that had been compiled by the celebrated Locke: Giving as a reason, what shews how much they had repented of their former conduct; "that we may establish a government agreeable to the monarchy of which Carolina is a part, that we may avoid making too numerous a democracy." By this edict<sup>13</sup> a palatine was to be chosen from among the proprietaries for life, who was empowered to act as president of the palatine-court, composed of the whole, which was intrusted with the execution of the powers of the char-



ter. A body of hereditary nobility was created, and denominated landgraves and caciques, because they were to be unlike those of England in name ; the former to be invested with four baronies, consisting each of six thousand Acres : the latter to have two, containing one half of that quantity : And these estates were to descend with the dignities inseparably. The provincial legislature, dignified with the name of parliament, was to be biennial, and to consist of the proprietaries or of the deputy of each, which each might appoint ; of the nobility ; of the representatives or of the freeholders of every district : And, like the ancient Scottish parliament, all were to meet in one apartment, and every member to enjoy an equal vote : But no business was to be proposed till it had been debated in the grand council, whose duty it was, like the lords of articles of the Scottish constitution, to prepare bills for its consideration. At the end of every Century the laws enacted by it were to become void without the formality of repeal, similar also to a principle of the jurisprudence of Scotland. A grand council, composed of the governor, the nobility, and deputies of proprietors, was established, and invested with the executive power of the province. Various judicatories, from that of the hundred to the court of the chief justice, were erected. As an encouragement to emigration, fifty acres of land were offered to every colonist, paying forever a quit-rent of a penny an acre. The church of England alone was to be allowed a public maintenance by parliament ; but every congregation might tax its own members for the support of its own ministers : And to every one was allowed perfect freedom in religion. Yet the most degrading slavery was introduced, by investing in every freeman the property of his negro. And these constitutions, consisting of one



hundred and twenty articles, and containing an infinite variety of perplexing regulations, were declared to be the sacred and unalterable rule of government in Carolina forever. They offer few *practical maxims* which are alone useful ; they were never altogether adopted ; and they merit therefore no farther discussion.

But the wise men, who were chiefly engaged in that famous act of legislation, seem not to have reflected, during their ardour, that the provincials had settled on conditions which it was no longer in their power to abrogate ; that, in the forms of government which had been actually established, the people had acquired an interest which could not be taken away without their consent ; that, while they gave a supposed freedom to some, they reduced others, who were equally entitled to the rights of nature, to bondage. Of these constitutions it has been said, that they were intended to form a miniature of the ancient Saxon government in England : But the Carolinians should have been placed in a similar situation as the Saxons, before their system had been established as the unalterable rule. For laws are made for men, who seldom adopt the projects of others, and not for a desert, which is yet to be filled with a people suitable to the laws : And the history alone of Carolina and of Georgia demonstrates this important truth, which the proprietaries seem not to have foreseen. Nothing can shew more clearly the fallibility of the human understanding than the singular fate of these constitutions. Discovered instantly to be wholly inapplicable to the circumstances of an inconsiderable colony, and in a variety of cases to be altogether impracticable, they were immediately changed. The identity of them was debated by those to whom they were offered as a rule of conduct, because they had not been con-

sulted in the formation of them. They gave rise to the greatest dissensions, which long distracted the province, which engendered discord. And, after a little period of years, the whole, found inconvenient and even dangerous, were laid aside, and a much simpler form established. Nor is this any imputation of the admirable talents of the compiler of these famous constitutions, or of the wisdom of those who approved them. For the art of legislation, as it is the noblest, is also the most difficult of any. The jurisprudence of every community, receiving additional improvement from every new situation at which it arrives, during its progress, can only acquire that state of perfection which seems to give satisfaction to all from the accumulated wisdom and experience of ages. And men of discernment have remarked ; that the illustrious legislators, the Solons, the Numas, the Alfreds, only collected those customs which they found already adopted by their tribes, which they afterwards distributed with illustrations. If the various forms of New-England were altogether democratic, these constitutions erred in the other extreme, by establishing a rule of the nobles : Both were defective, because both wanted the excellent balance of the English constitution.

The proprietaries having thus established a constitution, which they presumed the Carolinians would receive with satisfaction, because it pleased themselves ; which they deemed immortal, because it was declared to be unalterable ; proceeded immediately to execute what depended on them. By choosing the famous Duke of Albemarle their palatine, he was placed at their head, as the representative of the king, and in some measure invested with the supreme direction : But he did not long survive this additional dignity ; and, because Lord



Berkeley was the next oldest of the proprietors, he succeeded him in the year 1670, in conformity to the constitutions. The other proprietaries were at the same time appointed to other offices of high name and sound, but of no real importance or use. As a reward of his services, John Locke was, not long after, created a landgrave; who, like the other Carolinian nobles, had been consigned to oblivion, but for those writings that have enlightened the world while they have immortalized himself. Leaving Albemarle to its own exertions, the proprietaries turned their attention to the settlement of the southern parts of the province. With this view a considerable number of emigrants was sent out in January, 1670, in order to form a colony at Port-royal, under the conduct of William Sayle, a man of experience, who had been appointed governor of that part of the coast lying south-westward of Cape Carteret. He was accompanied by Joseph West, who was now entrusted with the commercial affairs of the proprietaries, who, for upwards of twenty years, bore the chief sway in Carolina. These noblemen for some time were the only merchants, in order to supply the wants of the colonists, rather than to acquire profit. And they now employed vessels to carry on a circuitous traffic, for the purpose of procuring colonists, cattle, provisions from Virginia, Bermudas, and Barbadoes: of carrying off the inconsiderable products of the land. Before the year 1679 they had expended eighteen thousand pounds on a project which had then only yielded them vexation and poverty.<sup>14</sup>

The emigrants, after touching at Ireland and Barbadoes, arrived safe at the place of their destination. And now the defects of their constitutions appeared to every one. A colony intended to be ruled in a great measure



by nobles was found to have neither landgraves nor caciques: In the same manner the people to be ruled were extremely few. And at the same time that it was deemed impracticable "to execute the grand model, it was determined to come as nigh to it as possible." Writs were therefore immediately issued, requiring the freeholders to elect five persons, who with five others chosen by the proprietaries, were to form the grand council, without whose assent the governor could perform no governmental act. Of these, and twenty delegates chosen by the same electors, the parliament was composed, which was invested with legislative power. As encouragements to settle at Port-royal, one hundred and fifty acres of land were given to every emigrant at an easy quit-rent; clothes and provisions were distributed, from the store of the proprietaries, to those who could not provide for themselves. And, in order to secure the good-will of the neighbouring tribes, and consequently the safety of the settlement, considerable presents were prudently given to the *Indian caciques*, who bore considerable sway. Scarcely had Sayle performed what was given him in charge, when his constitution, yielding to the damps of the climate, he died: Leaving the colonists to the common lot of those who engage in such enterprises.<sup>15</sup>

The command of Sir John Yeamans, who had hitherto ruled the plantation around Cape Fear with a prudence which precluded complaint, was extended, in August, 1671, over that which lay south-westward of Cape Carteret: And the authority given him was exactly the same as that of his predecessor. The shores, the streams, and the country, being now perfectly known, because they had been accurately surveyed, the planters, from Clarendon on the north, from Port-Royal

on the south, resorted to the banks of Ashley-river, "for the convenience of pasturage and tillage." And here, "on the first high-land," was laid, during the same year, the foundation of *Old Charles-Town*, which became for some years the capital of the southern settlements. The proprietaries, with their former spirit, promulgated "*temporary laws*, till, by a sufficient number of inhabitants, government could be administered according to the fundamental constitutions." One of these rules humanity dictated, and policy approved: It commanded, that every one shall cultivate the friendship of their neighbours the Indians, shall make them satisfaction for wrongs; that none of them, on any pretence, shall be enslaved or sent out of the country: And the whole concluded with this general direction, "that so much of the fundamental constitutions as can be exerted shall be the rule of proceeding;" but the temporary laws were not of long duration, because they were derided by a people without whose consent they had been established, and they deserve not to be now remembered. Far from being able to raise commodities to exchange for the various necessities which the colonists wanted from abroad, they were for years only capable to procure food. During this period of their weakness, the proprietaries supplied them abundantly; but they were either unwilling or unable to repay them; and, before the end of the year 1763, a debt of several thousand pounds had been incurred. Yet they now solicited fresh supplies, though they shewed not how the late or future expences were ever to be reimbursed. And they complained of neglect, and insinuated reproach, because their creditors "would no longer continue to feed and to clothe them." This conduct, which has been at all times too common in the world, rather than the Dutch



war, put an end to a correspondence which was so useful, so necessary, to them, because the proprietaries thought it time to give over such a charge, since the country was not worth having at so dear a rate. Willing, however, to encourage the industrious, particularly the emigrants from England, New-York, and the northern colonies, who were real friends to the settlement, they sent another supply, and promised an annual one; but they warned the planters to consider how they were to be repaid, since they were determined "to make no more desperate debts." They soon after transmitted them what was of more real importance, "vines and other useful plants, and men skilled in the management of them." The whole conduct of Sir John Yeamans, as too frequently happens, seems to have been changed by his promotion to more extensive command. Instead of dedicating his chief attention to promote the happiness of the people by a salutary administration, he acted as the only trader of that little community, "buying of the poor planters their provisions at low prices, and shipping them off to Barbadoes." His improper management was supposed to have reduced the colony to "no higher pitch than to be subservient to that island in provisions and timber:" And his commission was revoked in May, 1674. At the same time that the proprietaries refused to send the Carolinians "a stock of cattle," because "they wished not to encourage graziers, but planters," they strongly recommended the cultivation of tobacco, till more beneficial staples could be introduced; since, where there can be no barter, no traffic can exist.<sup>16</sup> Mutual jealousy and discontent seem to have then commenced between the rulers and the people, which embittered the cup of future intercourse. Yet it is from this epoch that we may date the prosperity of Carolina,



because she was then taught a lesson which it is of the greatest importance for every individual and every state to know; "that she must altogether depend on her own exertions."

In the mean time, the same instructions which were given to Sayle, for the government of the southern colony, were transmitted, in the beginning of the year 1670, to Stevens, the governor of Albemarle, because they were here equally necessary: But a system which established a change so unfavourable to the interests of freedom, without the consent of the people, was received with dissatisfaction, perhaps derision. And there were not wanting men who promoted the public discontent; because, like those to be met with in every country, they found no pleasure in repose. It was now insinuated, though there seems to have been no foundation for it, that the proprietaries intended to dismember their provinces, and to give, to Sir William Berkeley, Albemarle, as his portion of the whole. The assembly of October, 1675, feeling for the independence of the colony, remonstrated to the proprietaries against a measure so injurious to individuals, and so degrading to the country. A favourable answer was given in the subsequent year: Those noblemen assuring the colonists, that they would always maintain the province entire, in order that they might preserve their English rights; that every advantage might be derived from the vicinity of Virginia: Yet they confessed that they had been wanting in attention to the people of Albemarle, because they looked upon them as men who regarded the interests of others, since they had neither planted the banks of the rivers Pemlico and Neuse, nor discovered "a way by land" to the settlement of Ashley. During the discontents of those times, Miller, a person of some

consideration, being accused of speaking seditious words, was sent to James-Town for trial, because the power of Sir William Berkeley was then dreaded. But the rulers of Albemarle seem not to have reflected, during their ill-grounded fears, that they deprived him equally of his chartered privileges and legal rights. He was acquitted. Yet, at a future day, the proprietaries disapproved of a conduct so destructive of their jurisdiction, which in all countries is defended with so much ardour, because its preservation inviolate is so flattering to the pride of men. Amid distractions which shew a total debility of government, proceeding from the frequency of the late changes, from the establishment of forms contrary to the inclinations of the people, Albemarle was deprived of a governor, by the death of Stevens, in the beginning of the year 1674. Agreeably to a prudent instruction for that purpose, the assembly chose Cartwright in his room, "till orders should come from England." Yet disgusted, probably, with a situation wherein he could acquire neither much profit nor reputation, he returned to England in the beginning of the year 1676; leaving "the administration in ill order and worse hands."<sup>17</sup>

When the proprietaries reflected how much their former instructions had been neglected, and their designs opposed, by those who were intrusted with the execution of both; how much the trade of New-England thither had been promoted contrary to the former, and the settlement of the southern bank of the Albemarle had been discouraged notwithstanding the latter, they resolved to appoint such a governor as should execute both. In November, 1676, they named therefore Eastchurch, whose address and abilities had raised him to the dignity of speaker of the assembly, who had lately ar-



rived in England, to represent the situation of affairs : And his instructions were framed so as to remedy the late, and to prevent future, disorders. Miller, who now solicited reparation for his wrongs, was at the same time appointed secretary and Lord Shaftesbury's deputy ; by the commissioners of the customs he was constituted the first collector of the parliamentary revenue in that colony. They departed in the beginning of the subsequent year, in order to take upon them these important offices. But Eastchurch, being detained in the West-Indies by an agreeable engagement, thought it prudent to detach the companion of his voyage to govern the colony as president till his arrival.<sup>18</sup>

As chief magistrate and collector of the royal customs, Miller was received in July, 1677, with a treacherous facility which did not forebode a peaceful administration. He found the colony to consist of a few inconsiderable plantations, dispersed over the north-eastern bank of the Albemarle, and divided into four districts. The colonists were far from numerous, because the *tithables*, consisting of all the *working hands*, from sixteen to sixty years of age, one-third of which was composed of *Indians*, *negroes*, and *women*, amounted only to fourteen hundred : And exclusive of the cattle and the Indian corn, eight hundred thousand pounds of tobacco were the annual productions of their labour. These formed the basis of an inconsiderable commerce, which was almost entirely carried on by the people of New-England, who supplied their little wants who sent their commodities all over Europe, who, in a great measure, governed the colony, and directed the pursuits of the planter to their own advantage.<sup>19</sup> Thus that country acquired, by the address of its traders, that staple which it had been the policy of the acts of navigation to esta-



blish in England. And though the situation of Virginia ought to have commanded the whole of a traffic of which she now only enjoyed a part, yet so little was she governed by commercial motives, that two years after she prohibited<sup>20</sup> "the importation of tobacco from Carolina; as it had been found very prejudicial." Yet let us not think meanly of the population, of the products, or the wealth, of Albemarle, since, with regard to all these, she was then superior to her neighbour on Ashley. Uninstructed in the precepts of religion, the colonists were ignorant: uninformed of the affairs of the world, they were extremely credulous: And they formed therefore fine instruments to perform the work of those who wished to profit by them. In conformity to his instructions, Miller began the work of reformation, which, in all countries, must be conducted by the hand of prudence; which has shaken the thrones of princes, though supported by talents and power, that this man did not possess. He easily obliged Bird, who had been appointed collector by the assembly, to refund a considerable sum which he had collected under the authority of the act of parliament before-mentioned:<sup>21</sup> He endeavoured to promote a more direct trade with England and the other colonies, in order to destroy the monopoly enjoyed by the people of New-England; who, said the proprietaries, cannot be friends to the prosperity and interest of Carolina, which will certainly in time render them inconsiderable. But, as president, "he did many extravagant things, whereby, as we are assured, he lost the affections of the people." Yet the regular discharge of his duty, when obliged to perform such instructions, tended necessarily to render him obnoxious. The usual arts of the seditious were moreover employed to disseminate discontent and raise disaffection.<sup>21</sup> And

the traders of New-England, conscious of the orders that threatened the loss of an advantageous commerce, watered the seeds of disorder, which they foresaw would yield them an abundant harvest.<sup>22</sup> The moment an armed vessel arrived, which was conducted by Gillam, a name then famous in Albemarle, an insurrection broke out in December, 1677. The insurgents were chiefly conducted by Culpeper, who had, in 1671, been appointed surveyor-general of Carolina, who had raised commotions on Ashley-river, who was now greatly listened to, because he was deemed so experienced in such enterprises. As there was no power to resist them, they easily acquired undisputed possession of the country. They imprisoned the president, who was the chief object of their indignation, and seven proprietary deputies; they seized the royal revenue, amounting to three thousand pounds, which they appropriated for supporting the revolt; they established courts of justice; they appointed officers; they called a parliament: And they, for years, exercised all the authority of an independent state..<sup>23</sup> As there had been no example of a revolt, which was not accompanied by a manifesto, so now the inhabitants of *Pasquetanke* addressed a *remonstrance to the rest of the people of Albemarle*; <sup>24</sup> in order to justify a conduct which might have appeared unprovoked; to induce the planters of the three other districts to favour their views and to lend them their aid. It complained of the various oppressions of Miller, and assigned, as a principal reason why they had seized the records and imprisoned the president, "that thereby the country may have a free parliament, to represent their grievances to the proprietaries." Though this writing is not remarkable either for elegance of diction or vigour of sentiment, yet it was adapted to the understandings



of all the parties, and answered its end: It is to be lamented, that such publications seldom contain the real motives of the chief actors on such occasions. Of this insurrection contemporary men of discernment remarked: That it was owing to no sudden provocation, but was the effect of deliberate contrivance, in order that the conductors of it, and some other men of New-England, might get the trade of this country into their own hands, might defraud the king of his customs, and buy the goods of the inhabitants at their own rates. And thus people are made the constant bubbles of their own credulity and of others' crimes: We may deplore their miseries, though it seems to little purpose to lament what cannot possibly be in future prevented!

When Eastchurch at length arrived, to whose commission or conduct there could be no objection, the insurgents derided his authority and denied him obedience. He was constrained to apply to the governor of Virginia for aid: But he died of vexation before a sufficient number of troops could be collected to answer his purpose. Yet still apprehensive of an invasion from this province, of the punishment that would probably be inflicted, his opponents, at the end of two years' successful revolt, dispatched Culpeper and Holden to England, to promise submission to the proprietaries, but to insist on the punishment of Miller. And the late president, and other officers, who had languished meanwhile in prison, having found means to escape, appeared in England about the same time, and filled the court and the nation with complaints of their own sufferings, with accusations against their persecutors.<sup>25</sup> Men, who regarded neither, saw, in the continuance of the present revolt, the degradation of the proprietary government, of the authority of England; and foretold, that, when the present actors



no longer gave animation to the scene, the colony and the state would equally feel and regret the evil of bad example, which must necessarily result from successful insurrection.

When Culpeper had executed his commission, and was about to return, he was impeached, by the commissioners of the customs, of the crimes of acting as collector without their authority, of embezzling the king's revenue. He was seized on-board a vessel in the Downs, by virtue of a warrant from the privy-council. It was in vain for him to acknowledge the facts and to beg for mercy; or were this refused, to request that he might be sent to Carolina for trial, where the offences were supposed to have been committed: His powerful accusers insisted that no favour might be shown him, unless he refunded the duties which he had wrongfully seized.<sup>26</sup> And, in Trinity-term, 1680, he was tried in the court of King's-bench, on an indictment of high-treason committed without the realm. Though five witnesses fully proved those circumstances which constituted the crime, yet the famous Shaftesbury, who was then in the zenith of his popularity, appearing on his behalf, and representing, contrary to the most undoubted facts, "that there had never been any regular government in Albemarle; that its disorders were only feuds between the planters; which could only amount to a riot;" Culpeper was acquitted:<sup>27</sup> The judges declaring, that to take up arms against the proprietary government was treason against the king.

Though historians concur in representing mistakingly, that Culpeper was sent from Carolina, and tried in England for high-treason committed within that colony, yet none of them deny, or even doubt, the legality of the trial.<sup>28</sup> That was reserved for modern times. And Sir

Peyton Ventris, the reporter of his case, remarks, with approbation, "that, by the statute of Henry VIII. foreign treasons may be either tried by a special commission, or in the king's-bench by a jury of the county where that court sits."<sup>29</sup> It seems to have been anciently a matter of uncertainty in what manner treasons committed without the kingdom were to be inquired of; "they wanted trial at common law, says Sir Edward Coke,<sup>30</sup> and therefore to establish certainty therein, the above-mentioned law was made." How much the vigorous reign of Elizabeth was disturbed by various rebellions in Ireland is known to every one: And several offenders, against the duty of their allegiance, were punished within the realm, agreeably to a resolution of the judges, "though Ireland had the same laws for treason that England hath, and some more."<sup>31</sup> A similar practice continued in the two subsequent reigns, because similar crimes occurred. And though a peer of Ireland insisted, that, were he tried in England, he would be deprived of the beneficial trial by his peers, he was yet convicted by a jury of Middlesex.<sup>32</sup> No proposition of law, therefore, could be better established or known, at the epoch of American colonisation, than that foreign treasons might be tried within the realm: And none could be more applicable to the condition of subjects residing within a distant territory of the crown. It was accordingly declared, we have seen, to be a fundamental principle in the Virginian constitution; "that every offender against the duty of his allegiance, shall be sent to England, there to receive condign punishment." The same rule was expressly established and enforced by the Carolinian charter of 1665. The practice seems to have been common and universal during the reign of Charles II. to send colonists to England, charged with



high treason.<sup>33</sup> It was continued by William at the Revolution, and strengthened by Anne. But Culpeper is the first colonist who appears to have been regularly tried in the court of king's-bench by virtue of the statute before-mentioned. And the learned of former times remarked: That long usage, uniformity in principle, the approbation of ages, are the best evidences of a constitutional right.<sup>34</sup>

To put an end to an usurpation that had so long oppressed the people and set at naught the power of the proprietaries, two proposals were submitted to them: either, by a vigorous exertion of an inconsiderable armament, to subdue the insurgents by force; or to accept of their proffered submission on the terms proposed by themselves. Agreeably to the wonted practice of the weak, the proprietaries temporized for some time; now shewing a disposition, while they were incited by their resentments, to exhibit an example to posterity, by punishing the most guilty; at other times, blaming the conduct of their officers, and justifying the actions of their opponents: But, with the acquittal of Culpeper, they determined to adopt the last, which at once displayed their own imbecility, and offered up, at the shrine of mistaken policy, those friends who had risked every thing in defence of their rights. And they resolved to govern, in future, according to that portion of obedience which the insurgents should be disposed to yield them.<sup>34</sup> The wise exclaimed, in the language of prediction; "that a government, actuated by such principles, cannot possibly be of long continuance."

In prosecution of this determination, the proprietaries established a temporary administration in the beginning of the year 1680, at the head of which was placed Harvey as president: Resolving to send thither Seth Sothel,



who had lately purchased Lord Clarendon's share of the province, that, by his authority, he might reduce the late distractions to order. Yet they were disappointed. Little regard was paid to the rule of Harvey, because men yield unwilling obedience to a government which they know to be of short duration: And Sothel was taken by the Algerines on his voyage thither. Henry Wilkinson, a person from whose prudence much was expected, was appointed governor in February, 1681, of that part of Carolina stretching from Virginia to the river Pemlico, and five miles beyond it. Means were now employed to heal former disorders. An act of oblivion was passed, but with an exception with regard to "the duties due to the king and to the estates of his collector." To the governor and council the proprietaries remonstrated: "We hope your own interest, as well as our injunction, will induce you to use your utmost endeavours to settle order amongst yourselves, without which you can never expect an increase of strength or trade; and these considerations ought to prevail so far, that we shall not be constrained to use force to reduce the seditious to reason; since it is the good of the inhabitants we most desire, and not the taking away of any man's life and estate."<sup>35</sup> But this sensible representation was attended with little effect, because former causes continued. Strangers to that moderation which the lenity and good intentions of the proprietaries ought naturally to have inspired, those who bore chief sway were actuated alone by the vindictive spirit of a triumphant faction. They proceeded against their opponents by imprisonment, and fine, and banishment; who were obliged to flee into Virginia for protection: And with them departed justice and freedom

from a country, doomed to suffer a long misery, as a punishment for its follies or crimes.<sup>36</sup>

This lamentable scene of anarchy was not however changed, nor was the condition of the colony meliorated by the arrival of Sothel, the governor, in the year 1683. Though required to expel those from the council who were concerned in the late disorders; to establish a court of the most impartial of the inhabitants, for the determination of wrongs done during the distractions of the times; to assist the officers of the customs in collecting the royal revenue, in executing the acts of navigation; he declined to comply. The annals of delegated authority have not recorded a name which deserves so much to be transmitted to posterity with infamy as that of Sothel. Bribery, extortion, injustice, rapacity, with breach of trust and disobedience of orders, are the crimes of which he was accused during the five years that he misruled a miserable colony.<sup>37</sup> Strange, that the man who had beheld tyranny in all its odious forms on the coast of Barbary, did not feel for the sufferings of men, and respect their rights! Driven almost to despair, the inhabitants seized his person, in 1688, in order to send him to England, to answer their complaints: But, upon his intreaties, and offering to submit their mutual accusations to the next assembly, they accepted of his proposal, with a moderation which shows the extent of their wrongs. The assembly "gave judgment against him in all the above-mentioned particulars, and compelled him to abjure the country for twelve months, and the government for ever."<sup>38</sup> Yet at the same time that the proprietaries did not altogether approve of the conduct of the people, because "prejudicial to the prerogative of the crown and to their honour," they heard, with abhorrence, of their sufferings; they endeavoured, with



a laudable spirit, to prevent such for the future.<sup>89</sup> And such was the sad condition to which North Carolina was reduced at the epoch of the Revolution, partly by her own folly, but more by the intrigues and crimes of others.

When the dissatisfaction of the proprietaries with the conduct of Yeamans, which was said *to have altered the face of things*, procured his recal, Joseph West, whose prudent management had recommended him, was in the mean time appointed governor of the Southern colony in May, 1674. He is justly celebrated for his courage, his wisdom, his moderation. And, as the province enjoyed the influence of these virtues, it prospered for some years; it felt no other infelicity than what arose from a penury which disabled the planters from discharging what they owed to the proprietaries. As the debtors had promised to pay the governor's salary, which was extremely inconsiderable, as they however failed, there were assigned him, in April, 1677, the plantation and stock, the merchandises and debts, belonging to his constituents in Carolina, in discharge of his claims. This is the first factor, who, at the end of ten years' *prudent management*, received the whole product of his traffic, as the reward of his services, without any impeachment of his morals. Other nobles may learn from this trivial transaction, how unprofitable and unavailing it is for them to engage in similar commercial enterprises. Yet the proprietaries, by the application of eighteen thousand pounds, without aiming at the profit of merchants, had mastered the difficulty of the undertaking: People going thither now at their own expense, and men of estate venturing where they were assured of fair dealing. It was on this occasion that the dissenters, made uneasy in England, by what they



beheld, which they deemed nothing to what they dreaded "from a popish successor," emigrated thither in considerable numbers. While these men augmented its numbers, they acquired the honour of introducing religion into Carolina, but with it religious controversy and political altercation, which neither promoted the interests of morality nor of peace. In April, 1679, Charles II. with a munificence which does him honour, ordered two small vessels to be provided at his expence, to transport thither several foreign Protestants, who proposed to raise wine, oil, silk, and other productions of the South. He exempted that province from the payment of taxes on these commodities for a limited time, though the commissioners of customs remonstrated, with a prophetic prudence, against "the encouraging of people to remove to the plantations, as too many go thither, to the unpeopling and ruin of the kingdom." But, owing to their weighty reasons, there was refused an exemption on the exportation of tobacco from Carolina, which was now asked, which they foretold would occasion abuses more easy to prevent than to abolish. The renown of that country, the encouragement given by the proprietaries, induced many foreigners of various nations to emigrate thither from this time to the Revolution. And though they have never been able to enrich it with the valuable commodities which were now so confidently promised, their descendants form a respectable part of the present inhabitants. Instructed that "the Oyster-point," so delightfully formed by the confluence of the rivers Ashley and Cooper, was more convenient than what the *first settlers* had chosen, the proprietaries encouraged the inclination of the people, who began to remove thither in 1679. And, in the subsequent year, the foundation was laid of Charles-

Town, so famous for the regularity of its streets, the extent of its commerce, the elegance of its inhabitants ; and, during this year, thirty houses were built. It was instantly declared *the port* for the various purposes of traffic, *the capital* for the general administration of government. But it was long unhealthful. From the month of June to October, the courts of justice were annually shut up ; no public business was transacted ; men fled from it as from pestilence ; and orders were given to inquire for situations more friendly to health. Yet how happy and how singular is the reverse ! It is now allowed to enjoy the most salubrious air in Carolina. And the inhabitants resort to it at present, during the same season, with the ardor of those who hope to enjoy the greatest of blessings.<sup>40</sup> Men of discernment have attributed this fortunate revolution to the dispersion or purification of the noxious vapour, by the smoke issuing from the numerous culinary fires.

Notwithstanding the early instructions of the proprietaries to cultivate the good-will of the Aborigines, and the more recent orders to prohibit all trade with them for seven years, till the inhabitants are more numerous and better able to defend themselves, a war commenced in the beginning of the year 1680, with the Westoes, a very powerful tribe on the southern boundary ; which was “not only extremely troublesome, but had well nigh ruined that hopeful settlement.” The cause of hostilities, thus inconvenient and dangerous, may be found in injuries, which had been for some years mutually given and received, which by both parties were still more dreaded in future. But, as every evil was to be feared, as no possible good could be expected, from the continuance of a war which is never attended with glory or profit, a peace was concluded in the subsequent year ; the old



giving security for the good conduct of the young. In order to prevent the return of similar mischiefs, that more than ordinary care might be taken to do justice to the natives, commissioners were appointed by the proprietaries, to decide all complaints between the contending parties. Though the tribes within four hundred miles of Charles-Town were at the same time taken under the protection of those noblemen, a dishonourable practice then commenced, which all of their authority was unable to prevent or abolish. Not only the principal inhabitants, but the officers of government, encouraged that spirit of discord which reigns among untutored savages, and promoted that inclination for war so natural to the American Indian, to every nation in a similar state of improvement, merely with design to procure the captives, whom they purchased as slaves : And they but too frequently inflamed the colonists to make war on the men whom they had promised to civilize, "to introduce to a knowledge of God," whom they were under every obligation to protect. It was in vain for the governor and council to insist, as a justification, that a policy, which weakened the tribes by their mutual wars, secured the colony against their attacks ; that it was humane to buy prisoners who were already doomed to die : The proprietaries, dissatisfied with these reasons, represented, how jealous they were that the private gains, which some make by the traffic for slaves, sway more to these opinions than the public safety ; that they could not answer it to God, to the king, to the people intrusted to their government, any longer to suffer a conduct which had been so detrimental to the province, by discouraging many considerable persons from going thither, Yet it required the future remonstrances of the proprietaries, against "this barbarous practice,"



to procure a law to regulate, and at length to prohibit, what was so ignoble in itself, and had given such deserved offence.<sup>41</sup> A mutual hatred then commenced between the natives and the colonists, which length of time has been unable to allay. And the aborigines in after-times revenged severely their misconduct or crimes upon the innocent posterity of the original settlers; making Carolina regret that her founders had reduced the freest of men to a condition more truly deplorable than that of the beasts, their fellow-labourers, unconscious of what the others had lost.

While the province thus suffered complicated ills from the misconduct of her governors, the proprietaries exerted themselves to promote her populousness, her security, her happiness. At the desire of several wealthy persons, who proposed to emigrate thither, they "once more" revised the unalterable constitutions. They declared, that no farther changes should be made without the consent of the representatives of the people. It is unnecessary to point out the nature of alterations which were never admitted in Carolina, though they relaxed the rigour of the constitutions in favour of freedom: For the people were persuaded to see, in a measure intended probably for their good, the danger of destructive precedent. Incited by these attentions, Ferguson not long after conducted thither an emigration from Ireland, which instantly mingled with the mass of the inhabitants. Lord Cardross led a colony from Scotland, which settled at Port-royal; which claiming, from an agreement with the proprietaries, co-ordinate authority with the governor and grand council of Charles-Town, was compelled, with circumstances of outrage, to acknowledge submission; and, having provoked the Spaniards at St. Augustine, by inciting the Indians against

them, the Scottish settlement was in after-times totally destroyed: Thus acquiring, when it was no more of any avail, that prudence, from sad experience, which its leaders ought always to have possessed and exerted. Though the province had been formed before this time into manors and baronies, as caciques and landgraves were created, yet it was during the year 1682 that it was first divided into three counties. Berkeley filled the space around the capital as far as Stono-creek on the north, and the Sewee on the south. Craven occupied the district to the northward of it, towards Cape Fear, which was formerly denominated Clarendon, the most ancient settlement of the whole. On the south, Colleton contained Port-royal and the lands in its vicinity, to the distance of thirty miles. Yet the first only was so stocked with inhabitants as to be honoured with a county-court for the determination of its local affairs: And at Charles-Town the twenty members, which composed the lower house of parliament, were chosen. Such was the inconsiderable progress of a province which afterwards became so opulent and great. West held a parliament in autumn, 1682; wherein were enacted laws for the settling a militia, which the late war had taught them to be so necessary; for making ways through the boundless forest which every where surrounded the capital; for promoting the morality of a people who did not enjoy the instruction of a public ministry. And that gentleman immediately resigned his administration to Joseph Moreton, who was deemed at that time worthy of this important trust.<sup>42</sup> Then commenced that reiterated change of governors, appointing successively Kyrle, West, Quarry, Moreton, of every public officer, which was productive of those evils in Carolina that have uniformly attended it in every coun-



try on earth ; the degradation of the proprietary government ; the introduction of faction ; the turbulence of a people no longer attached to their benefactors and rulers.

Moreton convened a parliament in September, 1683. And it established a great variety of regulations for those little inconveniences which all colonies experience in their early years ; because laws every where arise from the wants of men, and not from the speculations of theorists. In order to remedy the distress felt from the want of a common measure of commerce, "the value of foreign coins was raised ;" which first gave rise to the currency of Carolina, that in after-times became so extremely depreciated. In imitation of the former conduct of Albemarle, "all prosecutions for *foreign debts* were suspended." But the proprietaries beholding, not long after, with abhorrence, what they had lately confirmed without animadversion, dissented from this law, because it was contrary to the king's honour, since it was in effect to stop the course of justice ; because the parliament had no power to enact a law so contrary to those of England : And, astonished that their deputies would have assented to what gave such just offence, they issued orders, "that all officers should be displaced who had promoted it."<sup>43</sup> The representatives sent to this parliament seem to have been chosen contrary to the instructions which had been transmitted the year before ; that, of the twenty members, Berkeley and Colleton should each choose ten : The people of the former because most numerous, opposing any choice by the latter ; and the third county being yet too little inhabited to be thought worthy of that important privilege. But, considering it as a very unequal thing that the other inhabitants should be deprived of "the right of



representation," by a combination to have all members chosen at Charles-Town, the proprietaries gave orders that the present should be dissolved, and no other parliament called till their instruction should be complied with. But they issued their commands in vain. And we shall behold, in after-times, the people rising as one man to put an end to this signal inequality, which was at length countenanced by the power that now wished to abolish it; because the sentiments of men changed with the new situation to which all had arrived. Sensible of the reiterated misbehaviour of their deputies, the proprietors informed the governor and council, in language which at least shews good intentions: "We would have you take notice that power of magistracy is put into your hands for the good of the people, who ought not to be turned into prey, as we doubt hath been too much practised." It is remarkable enough, "that the greatest dealers in Indian slaves were the fiercest sticklers against allowing members of Parliament to Colleton county:"<sup>44</sup> Thus affording an example, how men, by acquaintance with corruption, become steeled against the sense of what they owe to the rights of others.

The war, which the ambition of Lewis XIV. lighted up in Europe during that age, put in motion numerous privateers, whose successful depredations encouraged the people of Carolina to pursue similar projects. But the too anxious zeal of Charles II. to preserve a neutrality with regard to the belligerent powers, induced him to transmit in April, 1684, a declaration of his intentions, which the proprietaries ordered should be punctually executed: And this measure gave a check to enterprises that were as contrary to the law of nations as they were pernicious, by promoting what are inconvenient

every where, but destructive of an infant colony; *the desire of sudden wealth, the spirit of dissipation.*<sup>45</sup> The peace which ensued, by an easy gradation, transformed the privateers into pirates, which long infested the America seas, which almost annihilated commerce. The governor of Carolina, the proprietary-deputies, the principal inhabitants, all degraded themselves to a level with the meanest of mankind, by assisting pirates, by receiving the plunder of nations. The proprietaries remonstrated against practices that reflected infamy on the province: But in vain did they displace their officers, when the numbers and credit of the offenders in some measure sanctified the crime.<sup>46</sup> Charles II. urged by his allies, and sensible how much the trade of his own subjects had been injured, transmitted, in April, 1684, "a law against pirates" which the proprietaries required might be enacted by the parliament, which they afterwards confirmed, and ordered to be rigorously enforced. But unexecuted laws are a dead letter: And what had been so gainful, however dishonourable, settled into a general use. The naval knowledge of James II. acquired him the honour of destroying the enemies of mankind. He detached Sir Robert Holmes, with a small fleet, in August, 1687, and with an extraordinary commission, "for suppressing pirates in the West Indies." Notice of both was sent to the governor and council at Charles-Town, who received orders to shew an example of submission to his powers, to afford every assistance to his armament.<sup>47</sup> And this sensible project proved at length successful; till new causes not long after gave rise to piratical adventures, which required the continued energy of William and Anne to suppress.

The disgrace with which those piracies covered South-



Carolina, was not the only inconvenience that they entailed on it. The Spaniards, at St. Augustine, had always viewed the Southern plantations with peculiar jealousy ; they suspected the colonists, with reason, of inflaming the Indians against them ; and they beheld, with indignation, the plunderers of their wealth openly encouraged at Charles-Town : They at first threatened hostilities ; but, towards the end of the year 1686, they invaded the southernmost frontiers, and laid waste the feeble settlements of Port-royal. Unable to defend a wide extended boundary, the Carolinians, countenanced by the governor and council, and persuaded that they had sufficient authority from their charter to make war on their neighbours, prepared to take St. Augustine, to defend themselves, by striking boldly at once at the heart of their enemy. But the proprietaries, informed of this project, remonstrated : "That every rational man must have foreseen that the Spaniards, thus provoked, would assuredly retaliate ; that the clause in the patent, that had been relied on to justify the measure, meant only a pursuit in heat of victory, but not a deliberate making war on the king of Spain's subjects within his own territories : nor do we claim any such power : No man, however, can think, that the dependencies of England can have power to make war upon the king's allies, without his knowledge or consent." A clause, similar to that before alluded to, was inserted in every colonial charter, out of abundant caution ; but it was merely declaratory of the common law, which would have taken place without it, wherever Englishmen formed a colony, For the right of self-defence is inseparable from man, whithersoever he goes. The construction of the proprietaries is equally sensible and decisive. And, though the colonists of New-England pursued a different



rule, it may safely be asserted, that it is altogether contrary to principle to argue that the dependent territories of a state may rightfully make war or peace, without its knowledge and assent. For, the sovereign nation might be involved in warfare, and bloodshed, and expence, till it ceased to be at all. The proprietaries prudently dissented, to the law for raising men and money for the projected invasion of the Spanish territories. The inhabitants being either convinced by the reasonings of the remonstrance before-mentioned, or the sinews of war being thus cut asunder, the expedition was discontinued. And those prudent noblemen congratulated the governor and council upon this event in terms which shewed how much in earnest they had been: "We are glad you have laid aside your project, as, had it proceeded, Moreton, Godfrey, and others, might have answered it perhaps with their lives." While they were ordered to write "a civil letter" to the governor of St. Augustine, to inquire by what authority he acted, they were warned to put the province in the best posture of defence.<sup>49</sup> At that time a mutual hatred and dread of each other commenced, between the Carolinians and Spaniards, which ceased only when the latter ceased to be the lords of Florida.

The demise of Charles II. being mean-while formally communicated to the governor and council, James II. was joyfully proclaimed. For the people, either too much engaged in domestic faction, in throwing off grievances which they deemed intolerable, because they had felt no real ones; or in acquiring wealth by the plunder of their neighbours; little interested themselves in European politics or intrigues. And, in return for *their expressions of loyalty*, this monarch assured them of his protection, with an unusual insincerity, while he medi-

tated the revocation of a patent which had conferred the most important privileges.<sup>50</sup> The first collector was established at Charles-Town during the year 1685; because at that time its commerce, inconsiderable as it then was, began to attract the notice of the world. The governor and council were at the same time ordered "not to fail to shew their forwardness in assisting of the collection of the duty on tobacco transported to other colonies; in seizing ships that presumed to trade contrary to the acts of navigation." But the commands of the proprietaries were never received with much attention in a province where, in theory, they seem to have engrossed all power. And, as during the present season, little regard was paid to orders so contrary to the views of every one, an illicit trade was not only practised, but justified under a clause of the patent, *which the people believed to be of superior force to the law.* Yet the proprietaries *never claimed any exemption by virtue of their charter*: Nor did it in the least support a pretension so contrary to itself. For, as we have seen, it expressly required the submission of the colonists to commercial regulations, to the payment of the usual customs. Though the royal grant of 1665 was passed subsequent to the act of navigation, the present exemption was, *notwithstanding*, insisted on, with the same spirit that it was contended, during this reign, that a king of England may dispense with the law. The principle of Carolinians, and the doctrine so fashionable at the court of James, which sapped the foundations of his throne, were therefore exactly the same. But how amusing is it to trace the extraordinary changes which often happen in the sentiments of men! The Revolution, the claim of rights, were supposed to have buried *the dispensing power* for ever in oblivion. Yet it has been re-



vived during recent times, in order to build on it ideal systems, though the actual exertion of it would be opposed with a zeal irreconcilable to the sincerity of those who maintain it. Neither awed by the authority, nor convinced by the reasonings, of the proprietaries, the provincials continued the practice which they had avowed as legal. While their vessels were seized, the court of England was filled with complaints of the irregularity of their conduct. And, when the reigning prince had adopted the resolution of annihilating all proprietary governments, a writ of quo-warranto was issued against the patent of Carolina. Thus, neither their submission to every royal mandate, nor their readiness to aid, with their feeble power, in the collection of the royal revenue, in the execution of the acts of navigation, protected the rights of the proprietaries from attack. Yet, prudently bending before a storm which it seemed vain to resist, they eluded the force of a blast that had laid the charters and governments of New-England in ruins. And, by offering a treaty for a surrender, they gained that precious time, which, in political intrigue, is generally of such decisive consequence.<sup>51</sup>

Opposed in all their views by the men whose duty it was to promote them, and offended at the reiterated disobedience of their officers, the proprietaries, in August, 1686, appointed James Colleton governor; expecting much from his talents, but more from his attachments. The commencement of his administration seems to have given satisfaction to every one. But his instructions, which required him to punish the former governor and officers for various offences, to execute that law against pirates with rigour which was so contrary to the ruling principles of the times, naturally rendered him obnoxious to such a people, during the season of universal de-



generacy.<sup>52</sup> The form of the constitution, composed of a variety of jurisdictions, and investing the parliament with the choice of members for the grand council, necessarily gave rise to perpetual intrigue: And factions, consisting of men of various views, and avowing different principles, “sprang up, as we are assured, as rampant there, as if the people had been made wanton by many ages of prosperity.”<sup>53</sup> An assembly having been called in November, 1685, a majority of the members refused to acknowledge the authority of the fundamental constitutions, because they deemed that writing to be genuine which the proprietors had transmitted as a sketch. These were excluded the house, as men who struck at the very foundation of the government. But, protesting against the validity of laws that should be made by a minority of the commons, they retired into the country; spreading their own principles and discontents among a people whose minds had been already prepared to listen to both with favour. When a new parliament was therefore called, in the year 1687, “they chose members, says their historian, to oppose whatsoever the governor proposed.”<sup>54</sup> From an assembly, which convened in such a disposition, no laws, either salutary or evil, were to be expected. Animated by the pertinacity natural to the discontented, it refused to settle a militia-act, though the safety of the province depended upon it: And, “because some members were not humoured in every thing, they declined to pass any law at all.” Apprehensive, during this situation of affairs, of an invasion from the Spaniards and their Indian allies, the governor published an ordinance, declaring martial law, and requiring every one to appear in arms for the defence of the province. However necessary, however consistent with the declarations of the charter, this mea-

sure was certainly imprudent, because the colonists were more inclined to turn their arms against their ruler, than against the public enemy : And his opponents gave out, that nothing more was intended than to acquire for himself the monopoly of the Indian trade. He entirely lost what it is of the greatest consequence for all rulers to possess, the affections of the people, because every thing was believed of the objects of their dislike. By the dissolution of the assembly, the province was left destitute of any statute-law as a rule of conduct. Though all parties lately rejoiced in the felicity of James for the birth of a son, William and Mary were soon after proclaimed with an apathy, which shews how much they were interested in the distracted state of their own affairs,<sup>55</sup> which all governors ought to dread as the greatest misfortune, because a government that is looked up to with indifference is already undone.

During this ferment, Seth Sothel, whom we have seen banished from Albemarle, and recalled by the proprietaries to justify his conduct, suddenly arrived at Charles-Town. Countenanced by a powerful faction, and presuming on his powers as a proprietary, he seized the reins of government, in the year 1690, notwithstanding the opposition of the governor and council,<sup>56</sup> who protested in vain when the public voice ran in his favour. He easily granted the prayer of petitions which had been suggested by himself for convening a parliament : And, during the distraction of the times, it was easy to procure the general return of members, who were ready to sanctify by their votes whatsoever should be dictated by those who had thus acquired power. Colleton, whose conduct had been far from blameless,<sup>57</sup> was instantly impeached of high crimes and misdemeanours, and disabled from holding any of-



fice, and banished. Others, who were accused of abetting his tyranny, were fined, imprisoned, and expelled the province. But the proprietaries heard with astonishment, of the proceedings of Sothel and his parliament; and, considering the whole as illegal, dissented from laws which partook so much of the violence and irregularity of the framers of them.<sup>58</sup> They wrote the strongest letters of recal to the man, whom, though a proprietary, they considered as an usurper; threatening, if he refused to obey, to lay his proceedings before the king, to procure a mandamus "to compel his appearance in England."<sup>59</sup> They appointed a new governor, in the year 1692, with orders "to inquire into the grievances complained of, and to inform what was best to be done."<sup>60</sup> They granted to the inhabitants a general pardon for crimes formerly committed:<sup>61</sup> And in April, 1693, they resolved: "That, as the people have declared they would rather be governed by the powers granted by the charter, without regard to the fundamental constitutions, it will be for their quiet, and the protection of the well-disposed, to grant their request."<sup>62</sup>

Thus, at the end of three and twenty years, perished the labours of Locke: Thus was abrogated, upon the requisition of the Carolinians, who had scarcely known one day of real enjoyment, a system of laws which had been originally intended to remain for ever sacred; which, far from having answered their end, introduced only dissatisfaction and disorders, that were cured at length by the final dissolution of the proprietary government. The Carolinian annals shew all projectors the vanity of attempting to make laws for a people, whose voice, proceeding from their principles, must be for ever the supreme law. How inadequate must have been the



constitutions, or how defective the execution, which neither ensured obedience to the proprietaries, nor satisfaction to the governed! It was not till seven and twenty years after that this province acquired the present appellations of *North* and *South Carolina*: It was not till it was blessed with a simple form of government that it began to prosper; when the one acquired the manufacture of *naval stores*, the other the production of rice and indigo; which have made both, in modern times, populous, wealthy and great.

---

#### AUTHORITIES AND NOTES.

<sup>1</sup> L'Escarbot's Hist. of N. France, p. 225, 401; which was written by an advocate of Paris as early as the year 1606. — <sup>2</sup> Hackluyt's Voy. IV. p. 737-48-70. — <sup>3</sup> Carolina Ent. IV. p. 6. — <sup>4</sup> Hutch. Hist. Mass. IV. p. 226. — <sup>5</sup> Carol. Ent. IV. p. 1-15. — <sup>6</sup> Ib.

<sup>7</sup> See Sir William Berkeley's instructions, Car. Ent. IV. p. 4; and see p. 22-29. The subjoined *letter from the proprietaries to that gentleman* not only throws considerable light on this obscure portion of the history of Carolina, but will explain to the planter and to the practical lawyer, the reason that the most ancient patents for land of this colony are signed by *William Berkeley*.—From Car. Ent. IV. p. 6.

Cockpit, 8 Sept. 1663.

“Sir,

“ Since you left us we have endeavoured to procure, and have at length obtained, his majesty’s charter for the province of Carolina: A copy of which we do herewith send you. Since the sealing whereof there hath started a title, under a patent granted in the 5 year of king Charles I. to Sir Robert Heath, under which there hath been a claim by the duke of Norfolk’s agents, and another by Sir Richard Greenfield’s heirs; but that all those that shall plant notwithstanding that patent are, by an act of king and council, secured, and that patent by king and council made null, and ordered to be made so by the king’s attorney in the courts of law; a copy of which order we herewith send you; so that no person need scruple planting under our patent: Besides, we have many more advantages than is in the other to encourage the undertakers. We are informed, that there are some people settled on the north-east part of the river Chowan, and that others have inclinations to plant there, as also the larboard side, entering of the same river; so that we hold it convenient that a government be forthwith appointed for that colony; And for that end we have, by captain Whittey, sent you a power to constitute one or two governors and councils, and other officers; unto which power we refer ourselves, we having only reserved the nomination of a surveyor and secretary, as officers that will be fit to take care of your and our interests; the one by faithfully laying out all lands, the other by justly recording the same. We do likewise send you proposals, to all that will plant, which

we prepared upon receipt of a paper from persons that desired to settle near Cape Fear, in which our considerations are as low as it is possible for us to descend. This was not intended for your meridian, where we hope to find more facile people ; who by your interest, may settle upon better terms for us, which we leave to your management, with our opinion that you grant as much as is possible, rather than deter any from planting there. By our instructions and proposals you will see what proportions of land we intend for each master and servant, and in what manner to be allowed ; but we understand that the people that are there have bought great tracts of land from the Indians ; which, if they shall enjoy, will weaken the plantation : first, because those persons will probably keep all those lands to themselves, and so make the neighbourhood of others remote from their assistance, in case of danger : secondly, if any new comers would settle near their habitations, they will not, peradventure, admit it without purchasing, and possibly upon hard terms, which will discourage people from planting : Wherefore it is our resolution and desire that you persuade or compel those persons to be satisfied with such proportions as we allot to others, which will be more than any such number of men, to and for whom these proportions are to be given, can manage, and therefore enough ; more will but scatter the people, and render them liable to be easily destroyed by any enemy ; so that the fixing the way that our instructions mention, will be the best course of settling as we conceive : However, we do leave it to you that are on the place and can best judge. The reason of giving you power to settle two governors, that is, of either side of the river one, is, because some persons that are for liberty of conscience may desire a governor of their own proposing,



which those on the other side of the river may not so well like ; and our desire being to encourage those people to plant abroad, and to stock well those parts with planters incite us to comply always with all sorts of persons, as far as possibly we can. You will be best able to judge when you hear all parties, and therefore refer the thing wholly to you. The entrance into Chowan river is difficult, and water but for small vessels. But we understand that there is an entrance, bold and deep water in the latitude of 34, which is near the rivers called the Neus and Pemlico, which we conceive may be best discovered from your parts. In order to which we desire you to procure at freight or otherwise some small vessel, that draws little water, to make that discovery and some others into the Sound, through which great ships may, peradventure, come to Chowan, and give us admittance into the other brave rivers that lie in the Sound ; and, whilst they are abroad they may look into Charles-river, a very little to the southward of Cape Fear, and give us an account of what is there. This work we hold necessary to be done, that the king may see we sleep not with his grant, but are promoting his service, and his subjects' profit. By captain Whittey's relation, you may easily pass by land and river from your government to Chowan river, and ride but twenty-five miles by land, which makes us presume earnestly to entreat you to make a journey thither, whereby you may, upon your own knowledge, give us your opinion of it, and direct such discoveries to be made by that river as you shall see fit. We remain, &c."

<sup>8</sup> Car. Ent. 1 v. p. 8-10-12-18-20.—<sup>9</sup> See this charter, in Car. Ent. N°. 2. p. 1-38.—The proprietaries, writing to colonel Ludwel, the governor, in April, 1693, remarked: "We are informed, that some in Carolina say, the

laws of England are not in force there: But, by those gentlemen's favour, who so say, it is expressed in our grant from the crown, that the inhabitants of Carolina shall be of the king's allegiance, which makes them subject to the laws of England.—Ib. p. 219.—Such were the sentiments of rulers and people during that age. Yet the inference of the proprietaries seems extremely just: That, as the Carolinians were English subjects they necessarily owed subjection to English laws. For it is a proposition which at first sight appears extremely incongruous, and not easily proved; that the rules prescribed by the legislature of a state *are not* all equally obligatory on the people of the same state.

<sup>10</sup> Com. Jour. 9 v. p. 16.—<sup>11</sup> Car. Ent. 1 v. p. 18-19.—<sup>12</sup> Ib. p. 23-48-52.—<sup>13</sup> There is a printed copy of the constitutions among the *papers of Carolina*; a copy is subjoined to the works of the author. It is a remarkable singularity in the history of this province, that the identity of the instrument which was designed to be its *great charter* was disputed. The proprietaries transmitted, in July, 1669, a *rough sketch* of what was in contemplation, and the perfect constitutions were signed by them in the subsequent March: The former, being most favourable to the interests of the people, were accepted; the latter were soon after denied to be genuine, and exploded: And this was the chief cause of the abrogation of that famous system, in the year 1693.—Car. Ent. 2 v. p. 109-9; and see the representation to Seth Sothel, in old Ent. N<sup>o</sup>. 2.

<sup>14</sup> Car. Ent. 1 v. p. 31-46-81.—<sup>15</sup> Ib. p. 66-71.

<sup>16</sup> Ib. p. 66-72-9-93. The subjoined *letter from the proprietaries, to the governor and council at Ashley-river*, illustrates this obscure part of its annals, and will demonstrate not only the temper of rulers and colonists,



but at whose expence the present opulent province of Carolina was planted.

“ Whitehall, 8 May, 1674.

“ Gentlemen,

“ We have herewith sent a patent to Mr. West to be landgrave, and a commission to be governor, who has all along, by his care, fidelity, and prudence, in the management of our affairs to our general satisfaction, recommended himself to us as the fittest man there for this trust. This we cannot forbear plainly to say, though we have a great regard to Sir John Yeamans, as a considerable man that hath come and settled amongst us. When Mr. West had formerly the management of affairs, things were then put into such a posture (as appears by the act of parliament made at the latter end of his government, which we herewith send you confirmed). Then we had some encouragement to send supplies to men who took into consideration how we might be reimbursed as well as they could, which was all we expected: But immediately with Sir John Yeamans’s assuming the government the face of things altered. The first news was of several proposals for the increasing of our charge; the same hath ever since continued on, and in our very last dispatches a scheme sent to us of ways of supplying you, which would presently require the disbursement of several thousand pounds; and all this without the least mention of any thought how we might be repaid either our past debts, which already amount to several thousand pounds, or be better answered for the future: But, instead thereof, complaints made, and reproaches insinuated, as if we had dealt ill or unjustly by you, because we would not continue *to feed and clothe you without expectation or demand of any return.* This, we must let you know, put a stop to your supplies



more than the Dutch war: For we thought it time to give over a charge which was like to have no end, and the country was not worth the having at that rate: For it must be a bad soil that will not maintain industrious people, or we must be very silly that would maintain the idle. But we have no suspicion at all of the barrenness or any bad qualities of the country; which some of us are so well assured of, that at their own private charge they are going to settle a plantation at Edisto, without expecting a farthing assistance from us. That Sir John Yeamans's management has brought things to this pass, we are well satisfied; which yet we cannot charge upon his mistake; the character we have received of him, and his long acquaintance with Barbadoes and the world, give us other thoughts of him; and perhaps it would very well have served his purpose if we had supplied you, and he had reaped the profits of your labour at his own rates, and our own plantation been so ordered, that, in reputation, people, and improvement, it might arrive at no other pitch than to be subservient, in provisions and timber, to the interest of Barbadoes. Considering at what rates Sir John bought your poor planters provisions in their necessity, and how industrious and useful to you the generality of the people that came from Barbadoes have been, and then tell us whether we have not reason to be of this mind: For we would not have those that went from hence (whom we are still willing to encourage) be any longer misled; and the people that have come to you from New-York and the northward have, by their planting and way of living amongst you, fully satisfied us that they are friends to, and do in earnest mean and desire the settlement and prosperity of our province. Being therefore willing to give all reasonable encourage-

ment to honest and industrious men, we have sent another supply for clothes and tools, and have entered into an engagement one to another to send one yearly to you, whereby our stores shall never want necessaries for the use of the industrious planter, to be had at moderate rates by those that will pay for them: Yet we do not intend any more carelessly to throw away our stock and charges upon the idle: For, though we, the lords proprietors, have tied one another by covenant, that none shall be behind other in the charge of carrying on this plantation, yet we are all agreed not to make any more desperate debts amongst you though we intend to be at the charge of procuring vines, olives, or any other useful plants or commodities fit for your climate out of any part of the world, and men skilled in the management of them. And therefore, if you intend to have supplies for the future, you will do well to consider how you are to pay us, in what commodities you can best do it, and how the trade of those commodities you can produce may be so managed as to turn to account: For, in our trade with you, we aim not at the profit of merchants, but the encouragement of landlords. In your letter you have been frequent in the mention of a stock of cattle; but, not having paid us for tools and clothes, how do you think that we should be at so far a greater charge in cattle? You say it will enable you to pay your debts; but do you not think, if we bring cattle thither, we, who do not want ground, can keep them, and make the profit of our charge, and venture as well as others, especially it being our design to have planters there and not graziers! For if our inclinations were to stock Carolina at that rate, we could do better by bailiffs and servants of our own, who would be more observant of our orders than you have been;



plant in towns where we directed them ; take up no more land than what they had use for ; nor by a scattered settlement, and large tracts of land taken up, not like to be planted these many years, exclude others from coming near them ; and yet complain for want of neighbours. We rest your very affectionate friends,

“Craven, Shaftesbury, G. Carteret.”

<sup>17</sup> Car. Ent. I .v. p. 111-17-18. — <sup>18</sup> Ib. Car. Pap. p. 255. — <sup>19</sup> Same Papers, p. 224-46. — <sup>20</sup> Laws, Virg. p. 127. — <sup>21</sup> Miller collected, from July to December, 1677, 327,068 lb. weight of tobacco, and 1242l. 8s. 1d. sterling ; being the parliamentary duty of one penny a pound on tobacco exported to other colonies : As almost the whole was sent to New-England, whence it was carried all over Europe, the annual parliamentary revenue arising in that little colony, amounted to 3000l. sterling, though it was very badly collected. Car. pap. p. 246. — <sup>21</sup> Ib. 255. — <sup>22</sup> Among the same papers there are several *affidavits*, which uniformly assert : That the traders of New-England were extremely active in fomenting and supporting the rebellion ; see p. 303-17. — A person, who was known by the name of *the Boston ambassador*, was extremely active among the late *regulators* of North-Carolina. The masters and sailors of the ships of New-England were equally instrumental in promoting the more recent disturbances of that province. Mankind should make a common cause against a people whose rooted principles necessarily incite them to disturb the repose of their neighbours. — <sup>23</sup> Ib. 225-55.

“<sup>24</sup> The following *remonstrance* of the inhabitants of



*Pasquetanke, to all the rest of the county of Albemarle,* (from Car. Pap. p. 299.) will shew the extent of the talents of the framers of it, and of the understandings of the men who could be influenced by it.

“First, the occasion of their seizing the records and imprisoning the president, is, that thereby the county may have a free parliament, and that from them their grievances may be sent home to the lords; which are briefly these: In the first place, (omitting many heinous matters,) he denied a free election of an assembly, and hath positively cheated the country of one hundred and thirty thousand pounds of tobacco, which hath raised the levy to two hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco a head more than otherwise it would have been; besides, near twenty thousand pounds of tobacco charge he hath brought upon us by his piping-guard. And now captain Gillam is come among us with three times the goods he brought last year, but had not been two hours ashore, but, for the slip of a word, was arrested for one thousand pounds sterling; and many affronts and indignities put upon him by the president himself; insomuch that had he not been earnestly persuaded by some, he had gone directly out of the country: And the same night, about midnight, he went on board with a brace of pistols: and, presenting one of them cocked to Mr. George Durand’s breast, and with his other arrested him as a traitor. And many other injuries, mischiefs, and grievances, he hath brought upon us, that thereby an inevitable ruin is coming, (unless prevented,) which we are now about to do, and hope and expect that you will join with us therein: And subscribed this the 3d December, 1677.

“Signed by thirty-four persons.”

<sup>25</sup> The two subjoined papers will throw sufficient light on the origin and progress of an insurrection, which has been so little noticed by historians, which has hitherto remained in perfect obscurity.

*Extract of the case of the commotions of Albemarle, presented by the proprietaries to the committee of foreign plantations.*—From Carolina Papers, p. 255.

“Mr. Cartwright, the governor, returning to England, left the government in ill order and worse hands; the proprietaries resolved to send another governor, and such a one as would put in execution their instructions, orders, and designs: The former governors having very much failed them, especially in two points. The first was, the encouraging the New-England trade there; the second, the discouraging the planting on the South-side of the river Albemarle. The latter was extremely the interest of the proprietaries, but crossed always by the governors and some of the chief of the country, who had engrossed the Indian trade, and feared that it would be intercepted by those that should plant farther amongst them. The illness of the harbour was the cause that this northern part of Carolina had no other vent for their commodities, but either by Virginia, where they paid a duty to the governor, or to New-England, who were the only immediate traders, and ventured in small vessels; and had so managed their affairs that they bought their goods at very low rates; eat out and ruined the place; defrauded the king of his customs; and yet governed the people against their own interests. To cure these evils, the proprietaries made choice of one Mr. Eastchurch to be their governor; whom we dispatched in



summer 1677, together with Mr. Miller, who was the king's officer, and made by us one of our deputies. They took their passage to Mevis: where Mr. Eastchurch, meeting with a woman of a considerable fortune, married her, and sent away Mr. Miller to Carolina, to settle affairs against his coming, who carried with him a commission, as president of the council, till his arrival, with very full powers. He was quietly received and submitted to as governor and collector. In discharge of the last he made considerable progress. But, as governor, he did many very extravagant things; whereby he lost the affections of the people. In the meantime there arrived captain Gillam, in a small armed vessel, with Durant; and about the same time Culpeper, who, finding that Miller had lost his interest, stirred up a commotion; seized him and all the writings belonging to the proprietaries, and the tobacco belonging to the king's customs; which they employed in supporting their unlawful actions. Culpeper was a very ill man, having some time before fled from South-Carolina, where he was in danger of hanging, for endeavouring to set the poor people to plunder the rich. Gillam, he, Crawford, and some other New-England men, had a design (as we conceive) to get the trade of this part of the country into their own hands for some years at least: And not only defraud the king of all his customs, but buy goods of the inhabitants at their own rates. When these men had formed themselves into what Culpeper calls the government of the country, Mr. Eastchurch arrives in Virginia, whose commission and authority they had not the least reason to dispute; yet they kept him out by force of arms, so that he was constrained to apply to the governor of Virginia for assistance to reduce them; which had been



done, but he unfortunately died. Presently after the insurgents sent two commissioners to promise all obedience to the proprietaries, but insisting very highly for right against Miller."

*Extract of a representation, presented to the proprietaries.*

From Carol. Pap. p. 225.

"The rebellion of the inhabitants of Albemarle was not accidental; or arose from any sudden provocation; but rather was the effect of a deliberate contrivance, which appears from these particulars, that can be proved by undoubted witnesses. The heads of the rebellion, at several times, disturbing the courts of justice, subverting the government, dissolving parliaments: their industrious labour to be popular, by continually making factions and parties; their poisoning the peoples ears and disquieting their minds, by diffusing abroad dangerous and false reports; namely, that the proprietaries intended to raise the quit-rents to two-pence, and from that to six-pence, an acre; their general arming upon the first appearance of Gillam's ship in Pasquetanke river, and imprisoning the proprietaries deputies, and putting the president in irons; their arrogating to themselves the supreme power, by first dissolving, then erecting, courts of justice; by convening parliaments without writs; and appointing all officers."

The subjoined *report of the lords of the committee of plantations*, will shew the sentiments of the ministers of England with regard to this insurrection. — From Car. Pap. p. 249.

"May it please your majesty,

"In obedience to your majesty's order of council, of

the 4th instant, we have heard the complaint of the commissioners of the customs against John Culpeper; and, being attended by the lords proprietaries of Carolina, we are fully satisfied that the said John Culpeper hath, by divers seditious practices, abetted and encouraged a rebellion in that province; whereby seven of the lawful magistrates, deputies to the lords proprietaries, were all imprisoned, (the eighth of them only being drawn into that confederacy,) and that the said John Culpeper, by colour and force of that rebellious authority, imprisoned the collector of your majesty's customs; and, having seized into his own hands the customs belonging to your majesty, did, by a proclamation in his own name, declare himself the lawful collector, endamaging your majesty's customs to a considerable value. All which being proved upon oath before us, the said Culpeper acknowledged the facts, and lays himself at your majesty's feet for your gracious pardon. And, in case your majesty shall not think fit to extend your mercy towards him, he desires he may be tried in Carolina, where the fact was committed. But, withal, the commissioners of your majesty's customs humbly beseech your majesty, that no favour may be shewed him unless he make or procure satisfaction for the customs seized and embezzled by him, which we are informed do amount to three thousand pounds sterling. All which, &c.

Anglesey, Worcester, Lauderdale,  
Bridgewater, L. Hyde, H. Coventry."

<sup>27</sup> Car. Pap. p. 283. — <sup>28</sup> Mod. Un. Hist. 40 v. p. 424-5; Brit. Emp. Am. 1. v. p. 333. — <sup>29</sup> Reports, 349. — <sup>30</sup> 3d Institute, p. 11-113. — <sup>31</sup> Ib. p. 11.; Hale's Hist. Pleas of the crown, 1 vol. p. 156. — <sup>32</sup> State Trials, 1



vol; p 181. — <sup>33</sup> Mod. Univer. Hist. 40 vol. p. 147-154. — <sup>34</sup> Foster's Crown-Law, 8vo. edit. p. 412. — The following *opinion of the attorney and solicitor general of Barbadoes, delivered officially to the governor*, displays the sentiments of *colonial lawyers* during that age on this important point of English jurisprudence. — From Record, Plantations Gen. C. 475.

"We are humbly of opinion, that, as long as the stat. 35 Hen. VIII. ch. 2. continues in force, no person whatsoever can be tried in this island for a *foreign treason* without a special commission from her majesty for that purpose. The said statute positively directing that all foreign treasons shall be tried either in the kingdom of England, or by a special commission from her majesty: And *such always has been the exposition of that statute.*

E. Chilton,  
W. Rawlin."

12 Jan. 1703-4.

<sup>34</sup> See Bigg's proposals for suppressing the revolt. Car. Pap. 224; and the representations of the proprietaries. Ib. 275. — <sup>35</sup> Car. Ent. 1 v. p. 135-7-72-3. —

<sup>36</sup> See the address of several inhabitants to Charles II. praying for protection; and Bigg's letter and deposition. Car. Pap. p. 267-71. — <sup>37</sup> Car. Ent. 2 v. p. 177-8. — <sup>38</sup> Ib. p. 157-9. — <sup>39</sup> See the proprietaries letter to the governor, council, and inhabitants.

<sup>40</sup> Car. Ent. 1 v. p. 93-120. — The governor's salary, during that age, was only 100l. sterling a year. Ib. 125-164; Car. Ent. 2 v. p. 42; and Car. Pap. p. 1-20. —

<sup>41</sup> Car. Ent. 1 v. p. 130; 2 v. p. 180. — <sup>42</sup> Car. Ent. 1 v. p. 176-9-84; Ib. 2 v. p. 9-15-28. — <sup>43</sup> Ib. p. 36. — <sup>44</sup> Ib. p.



50-4.—<sup>45</sup> Ib. p. 20-4.—<sup>46</sup> Ib. p. 75-9.—<sup>47</sup> Ib. p. 130 4.—<sup>48</sup> Ib. p. 106.—<sup>49</sup> Ib. p. 121.—<sup>50</sup> Ib. p. 82.

<sup>51</sup> The following papers will illustrate and support the text, and shew the principles and conduct of all parties.

*Part of a letter from George Muschamp, the first collector of Charles-Town, dated 11 April, 1687, to the commissioners of the customs.*—From Car. Ent. 2 v. p. 373.

“ I have received your letter and instructions, which I shall endeavour to follow ; but fear it will be difficult to maintain the acts of navigation : It being not a week since I had a trial with a master of a vessel for that he was navigated with four-fifths Scotchmen ; but I own the evidence was not very clear ; for which reason the court gave it against me. However, in effect it was declared, that, if it had been never so clear, they would have pleaded the benefit of their charter ; pretending that it gives them power to trade with Scotland and Ireland, and likewise that the natives have liberty to transport their own product in ships navigated with Scotchmen ; which I am sure is against the law, *which the people believe to be of no force against their charter, which was granted after the act was passed.*”—REMARK. It hath been shown that Scotchmen might navigate English ships, because they were considered in notion of law as natural-born subjects : Hence we may infer that Muschamp’s opinion was erroneous.

*Report of the attorney-general, to whom this letter was referred.*—From Car. Ent. 2 v. p. 375.

“ May it please your lordships,

“ I have perused these papers, and have also considered the several statutes of Cha. II. ch. 18. of 15 Cha.

II. ch. 7. of 22-3 Cha. II. ch. 26. And it is most clear, that what, by Mr. Muschamp's letter is held at Carolina to be a lawful trade, is most directly contrary to these acts of parliament, and, though their charter be subsequent to these statutes, by which he says they justify, yet is there no colour for their opinion, *unless within their charter there be also a power granted them to trade contrary to these laws, with express non-obstantes to the same*: The charter therefore ought to be inspected; and, if it contains such license and such non-obstantes, (as I am apt to believe it doth not,) then there may a question arise, how far it will be valid against these acts of parliament; wherein if it shall appear to be the case, I shall be ready to give my opinion, if your lordships shall desire it.

“ T. POWIS.”

*Extract of a letter from the proprietaries, to whom these papers were sent, to the committee of plantations.*—From Car. Ent. 2 v. p. 381.

“ In obedience to your Lordships commands, we have considered Muschamp's complaints, that the people in Carolina pretend a right to trade with Scotland and Ireland, contrary to the acts of navigation; which we humbly conceive must be the discourse of ignorant and loose people only, and not of any concerned in the government: For that we have constantly commanded the governor and council strictly to observe the several acts of trade, which we took care to send thither: And, in our letter of 10 September, 1685, we did again remind them of their duty therein, and as soon as we were acquainted that Mr. Muschamp was appointed to be *collector of the plantation-duties in Carolina*, we did, (as in duty



bound) enjoin the governor to be assisting him ; so that we do no ways doubt, but that the ship seized by Mr. Muschamp would have been condemned if there had been sufficient proof: *We never claiming or pretending, by our charter, any exemption from said acts.* Nor do we know what encouragement any ship from Scotland or Ireland can have to trade to the south parts of Carolina, the inhabitants having hardly overcome the want of victuals, and not as yet any commodity fit for the markets of Europe, but a few skins and a little cedar ; both of which do not amount yearly to £2000."

*A letter from Lord Shaftesbury to Lord Craven, the palatine, with regard to the quo-warranto, the surrender of the charter, the reimbursement of the expences of the settlement.*—From Car. Ent. 2 v. p. 369.

" St. Giles's, 7 July, 1686.

" My lord,

" I received yours ; but, not knowing upon what grounds the quo-warranto was intended to be brought against our patent for Carolina, am able to give no result upon it. There have been considerable sums of money disbursed by the proprietaries to bring it to this effect ; and, when the patent is surrendered, I cannot see any way by which they will in probability be reimbursed. I shall be as unwilling to dispute his majesty's pleasure as any man ; but, this being a public concern, it is not in any particular man's power to dispose of it. Therefore, whatever shall be approved of by the rest of the proprietaries, or the majority of them, to be done in this affair, I shall acquiesce in.

" SHAFTESBURY."



<sup>52</sup> Car. Ent. 2 v. p. 87-103-207.—<sup>53</sup> Brit. Emp. Am. 1 v. p. 345.—<sup>54</sup> Ib. 341 ; see their singular protest in old Car. Ent. N<sup>o</sup>. 2.—One of the protesting members signed his mark, as he could not write : We may thence form an opinion of the extent of his political knowledge.—<sup>55</sup> Car. Ent. 2 v. p. 167-8-71.—<sup>56</sup> Ib. p. 175.—<sup>57</sup> The governor, among other irregularities so common during those times, fined a minister 100l. and imprisoned him till payment, *for preaching a seditious sermon* : But the proprietaries remitted the fine, because they deemed it extravagant. Ib. p. 160.—<sup>58</sup> Ib. p. 165-6.—<sup>59</sup> Ib. p. 177-8.—<sup>60</sup> Ib. 194.—<sup>61</sup> Ib. 213.—<sup>62</sup> Ib. 215.

The first of these is the fact that the United States is a young nation, and that its history is a history of growth and development. The second is the fact that the United States is a nation of immigrants, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these immigrants. The third is the fact that the United States is a nation of free men, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these free men. The fourth is the fact that the United States is a nation of law, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these laws. The fifth is the fact that the United States is a nation of peace, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these peace.

The first of these is the fact that the United States is a young nation, and that its history is a history of growth and development. The second is the fact that the United States is a nation of immigrants, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these immigrants. The third is the fact that the United States is a nation of free men, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these free men. The fourth is the fact that the United States is a nation of law, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these laws. The fifth is the fact that the United States is a nation of peace, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these peace.

The first of these is the fact that the United States is a young nation, and that its history is a history of growth and development. The second is the fact that the United States is a nation of immigrants, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these immigrants. The third is the fact that the United States is a nation of free men, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these free men. The fourth is the fact that the United States is a nation of law, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these laws. The fifth is the fact that the United States is a nation of peace, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these peace.

The first of these is the fact that the United States is a young nation, and that its history is a history of growth and development. The second is the fact that the United States is a nation of immigrants, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these immigrants. The third is the fact that the United States is a nation of free men, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these free men. The fourth is the fact that the United States is a nation of law, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these laws. The fifth is the fact that the United States is a nation of peace, and that its history is a history of the struggle for the rights of these peace.

# STATEMENTS

MADE IN THE

## INTRODUCTION TO THE REPORT

ON

GENERAL OGLETHORPE'S

EXPEDITION

TO ST. AUGUSTINE.



# STATEMENTS

MADE IN THE

## INTRODUCTION TO THE REPORT

ON

## GENERAL OGLETHORPE'S EXPEDITION

TO ST. AUGUSTINE.

[On the 18th of July, 1740, a Committee was appointed by the COMMONS HOUSE OF ASSEMBLY, of the Province of *South Carolina*, Consisting of the *Attorney General*; Col. *Brewton*; Major *Pinckney*; Messrs. *Dart*, *Mazyck*, *Drayton*, *Motte*, and *Elliott*; Capts. *Hyrne*, *Morris*, and *Austin*; and the Honourable *John Fenwicke*, *John Colleton*, and *Edmond Atkin*; to inquire into the causes of the failure of the Expedition against *St. Augustine* —On the first of July 1741, this respectable Committee made their REPORT, in which these statements are made, and may be considered as well authenticated Facts in our History.]

### EXTRACTS FROM THE REPORT.—1741.

ST. AUGUSTINE, in Possession of the Crown of *Spain*, is well known to be situated but little distant from hence, in the Latitude of 30 Degrees 00 m. N. in *Florida*, the next Territory to us. It is maintained by his *Catholick Majesty*, partly in order to preserve his Claim to *Florida*, and partly that it may be of Service to the *Plate-Fleets*, when coming through the *Gulf*, by showing Lights to them along the Coast, and by being ready to give As-

sistance when any of them are cast away thereabout. The *Castle*, by the largest Account, doth not cover more than *One Acre* of Ground, but is allowed on all Hands to be a Place of *great Strength* (being a square Fort built with soft Stone, with *Four Bastions*, The Curtain about *Sixty Yards* in length, the Parapet *Nine Feet* thick, the Rampart *Twenty Feet* high, casemated underneath for Lodgings, arched over ; and of late said to be made *Bomb-Proof*, having about *Fifty Pieces* of Cannon mounted, some of which are *Twenty Four Pounders*) and hath been usually garrisoned with about *Three or Four Hundred Men* of the King's *regular Troops*. The Town is not very large, and but indifferently fortified. The Inhabitants, many of which are *Mulatto's* of savage Dispositions, are all in the King's Pay also, being register'd from their Birth, and a severe Penalty laid on any Master of a Vessel that shall attempt to carry any of them off. These are form'd into a *Militia* ; and have been generally computed to be near about the same Number as the regular Troops. Thus relying wholly on the King's Pay for their Subsistence, their Thoughts never turn'd to Trade or even Agriculture, but depending on Foreign Supplies for the most common Necessaries of Life, they spent their time in universal perpetual Idleness. From such a State, mischievous Inclinations naturally sprung up in such a People ; and having Leisure and Opportunity ever since they had a Neighbour, the Fruits of whose Industry excited their Desires and Envy, they have not failed to carry those Inclinations into Action as often as they could, without the least regard to Peace or War subsisting between the two Crowns of *Great-Britain* and *Spain*, or to Stipulations agreed on between the two Governments : And though in some Cases wherein the Persons concerned were few,

and the Circumstances such that they could not easily be detected, *that* Government hath pretended Ignorance, and seemed to disallow thereof, yet it is certain that at the same Time it hath concealed those Persons, and connived at their Actions.

In *April*, 1670, Peace then subsisting between the Crowns, the Ship which the *Lords Proprietors* of this Province sent over with the first Settlers arriv'd in *Ashley-River*, and, having landed them, went away to *Virginia* to fetch a Supply of Provisions, &c. for them; the *Spaniards* at *St. Augustine* hearing thereof, in the mean Time sent a Party in a Vessel from thence immediately to attack them. Accordingly they landed at *Stono Inlet* on their Backs; but those Settlers having by that Time enforced themselves, and the Ship returning timely to their Relief, they made the best of their Way Home again.

In 1686, Peace still subsisting, the Lord *Cardross* who had obtained from the *Lords Proprietors* a Grant of a large Tract of Land in *Granville County*, having just before came over and settled at *Beaufort* on *Port-Royal* with a Number of *North-Britons*, the *Spaniards* coming in *Three* Gallies from *Augustine* landed upon them, killed and whipped a great many, after taken, in a most cruel and barbarous Manner; plundered them all, and broke up that Settlement. The same *Galleys* going from thence run up next to *Bear-Bluff* on *North-Edisto-River*, where those *Spaniards* again landed, burnt the Houses, plunder'd the Settlers, and took *Landgrave Morton's* Brother Prisoner. Their further Progress was happily prevented by a *Hurricane*, which drove two of the Gallies up so high on the Land that not being able to get one of them off again, and the Country being by that Time sufficiently Alarmed, they thought proper to



make a Retreat ; but first set Fire to that Galley on board which Mr. *Morton* was actually then in Chains, and *most inhumanly burnt in her*.

In 1702, before Queen ANNE's Declaration of War was known in these Parts, the *Spaniards* formed another Design to fall upon our Settlements by Land, at the Head of *Nine Hundred Apalatchee Indians* from thence. The *Creek Indians*, in Friendship with this Province, coming at a Knowledge of it, and sensible of the Dangers approaching, acquainted our Traders, then in the Nation with it, when this Army was actually on their March coming down that Way. The Traders having thereupon encourag'd the *Creeks* to get together an Army of *Five Hundred Men*, headed the same, and went out to meet the other. Both Armies met in an Evening on the Side of *Flint-River*, a Branch of the *Chatabooche*. In the Morning, just before Break of Day, (when *Indians* are accustomed to make their Attacks) the *Creeks* stirring up their Fires drew back at a Little Distance leaving their Blankets by the Fires in the very same Order as they had slept. Immediately after the *Spaniards* and *Apalatchees* (as was expected) coming on to attack them, fired and run in upon the Blankets. Thereupon the *Creeks* rushing forth fell on them, killed and took the greatest Part, and entirely routed them. To this *Stratagem* was owing the Defeat of the then intended Design.

In the latter End of the same Year, Queen ANNE's War being commenced, Col. *Moore* then Governor of this Province, with Reason expected a Visit from the *Spaniards*, and it having been suggested to him, that *St. Augustine* might be easily taken, if surprized, he judged it best to give them the first Blow. Accordingly he undertook an Expedition against it with about *Five Hundred Whites*, and *Five Hundred Indians*. He himself

with *Four Hundred* of the Whites proceeded in the Vessels directly to the Bar of *St. Augustine* Harbour, whilst Col. *Daniel* landing at *St. Juan's* march'd directly from thence with the other *Hundred* and the *Indians*, and entered the Town with them only, the same Day as the Vessels appeared in Sight. This little Army kept the Castle close besieged above *Three Months*; and repelled several Sallies with the Loss of very few Men. Yet having no *Bombs* with them, and a *Spanish* Man of War coming to its Relief from the *Havanna* with a considerable Number of Men, on Board *Four* large Transports, which landed on *Anastatia*, they were obliged to retreat: *But not without First Burning the Town.*

In 1704, Col. *Moore* was commissioned as *Lieutenant General* by Sir *Nathaniel Johnson*, who succeeded him in the Government; to make an Expedition against the *Spaniards* and *Indians* at *Apalatchee*, about *Eighty Miles* to the West of *St. Augustine*, on the same Motives that the preceding Expedition had been undertaken. He marched up thither at the Head of *Fifty* Volunteers of this Province, and *One Thousand* *Indians*. The first Fort he came to which had *Fifty* Men in it, he took by Storm, after a smart Resistance. The next Day the Captain of *St. Lewisses* Fort with *Twenty three* *Spaniards* and *Four Hundred* *Indians* giving him Battle, Col. *Moore* took him and *Eight* of his Men Prisoners, and killed *Two Hundred* of the *Indians*. In *Two Days* after the King of *Attachooka*, who was in a strong Fort with *One Hundred* and *Thirty* Men, sent to him Presents of Provisions, &c. and made his Peace. After which he marched through all the rest of their Towns, *Five* of which had strong Forts and Defences against small Armies, but all submitted WITHOUT CONDITIONS. He brought away *Three Hundred* *Indians*, being the whole



of *Three Towns*, and the Most of *Four* more, having totally destroyed the whole of *Two Towns*. So that he left but *One Town*, which compounded with him, Part of *St. Lewisses*, and the People of another Town, who run away all together; but he burnt their *Town, Church* and *Fort*. By this Conquest of *Apalachee* the *Province* was freed from any Danger from that Part during the whole War. And this important Service was effected without putting this Government to the *least Expense*.

In 1706, the *Spaniards* at *St. Augustine* joined the *French* from *Martinico*, in making up a Fleet of *Ten* Sail, with *Eight Hundred Men, Whites, Mustees, and Negroes*, and *Two Hundred Indians*, to invade this *Province*. The Ship on Board which the Chief Commander was, being separated from the Fleet, fell into *Sewee Bay*, not knowing the Place. The rest coming over *Charles-Town Bar*, anchored just within on a *Sunday*, where they remained, sending Parties ashore on *James-Island* and *Wando-Neck*, plundering and burning Houses, &c. 'till *Friday* following *Capt. Fenwicke* going from *Charles-Town*, with *One Hundred Men*, landed at *Hobkew* in Sight of Town, upon a Party of *One Hundred and Thirty Men*, who had got thither and set a Ship on Fire. He attacked them, killed and wounded about *Thirty*, and took *Seventy Prisoners*. The next Day the Ship which had lost Company, still not appearing, the whole *Fleet* set Sail again.

In 1715, Peace having been some Time concluded between the *Crowns*, the *Yamasee* Indians (who before the Settlement of this *Province* had lived in Amity with the Government at *St. Augustine*, but afterwards removed and settled on a Body of Land opposite to *Port-Royal Island*) living contiguous to, and in the most intimate Manner with the Settlers in those Parts, having been ill



used by some of the *Traders* amongst them, were so far disgusted, that they broke out war with this *Province*, by massacring on the *Fifteenth Day of April* above *Eighty* of the Inhabitants of *Granville County*. But it was manifest that they were prompted to severe Resentment of their Usage, whatever it was, by the *Spaniards* at *St. Augustine*. For tho' those *Yamasees* had, during all *Queen Anne's War*, been the greatest Instruments in distressing and harassing them, killing and bringing away Numbers of them, insomuch that not a Man dared for a long Time to go out of Sight of the *Castle*, and destroying even the Cattle; yet, on the very Day this War broke out, the *Yamasees* shewed so much Confidence in the *Spaniards* that they sent away their *Women* and *Children* in their own Boats by water to *Augustine*. And having ravaged the Country, killing many more and doing all the Mischief they could, so that all the *Southern* Parts were broke up, to about the Distance of *Twenty Miles* from *Charles-Town*, they themselves soon after retreated to *St. Augustine* also. There they were received protected and encouraged to make frequent Incursions from thence into the Settlements of this *Province*; and being often-times headed by *Spaniards*, they cut off several of the Settlers, and carried off their *Slaves*. The *Slaves* themselves at length, taking Advantage of those Things, deserted of their own Accord to *St. Augustine*, and upon being demanded back by *this Government* they were not returned, but such Rates paid for those that could not be concealed as that Government was pleased to set upon them. The Evil encreasing, altho' Col. *Barnwell* who was sent from hence to *St. Augustine*, immediately after the Conclusion of *Queen Anne's Peace*, had in Behalf of *this Government* then entered into a stipulation with *that*, mutually to re-

turn any Slaves that should for the future desert either Government; Col *Hall* was sent to St. *Augustine* in 1725, with whom *that* Government confirmed the said Stipulation. Notwithstanding which, the very year following:

In 1727, Peace between the *Crowns* continuing, fresh Depradations were committed on *this Province* from *Augustine*, both by Land and Water; which created the Expense of *Two* Expeditions to prevent the Progress of them. At that Time this Coast being infested by several *Spanish* Vessels, who stiling themselves *Guarda-Costas*, on Pretence of Searching, plundered and made Prizes of all the *English* Vessels they met with. A *Schooner* fitted out from *Augustine*, on the like Account, put in to *North Edisto*, where the Men made a Descent, and carried off the *Slaves* of *David Ferguson*, which were never return'd nor paid for. On this Occasion Captain *Mountjoy* was fitted out by *this Government*, who cleared the Coast of those *Pirates*, and retook a rich *Virginian* Ship. At the same Time a Party of *Yamasee* Indians, headed by *Spaniards* from St. *Augustine*, having murdered our *Out-Scouts*, made an Incursion into our Settlements, within *Ten* Miles of *Ponpon*, where they cut off one Mr. *Micheau*, with another *White-man* on the same *Plantation*, and carried off a *Third* Prisoner, with all the *Slaves*, *Horses*, &c. But being briskly pursued by the Neighbours, who had Notice of it, they were overtaken, routed, and obliged to quit their Booty. The Government, judged it Necessary to chastise (at least) those *Indians*, commissioned Col. *Palmer* for that Purpose instantly; who with about *One Hundred Whites*, and the like Number of our *Indians*, landed at St. *Juan's*, and having left a sufficient Number to take Care of the Craft, *marched undiscovered* to the *Yamasee Town*, within a



Mile of St. *Augustine*. He attack'd it *at once*, killed several of those *Indians*, took several Prisoners, and drove the Rest into the very Gates of St. *Augustine* Castle ; where they were sheltered. And having *Destroyed their Town*, he returned.

In the beginning of 1728, a Party of those *Yamasees* having landed at *Daffuskee*, surprized one of our *Scout-Boats*, and killed every Man but Capt. *Gilbert*, who commanded her. One of the *Indians*, seizing him as his Property, saved his Life. In their Return back to St. *Augustine* a debate arose that it was necessary to kill him, *for that the Governor would not have them to bring any one Alive*. But Capt. *Gilbert*, pleading with the *Indian* that claim'd him, was protected by him ; and upon coming to St. *Augustine* was after some Time released by the *Governor*.

In the latter End of 1737, *still Peace subsisting*, great Preparations were made to invade openly *this Province* and *Georgia*. For that Purpose a great Body of Men arrived at St. *Augustine*, in Galleys from the *Havana* ; which put *this Province* to a very large Expense to provide against. But happily they were countermanded just as they were ready to set off.

In 1738, *altho' Peace subsisted*, and Governor *Johnson* after his Arrival here had, in 1733, renewed the before mentioned Stipulation, another Method was taken by the *Spaniards* to answer their Ends. Hitherto the Government of St. *Augustine* had not dared to acknowledge, much less to justify, the little Villainies and Violences offered to our Properties : But now an Edict of his Catholic Majesty himself, bearing Date in *November* 1733, was published by Beat of Drum round the Town of St. *Augustine* (where many *Negroes* belonging to *English* Vessels that carried thither Supplies of Provi-



sions, &c., had the Opportunity of hearing it) promising Liberty and Protection to *all Slaves* that should desert thither from any of the *English Colonies*, but more especially from this. And, lest that should not prove sufficient of itself, *secret Measures* were taken to make it known to our *Slaves* in *general*. In Consequence of which Numbers of *Slaves* did, from Time to Time, by Land and Water desert to *St. Augustine*; And, the better to facilitate their Escape, carried off their Master's *Horses, Boats, &c.* some of them first committing Murder; and were accordingly received and declared free. Our present *Lieutenant Governor*, by Deputies sent from hence on that Occasion to *Seignor Don Manuel de Montiano*, the present Governor of *St. Augustine*, set forth the Manner in which *those Slaves* had escaped: and redemanded them pursuant to the *Stipulation* between the *Two Governments*, and to the *Peace subsisting* between the *Crowns*. Notwithstanding which, tho' that Governor acknowledged *those Slaves* to be there, yet producing the King of *Spain's* said *Edict* he declared that *he could not deliver them up, without a positive Order for that purpose from the King, and that he should continue to receive all others that should resort thither, it having been an article of Complaint against his Predecessor, that he had not put the said Edict in force sooner.* The Success of those Deputies being too well known at their Return, Conspiracies were form'd and Attempts made by more *Slaves* to desert to *St. Augustine*: But as every one was by that Time *alarm'd* with Apprehensions of that Nature, by great Vigilance, they were prevented from succeeding. However,

In *September 1739*, our *Slaves* made an Insurrection at *Stono*, in the Heart of our Settlements not *Twenty Miles* from *Charles-Town*; in which they massacred

Twenty-Three Whites, after the most cruel and barbarous Manner to be conceiv'd; and having got Arms and Ammunition out of a Store, they bent their Course to the Southward, burning all the Houses on the Road. But they marched so slow, in full Confidence of their own Strength from their first Success, that they gave Time to a Party of our *Militia* to come up with them. The Number was in a Manner equal on both sides; and an Engagement ensued, such as may be supposed in such a Case. But by the Blessing of God the *Negroes* were defeated, the greatest Part being killed on the Spot or taken; and those that then escaped were so closely pursued, and hunted Day after Day, that in the End all but *Two* or *Three* were killed or taken and executed. That the *Negroes* would not have made this Insurrection had they not depended on *St Augustine* for a Place of Reception afterwards, was very certain; and that the *Spaniards* had a Hand in prompting them to this particular Action, there was but little room to doubt. For in *July* preceding, *Don Pedro*, Captain of the Horse at *St. Augustine*, came to *Charles-Town* in a Launch, with *Twenty* or *Thirty* Men (one of which was a *Negro* that spoke *English* very well) under Pretence of delivering a Letter to General *Oglethorpe*, altho' he could not possibly be ignorant that the General resided at *Frederica*, not Half the Distance from *St. Augustine*. And in his Return he was seen, at Times, to put into every one of our *Inlets* on the Coast. And in the very Month in which the above Insurrection was made, the General acquainted our *Lieutenant Governor*, by Letter, that the Magistrates at *Savannah* in *Georgia* had seized a *Spaniard*, whom he took to be a *Priest*, and that they thought, from what he had discovered, that he was em-



ployed by the *Spaniards* to procure a *general Insurrection* of the *Negroes*.

On this Occasion every Breast was filled with Concern. Evil brought home to us, within our very Doors, awaken'd the Attention of the most Unthinking. Every one that had any Relation any Tie of Nature; every one that had a Life to lose, were in the most sensible Manner shocked at such Danger daily hanging over their Heads. With Regret we bewailed our peculiar Case, that we could not enjoy the Benefits of Peace like the rest of Mankind; and that our own Industry should be the Means of taking from us all the Sweetness of Life, and of rendering us liable to the Loss of our Lives and Fortunes. With Indignation we looked at St. *Augustine* (like another *Sallee*!) That Den of Thieves and Ruffians! Receptacle of Debtors, Servants and Slaves! Bane of Industry and Society! And revolved in our Minds all the Injuries *this Province* had received from thence, ever since its first Settlement: That they had, from first to last, in Times of *profoundest Peace*, both publickly and privately, by *Themselves, Indians* and *Negroes*, in every Shape molested us, not without some Instances of *uncommon Cruelty*. And what aggravated the same was, that *this Government* (on the contrary) had never been wanting in its good Offices with our *Indians* in their Behalf: And even during *Queen Ann's War* had exercised so much Humanity towards them that, in order to prevent those *Indians* from *scalping* them, according to their Custom; when they should take any of them Prisoners, a Law was passed to give them *Five Pounds* Proclamation Money for every one they should bring in alive; and accordingly a great Number of the *Spaniards*, by that Means, were brought in alive, and the Reward paid for them.





THE

FIRST SET

OF THE

FUNDAMENTAL CONSTITUTIONS

OF

SOUTH CAROLINA:

AS COMPILED BY

MR. JOHN LOCKE.

## FUNDAMENTAL CONSTITUTIONS, &c.

OUR SOVEREIGN LORD THE KING having, out of his royal grace and bounty, granted unto us the province of *Carolina*, with all the royalties, properties, jurisdictions and privileges of a county palatine, as large and ample as the county palatine of Durham, with other great privileges ; for the better settlement of the government of the said place, and establishing the interest of the Lords Proprietors with equality and without confusion ; and that the government of this province may be made most agreeable to the monarchy under which we live, and of which this province is a part ; and that we may avoid erecting a numerous democracy : we the Lords and Proprietors of the province aforesaid, have agreed to this following form of government, to be perpetually established amongst us, unto which we do oblige ourselves, our heirs and successors, in the most binding ways that can be devised.

I. The eldest of the Lords Proprietors shall be Palatine ; and, upon the decease of the Palatine, the eldest of the seven surviving proprietors shall always succeed him.

II. There shall be seven other chief offices erected, viz. the admirals, chamberlains, chancellors, constables, chief justices, high stewards, and treasurers ; which places shall be enjoyed by none but the Lords Proprietors, to be assigned at first by lot ; and upon the vacancy of any of the seven great offices by death, or other-



wise, the eldest proprietor shall have his choice of the said place.

III. The whole province shall be divided into counties ; each county shall consist of eight signories, eight baronies, and four precincts ; each precinct shall consist of six colonies.

IV. Each signiory, barony, and colony, shall consist of twelve thousand acres ; the eight signories being the share of the eight proprietors, and the eight baronies of the nobility : both which shares, being each of them one fifth part of the whole, are to be perpetually annexed, the one to the proprietors, the other to the hereditary nobility, leaving the colonies, being three fifths amongst the people ; that so in setting out, and planting the lands, the balance of the government may be preserved.

V. At any time before the year one thousand seven hundred and one, any of the Lords Proprietors shall have power to relinquish, alienate, and dispose, to any other person, his proprietorship, and all the signories, powers, and interest, thereunto belonging, wholly and entirely together, and not otherwise. But, after the year one thousand seven hundred, those who are then Lords Proprietors shall not have power to alienate or make over their proprietorship, with the signories and privileges thereunto belonging, or any part thereof, to any person whatsoever, otherwise than as in § xviii ; but it shall all descend unto their heirs male : and, for want of heirs male, it shall all descend on that Landgrave or Cassique of *Carolina*, who is descended of the next heirs female of the Proprietor ; and, for want of such heirs, it shall descend on the next heir general ; and, for want of such heirs, the remaining seven proprietors shall, upon the vacancy, chuse a Landgrave to succeed the deceased proprietor, who being chosen by the majority of the

seven surviving proprietors, he and his heirs successively shall be proprietors, as fully to all intents and purposes as any of the rest.

VI. That the number of eight proprietors may be constantly kept; if, upon the vacancy of any proprietorship, the seven surviving proprietors shall not chuse a Landgrave to be a proprietor, before the second biennial parliament after the vacancy, then the next biennial parliament but one after such vacancy, shall have power to chuse any landgrave to be a proprietor.

VII. Whosoever, after the year one thousand seven hundred, either by inheritance or choice, shall succeed any proprietor in his proprietorship, and signiories thereunto belonging; shall be obliged to take the name and arms of that proprietor whom he succeeds; which from thenceforth shall be the name and arms of his family and their posterity.

VIII. Whatsoever Landgrave or Cassique shall come to be a proprietor, shall take the signiores annexed to the said proprietorship; but his former dignity, with the baronies annexed, shall devolve into the hands of the Lords Proprietors.

IX. There shall be just as many landgraves as there are counties, and twice as many cassiques, and no more. These shall be the hereditary nobility of the province. and by right of their dignity be members of parliament. Each landgrave shall have four baronies, and each cassique two baronies, hereditarily and unalterably annexed to, and settled upon, the said dignity.

X. The first landgraves and cassiques of the twelve first counties to be planted, shall be nominated thus; that is to say, of the twelve landgraves the Lords Proprietors shall each of them separately for himself nominate and chuse one; and the remaining four landgraves



of the first twelve, shall be nominated and chosen by the Palatine's court. In like manner of the twenty-four first cassiques, each proprietor for himself shall nominate and chuse two, and the remaining eight shall be nominated and chosen by the Palatine's court ; and when the twelve first counties shall be planted, the Lords Proprietors shall again in the same manner nominate and chuse twelve more landgraves, and twenty-four cassiques, for the twelve next counties to be planted ; that is to say, two thirds of each number by the single nomination of each proprietor for himself, and the remaining one third by the joint election of the Palatine's court, and so proceed in the same manner till the whole province of *Carolina* be set out and planted, according to the proportions in these *Fundamental Constitutions*.

XI. Any landgrave or cassique at any time before the year one thousand seven hundred and one, shall have power to alienate, sell, or make over, to any other person, his dignity, with the baronies thereunto belonging, all entirely together. But, after the year one thousand seven hundred, no landgrave or cassique shall have power to alienate, sell, or make over, or let, the hereditary baronies of his dignity, or any part thereof, otherwise than as in § xviii ; but they shall all entirely, with the dignity thereunto belonging, descend unto his heirs male : and, for want of heirs male, all entirely and undivided, to the next heir general ; and, for want of such heirs, shall devolve into the hands of the Lords Proprietors.

XII. That the due number of landgraves and cassiques may be always kept up ; if, upon the devolution of any landgraveship or cassiqueship, the Palatine's court shall not settle the devolved dignity, with the baronies thereunto annexed, before the second biennial parliament after



such devolution ; the next biennial parliament but one after such devolution shall have power to make any one landgrave or cassique in the room of him, who, dying without heirs, his dignity and baronies devolved.

XIII. No one person shall have more than one dignity, with the signiories or baronies thereunto belonging. But whensoever it shall happen that any one, who is already proprietor, landgrave, or cassique, shall have any of these dignities descend to him by inheritance ; it shall be at his choice to keep which of the dignities, with the land annexed, he shall like best ; but shall leave the other, with the lands annexed, to be enjoyed by him, who, not being his heir apparent and certain successor to his present dignity, is next of blood.

XIV. Whosoever, by the right of inheritance, shall come to be landgrave or cassique, shall take the name and arms of his predecessor in that dignity, to be from thenceforth the name and arms of his family and their posterity.

XV. Since the dignity of proprietor, landgrave, or cassique, cannot be divided, and the signiories or baronies thereunto annexed must for ever all entirely descend with, and accompany that dignity ; whensoever, for want of heirs male, it shall descend on the issue female, the eldest daughter and her heirs shall be preferred, and in the inheritance of those dignities, and the signiories or baronies annexed, there shall be no co-heirs.

XVI. In every signiory, barony and manor, the respective lord shall have power, in his own name, to hold court-leet there, for trying of all causes both civil and criminal ; but where it shall concern any person being no inhabitant, vassal, or leet-man of the said signiory, barony, or manor, he, upon paying down of forty shil-

lings to the Lords Proprietor's use, shall have an appeal from the signiory or barony-court to the county-court, and from the manor-court to the precinct-court.

XVII. Every manor shall consist of not less than three thousand acres, and not above twelve thousand acres, in one entire piece and colony; but any three thousand acres or more, in one piece, and the possession of one man, shall not be a manor, unless it be constituted a manor by the grant of the Palatine's court.

XVIII. The lords of signiories and baronies shall have power only of granting estates not exceeding three lives, or thirty-one years, in two thirds of the said signiories, or baronies, and the remaining third shall be always demesne.

XIX. Any lord of a manor may alienate, sell, or dispose, to any other person and his heirs forever, his manor, all entirely together, with all the privileges and leetmen thereunto belonging, so far forth as any colony lands; but no grant of any part thereof, either in fee, or for any longer term than three lives, or one and twenty years, shall be good against the next heir.

XX. No manor, for want of issue male, shall be divided amongst co-heirs; but the manor, if there be but one, shall all entirely descend to the eldest daughter and her heirs. If there be more manors than one, the eldest daughter first shall have her choice, the second next, and so on, beginning again at the eldest, till all the manors be taken up; that so the privileges which belong to manors being indivisible, the lands of the manors, to which they are annexed, may be kept entire, and the manor not lose those privileges, which, upon parcelling out to several owners, must necessarily cease.

XXI. Every lord of a manor, within his manor, shall

have all the powers, jurisdictions, and privileges, which a landgrave or cassique hath in his baronies.

XXII. In every signiory, barony, and manor, all the leet-men shall be under the jurisdiction of the respective lords of the said signiory, barony, or manor, without appeal from him. Nor shall any leet-man, or leet-woman, have liberty to go off from the land of their particular lord, and live any where else, without licence obtained from their said lord, under hand and seal.

XXIII. All the children of leet-men shall be leet-men, and so to all generations.

XXIV. No man shall be capable of having a court-leet, or leet-men, but a proprietor, landgrave, cassique, or lord of a manor.

XXV. Whoever shall voluntarily enter himself a leet-man, in the registry of the county court, shall be a leet-man.

XXVI. Whoever is lord of leet-men, shall, upon the marriage of a leet-man or leet-woman of his, give them ten acres of land for their lives; they paying to him therefor not more than one eighth part of all the yearly produce and growth of the said ten acres.

XXVII. No landgrave or cassique shall be tried for any criminal cause, in any but the chief justice's court, and that by a jury of his peers.

XXVIII. There shall be eight supreme courts. The first called the Palatine's court, consisting of the palatine and the other seven proprietors. The other seven courts of the other seven great officers, shall consist each of them of a proprietor, and six counsellors added to him. Under each of these latter seven courts, shall be a college of twelve assistants. The twelve assistants of the several colleges shall be chosen, two out of the land-graves, cassiques, or eldest sons of proprietors, by the



Palatine's court; two out of the landgraves, by the landgraves chamber; two out of the cassiques, by the cassiques chamber; four more of the twelve shall be chosen by the common chamber, out of such as have been, or are, members of parliament, sheriffs, or justices of the county court, or the younger sons of proprietors, or eldest sons of landgraves or cassiques; the two other shall be chosen by the palatine's court, out of the same sort of persons, out of which the commons chamber is to chuse.

XXIX. Out of these colleges shall be chosen at first, by the Palatine's court, six counsellors, to be joined with each proprietor in his court; of which six, one shall be of those who were chosen in any of the colleges by the Palatine's court, out of the landgraves, cassiques, or eldest sons of proprietors; one out of those who were chosen by the landgraves chamber; and one out of those who were chosen by the cassiques chamber; two out those who were chosen by the commons chamber; and one out of those who were chosen by the Palatine's court, out of the proprietors younger sons, or eldest sons of landgraves, cassiques, or commons, qualified as aforesaid.

XXX. When it shall happen that any counsellor dies, and thereby there is a vacancy, the grand council shall have power to remove any counsellor that is willing to be removed out of any of the proprietors courts to fill up the vacancy; provided they take a man of the same degree and choice the other was of, whose vacant place is to be filled up. But if no counsellor consent to be removed, or upon such remove; the last remaining vacant place, in any of the proprietor's courts, shall be filled up by the choice of the grand council, who shall have power to remove out of any of the colleges, any assist-

ant, who is of the same degree and choice that counsellor was of, into whose vacant place he is to succeed. The grand council also shall have power to remove any assistant, that is willing, out of one college into another, provided he be of the same degree and choice. But the last remaining vacant place in any college, shall be filled up by the same choice, and out of the same degree of persons the assistant was of, who is dead or removed. No place shall be vacant in any proprietor's court above six months. No place shall be vacant in any college longer than the next session of parliament.

XXXI. No man, being a member of the grand council, or of any of the seven colleges, shall be turned out but for misdemeanour, of which the grand council shall be judge; and the vacancy of the person so put out shall be filled, not by the election of the grand council, but by those who first chose him, and out of the same degree he was of who is expelled. But it is not hereby to be understood, that the grand council hath any power to turn out any one of the Lords Proprietors or their deputies, the Lords Proprietors having in themselves an inherent original right.

XXXII. All elections in the parliament, in the several chambers of the parliament, and in the grand council, shall be passed by balloting.

XXXIII. The Palatine's court shall consist of the Palatine and seven proprietors, wherein nothing shall be acted without the presence and consent of the Palatine or his deputy, and three others of the proprietors or their deputies. This court shall have power to call parliaments, to pardon all offences, to make elections of all officers in the proprietor's dispose, and to nominate and appoint Port Towns; and also shall have power by



their order to the treasurer to dispose of all public treasure, excepting money granted by the parliament, and by them directed to some particular public use; and also shall have a negative upon all acts, orders, votes and judgments, of the grand council and the parliament, except only as in § vi. and xii; and shall have all the powers granted to the Lords Proprietors, by their patent from *Our Sovereign Lord the King*, except in such things as are limited by these *Fundamental Constitutions*.

XXXIV. The Palatine himself, when he in person shall be either in the army or in any of the proprietors courts, shall then have the power of general, or of that proprietor, in whose court the Palatine then presides, shall during his presence there be but as one of the council.

XXXV. The chancellor's court, consisting of one of the proprietors, and his six counsellors, who shall be called vice-chancellors, shall have the custody of the seal of the palatinate, under which all charters of lands, or otherwise, commissions and grants of the Palatine's court, shall pass. And it shall not be lawful to put the seal of the Palatinate to any writing, which is not signed by the Palatine or his deputy, and three other proprietors or their deputies. To this court also belong all state matters, dispatches, and treaties with the neighbour Indians. To this court also belong all invasions of the law, of liberty of conscience, and all disturbances of the public peace, upon pretence of religion, as also the licence of printing. The twelve assistants belonging to this court shall be called recorders.

XXXVI. Whatever passes under the seal of the palatinate, shall be registered in that proprietor's court, to which the matter therein contained belongs.

XXXVII. The chancellor or his deputy shall be al-



ways speaker in parliament, and president of the grand council, and, in his and his deputy's absence, one of his vice-chancellors.

XXXVIII. The chief justice's court, consisting of one of the proprietors and his six counsellors, who shall be called justices of the bench, shall judge all appeals in cases both civil and criminal, except all such cases as shall be under the jurisdiction and cognizance of any other of the proprietor's courts, which shall be tried in those courts respectively. The government and regulation of the registries of writings and contracts, shall belong to the jurisdiction of this court. The twelve assistants of this court shall be called masters.

XXXIX. The constable's court, consisting of one of the proprietors and his six counsellors, who shall be called marshals, shall order and determine of all military affairs by land, and all land-forces, arms, ammunition, artillery, garrisons, forts, &c. and whatever belongs unto war. His twelve assistants shall be called lieutenant-generals.

XL. In time of actual war, the constable, whilst he is in the army, shall be general of the army, and the six counsellors, or such of them as the Palatine's court shall for that time or service appoint shall be the immediate great officers under him, and the lieutenant-generals next to them.

XLI. The admiral's court consisting of one of the proprietors and his six counsellors, called consuls, shall have the care and inspection over all ports, moles, and navigable rivers, so far as the tide flows, and also all the public shipping of *Carolina*, and stores thereunto belonging, and all maritime affairs. This court also shall have the power of the court of Admiralty; and shall have power to constitute judges in port-towns, to

try cases belonging to law-merchant, as shall be most convenient for trade. The twelve assistants, belonging to this court, shall be called proconsuls.

XLII. In time of actual war, the admiral, whilst he is at sea, shall command in chief, and his six counsellors, or such of them as the Palatine's court shall for that time and service appoint, shall be the immediate great officers under him, and the proconsuls next to them.

XLIII. The treasurer's court, consisting of a proprietor and his six counsellors, called under-treasurers, shall take care of all matters that concern the public revenue and treasury. The twelve assistants shall be called auditors.

XLIV. The high-steward's court, consisting of a proprietor and his six counsellors, called comptrollers, shall have the care of all foreign and domestic trade, manufactures, public buildings, work-houses, high-ways, passages by water above the flood of the tide, drains, sewers, and banks against inundations, bridges, posts, carriers, fairs, markets, corruption or infection of the common air or water, and all things in order to the public commerce and health; also setting out and surveying of lands; and also setting out and appointing places for towns to be built on in the precincts, and the prescribing and determining the figure and bigness of the said towns, according to such models as the said court shall order; contrary or differing from which models it shall not be lawful for any one to build in any town. This court shall have power also to make any public building, or any new high-way, or enlarge any old high-way, upon any man's land whatsoever; as also make cuts, channels, banks, locks, and bridges, for making rivers



navigable, or for draining fens, or any other public use. The damage the owner of such lands (on or through which any such public things shall be made) shall receive thereby, shall be valued, and satisfaction made by such ways as the grand council shall appoint. The twelve assistants, belonging to this court, shall be called surveyors.

XLV. The chamberlain's court, consisting of a proprietor and his six counsellors, called vice-chamberlains, shall have the care of all ceremonies, precedency, heraldry, reception of public messengers, pedigrees, the registry of all births, burials, and marriages, legitimation and all cases concerning matrimony, or arising from it; and shall also have power to regulate all fashions, habits, badges, games and sports. To this court also it shall belong to convocate the grand council. The twelve assistants, belonging to this court, shall be called provosts.

XLVI. All causes belonging to, or under the jurisdiction of, any of the proprietors courts, shall in them respectively be tried, and ultimately determined, without any further appeal.

XLVII. The proprietors courts shall have a power to mitigate all fines, and suspend all executions in criminal causes, either before or after sentence, in any of the other inferior courts respectively.

XLVIII. In all debates, hearings, or trials, in any of the proprietor's courts, the twelve assistants belonging to the said courts respectively, shall have liberty to be present, but shall not interpose, unless their opinions be required, nor have any vote at all; but their business shall be, by the direction of the respective courts, to prepare such business as shall be committed to them;



as also to bear such offices, and dispatch such affairs, either where the court is kept or elsewhere, as the court shall think fit.

XLIX. In all the proprietors courts, the proprietor, and any three of his counsellors, shall make a quorum; provided always, that, for the better dispatch of business, it shall be in the power of the Palatine's court to direct what sort of causes shall be heard and determined by a quorum of any three.

L. The grand council shall consist of the Palatine and seven proprietors, and the forty-two counsellors of the several proprietors courts, who shall have power to determine any controversies that may arise between any of the proprietors courts, about their respective jurisdictions, or between the members of the same court, about their manner and methods of proceeding; to make peace and war, leagues, treaties, &c. with any of the neighbour Indians; to issue out their general orders to the constable's and admiral's courts, for the raising, disposing, or disbanding the forces, by land or by sea.

LI. The grand council shall prepare all matters to be proposed in parliament. Nor shall any matter whatsoever be proposed in parliament, but what hath first passed the grand council; which, after having been read three several days in the parliament, shall by majority of votes be passed or rejected.

LII. The grand council shall always be judges of all causes and appeals that concern the Palatine, or any of the Lords Proprietors, or any counsellor of any proprietor's court, in any cause, which otherwise should have been tried in the court in which the said counsellor is judge himself.

LIII. The grand council, by their warrants to the

the parliament, and by them directed to any particular public use.

LV. The quorum of the grand council shall be thirteen, whereof a proprietor or his deputy shall be always treasurer's court, shall dispose of all the money given by one.

LV. The grand council shall meet the first Tuesday in every month, and as much oftener as either they shall think fit, or they shall be convoked by the chamberlain's court.

LVI. The Palatine, or any of the Lords Proprietors, shall have power, under hand and seal, to be register'd in the grand council, to make a deputy, who shall have the same power to all intents and purposes as he who deposes him; except in confirming acts of parliament, as in § lxxvi, and except also in nominating and chusing landgraves and cassiques, as in § x. All such deputations shall cease and determine at the end of four years, and at any time shall be revocable at the pleasure of the deputator.

LVII. No deputy of any proprietor shall have any power whilst the deputator is in any part of *Carolina*, except the proprietor, whose deputy he is, be a minor.

LVIII. During the minority of any proprietor, his guardian shall have power to constitute and appoint his deputy.

LIX. The eldest of the Lords Proprietors, who shall be personally in *Carolina*, shall of course be the Palatine's deputy, and if no proprietor be in *Carolina*, he shall chuse his deputy out of the heirs apparent of any of the proprietors, if any such be there; and if there be no heir apparent of any of the Lords Proprietors above one and twenty years old in *Carolina*, then he shall chuse



for deputy any one of the landgraves of the grand council; and till he have by deputation under hand and seal chosen any one of the forementioned heirs apparent or landgraves to be his deputy, the eldest man of the landgraves, and, for want of a landgrave, the eldest man of the cassiques, who shall be personally in *Carolina*, shall of course be his deputy.

LX. Each proprietor's deputy shall be always one of his own six counsellors respectively; and in case any of the proprietors hath not, in his absence out of *Carolina*, a deputy, commissioned under his hand and seal, the eldest nobleman of his court shall of course be his deputy.

LXI. In every county there shall be a court, consisting of a sheriff, and four justices of the county, for every precinct one. The sheriff shall be an inhabitant of the county, and have at least five hundred acres of freehold within the said county; and the justices shall be inhabitants, and have each of them five hundred acres a-piece freehold within the precinct for which they serve respectively. These five shall be chosen and commissioned from time to time by the Palatine's court.

LXII. For any personal causes exceeding the value of two hundred pounds sterling, or in title of land, or in any criminal cause; either party, upon paying twenty pounds sterling to the Lords Proprietors use, shall have liberty of appeal from the county-court unto the respective proprietor's court.

LXIII. In every precinct there shall be a court consisting of a steward and four justices of the precinct, being inhabitants, and having three hundred acres of freehold within the said precinct, who shall judge all criminal causes; except for treason, murder, and any other offences punishable with death, and except all criminal causes of the nobility; and shall judge also all civil



causes whatsoever ; and in all personal actions not exceeding fifty pounds sterling, without appeal ; but where the cause shall exceed that value, or concern a title of land, and in all criminal causes ; there either party, upon paying five pounds sterling to the Lords Proprietor's use, shall have liberty of appeal to the county court.

LXIV. No cause shall be twice tried in any one court, upon any reason or pretence whatsoever.

LXV. For treason, murder, and all other offences punishable with death, there shall be a commission, twice a year at least, granted unto one or more members of the grand council or colleges, who shall come as itinerant judges to the several counties, and with the sheriff and four justices shall hold assizes to judge all such causes : but, upon paying of fifty pounds sterling to the Lords Proprietors use, there shall be liberty of appeal to the respective proprietor's court.

LXVI. The grand jury at the several assizes, shall, upon their oaths, and under their hands and seals, deliver in to the itinerant judges a presentment of such grievances, misdemeanors, exigencies, or defects, which they think necessary for the public good of the county ; which presentments shall, by the itinerant judges, at the end of their circuit, be delivered in to the grand council at their next sitting. And whatsoever therein concerns the execution of laws already made ; the several proprietors courts, in the matters belonging to each of them respectively, shall take cognizance of it, and give such order about it, as shall be effectual for the due execution of the laws. But whatever concerns the making of any new law, shall be referred to the several respective courts to which that matter belongs, and be by them prepared and brought to the grand council.

LXVII. For terms, there shall be quarterly such a

certain number of days, not exceeding one and twenty at one time, as the several respective courts shall appoint. The time for the beginning of the term, in the precinct court, shall be the first Monday in January, April, July, and October; in the county court, the first Monday in February, May, August, and November; and in the proprietors courts, the first Monday in March, June, September, and December.

LXVIII. In the precinct-court no man shall be a jury-man under fifty acres of freehold. In the county-court, or at the assizes, no man shall be a grand jury-man under three hundred acres of freehold: and no man shall be a petty jury-man under two hundred acres of freehold. In the proprietors courts no man shall be a jury-man under five hundred acres of freehold.

LXIX. Every jury shall consist of twelve men; and it shall not be necessary they should all agree, but the verdict shall be according to the consent of the majority.

LXX. It shall be a base and vile thing to plead for money or reward; nor shall any one (except he be a near kinsman, not farther off than a cousin-german to the party concerned) be permitted to plead another man's cause, till, before the judge in open court, he hath taken an oath, that he doth not plead for money or reward, nor hath nor will receive, nor directly nor indirectly bargained with the party, whose cause he is going to plead, for money or any other reward for pleading his cause.

LXXI. There shall be a parliament, consisting of the proprietors or their deputies, the landgraves, cassiques, and one freeholder out of every precinct, to be chosen by the freeholders of the said precinct respectively.



They shall sit all together in one room, and have every member one vote.

LXXII. No man shall be chosen a member of parliament, who hath less than five hundred acres of freehold within the precinct for which he is chosen; nor shall any have a vote in chusing the said member that hath less than fifty acres of freehold within the said precinct.

LXXIII. A new parliament shall be assembled the first Monday of the month of November every second year, and shall meet and sit in the town they last sat in, without any summons, unless by the Palatine's court they be summoned to meet at any other place. And if there shall be any occasion of a parliament in these intervals, it shall be in the power of the Palatine's court to assemble them in forty days notice, and at such time as the said court shall think fit; and the Palatine's court shall have power to dissolve the said parliament when they shall think fit.

LXXIV. At the opening of every parliament, the first thing that shall be done, shall be the reading of these *Fundamental Constitutions*, which the Palatine and proprietors, and the rest of the members then present, shall subscribe. Nor shall any person whatsoever sit or vote in the parliament, till he hath that session subscribed these *Fundamental Constitutions*, in a book kept for that purpose by the clerk of the parliament.

LXXV. In order to the due election of members for the biennial parliament, it shall be lawful for the freeholders of the respective precincts to meet the first Tuesday in September every two years, in the same town or place that they last met in, to chuse parliament-men: and there chuse those members that are to sit the



next November following, unless the steward of the precinct shall, by sufficient notice thirty days before, appoint some other place for their meeting, in order to the election.

LXXVI. No act or order of parliament shall be of any force, unless it be ratified in open parliament during the same session, by the Palatine or his deputy, and three more of the Lords Proprietors or their deputies; and then not to continue longer in force but until the next biennial parliament, unless in the mean time it be ratified under the hands and seals of the Palatine himself, and three more of the Lords Proprietors themselves, and by their order published at the next biennial parliament.

LXXVII. Any proprietor or his deputy may enter his protestation against any act of the parliament, before the Palatine, or his deputy's consent be given as aforesaid; if he shall conceive the said act to be contrary to this establishment, or any of these *Fundamental Constitutions* of the government. And in such case, after full and free debate, the several estates shall retire into four several chambers; the Palatine and proprietors into one; the landgraves into another; and those chosen by the precincts into a fourth: and if the major part of any of the four estates shall vote that the law is not agreeable to this establishment, and these *Fundamental Constitutions* of the government, then it shall pass no farther, but be as if it had never been proposed.

LXXVIII. The quorum of the parliament shall be one half of those who are members, and capable of sitting in the house that present session of parliament. The quorum of each of the chambers of parliament shall be one half of the members of that chamber.

LXXIX. To avoid multiplicity of laws, which by degrees always change the right foundations of the original government, all acts of parliament whatsoever, in whatsoever form passed or enacted, shall, at the end of an hundred years after their enacting, respectively cease and determine of themselves, and without any repeal become null and void, as if no such acts or laws had ever been made.

LXXX. Since multiplicity of comments, as well as of laws, have great inconveniences, and serve only to obscure and perplex; all manner of comments and expositions on any part of these *Fundamental Constitutions*, or any part of the common or statute law of *Carolina*, are absolutely prohibited.

LXXXI. There shall be a registry in every precinct, wherein shall be enrolled all deeds, leases, judgments, mortgages, and other conveyances, which may concern any of the land within the said precinct; and all such conveyances not so entered or registered shall not be of force against any person nor party to the said contract or conveyance.

LXXXII. No man shall be register of any precinct, who hath not at least three hundred acres of freehold within the said precinct.

LXXXIII. The freeholders of every precinct shall nominate three men: out of which three the chief justice's court shall chuse and commission one to be register of the said precinct, whilst he shall well behave himself.

LXXXIV. There shall be a registry in every signiory, barony, and colony, wherein shall be recorded all the births, marriages and deaths, that shall happen within the respective signiories, baronies, and colonies.



*LXXXV.* No man shall be register of a colony, that hath not above fifty acres of freehold within the said colony.

*LXXXVI.* The time of every one's age, that is born in *Carolina*, shall be reckoned from the day that his birth is entered in the registry and not before.

*LXXXII.* No marriage shall be lawful, whatever contract and ceremony they have used till both the parties mutually own it before the register of the place where they were married, and he register it, with the name of the father and mother of each party.

*LXXXVIII.* No man shall administer to the goods, or have right to them, or enter upon the estate of any person deceased, till his death be registered in the respective registry.

*LXXXIX.* He that doth not enter in the respective registry, the birth or death of any person that is born or dies in his house or ground, shall pay to the said register one shiling per week for each such neglect, reckoning from the time of each birth or death respectively, to the time of registering it.

*XC.* In like manner the births, marriages, and deaths of the Lords Proprietors, Landgraves, and Cassiques, shall be registered in the chamberlain's court.

*XCI.* There shall be in every colony one constable, to be chosen annually by the freeholders of the colony; his estate shall be above a hundred acres of freehold within the said colony, and such subordinate officers appointed for his as the county-court shall find requisite, and shall be established by the said county-court. The election of the subordinate annual officers shall be also in the freeholders of the colony.



*XCII.* All towns incorporate shall be governed by a mayor, twelve aldermen, and twenty-four of the common council. The said common-council shall be chosen by present householders of the said town: the aldermen shall be chosen out of the common-council; and the mayor out of the aldermen by the Palatine's court.

*XCIII.* It being of great consequence to the plantation, that Port-Towns should be built and preserved; therefore, whosoever shall lade or unlade any commodity at any other place but a Port-Town, shall forfeit to the Lords Proprietors for each tun so laden or unladen, the sum of ten pounds sterling; except only such goods as the Palatine's court shall license to be laden or unladen elsewhere.

*XCIV.* The first port-town upon every river shall be in a colony, and be a port-town for ever.

*XCV.* No man shall be permitted to be a freeman of *Carolina*, or to have any estate or habitation within it, that doth not acknowledge a GOD; and that God is publicly and solemnly to be worshipped.

*XCVI.* [As the country comes to be sufficiently planted and distributed into fit divisions, it shall belong to the parliament to take care for the building of churches, and the public maintenance of divines, to be employed in the exercise of religion, according to the church of England; which being the only true and orthodox, and the national religion of all the king's dominions, is so also of *Carolina*; and therefore it alone shall be allowed to receive a public maintenance, by grant of parliament.\*]

\* This article was not drawn up by Mr. Locke, but inserted by some of the chief of the proprietors, against his judgment; as Mr. Locke himself informed one of his friends, to whom he presented a copy of these Constitutions.

XCVII. But since the natives of that place who will be concerned in our plantation, are utterly strangers to Christianity, whose idolatry, ignorance, or mistake, gives us no right to expel, or use them ill ; and those who remove from other parts to plant there, will unavoidably be of different opinions concerning matters of religion, the liberty whereof they will expect to have allowed them, and it will not be reasonable for us on this account to keep them out; that civil peace may be maintained amidst the diversity of opinions, and our agreement and compact with all men may be duly and faithfully observed; the violation whereof, upon what pretence soever, cannot be without great offence to almighty God, and great scandal to the true religion, which we profess ; and also that Jews, Heathens, and other dissenters from the purity of Christian religion, may not be feared and kept at a distance from it, but, by having an opportunity of acquainting themselves with the truth and reasonableness of its doctrines, and the peaceableness and inoffensiveness of its professors, may by good usage and persuasion, and all those convincing methods of gentleness and meekness suitable to the rules and design of the gospel, be won over to embrace and unfeignedly receive the truth ; therefore, any seven or more persons agreeing in any religion, shall constitute a church or profession, to which they shall give some name, to distinguish it from others.

XCVIII. The terms of admittance and communion with any church or profession, shall be written in a book, and therein be subscribed by all the members of the said church or profession ; which book shall be kept by the public register of the precinct where they reside.

XCIV. The time of every one's subscription and ad-



mittance shall be dated in the said book of religious record.

C. In the terms of communion of every church or profession, these following shall be three; without which no agreement or assembly of men, under pretence of religion, shall be accounted a church or profession within these rules:

1. "That there is a GOD.
2. "That GOD is publicly to be worshipped.
3. "That it is lawful and the duty of every man, being thereunto called by those that govern, to bear witness to truth; and that every church or profession shall, in their terms of communion, set down the external way whereby they witness a truth as in the presence of GOD, whether it be by laying hands on, or kissing the Bible, as in the church of England, or by holding up the hand, or any other sensible way."

CI. No person above seventeen years of age shall have any benefit or protection of the law, or be capable of any place of profit or honour, who is not a member of some church or profession, having his name recorded in some one, and but one religious record at once.

CII. No person of any other church or profession shall disturb or molest any religious assembly.

CIII. No person whatsoever shall speak any thing in their religious assembly irreverently or seditiously of the government, or governors, or state matters.

CIV. Any person subscribing the terms of communion in the record of the said church or profession, before the precinct register, and any five members of the said church or profession, shall be thereby made a member of the said church or profession.

CV. Any person striking out his own name out of any religious record, or his name being struck out by



any officer thereunto authorised by each church or profession respectively, shall cease to be a member of that church or profession.

CVI. No man shall use any reproachful, reviling, or abusive language, against the religion of any church or profession : that being the certain way of disturbing the peace, and of hindering the conversion of any to the truth, by engaging them in quarrels and animosities, to the hatred of the professors and that profession, which otherwise they might be brought to assent to.

CVII. Since charity obliges us to wish well to the souls of all men, and religion ought to alter nothing in any man's civil estate or right, it shall be lawful for slaves, as well as others, to enter themselves and be of what church or profession any of them shall think best, and therefore be as fully members as any freeman. But yet no slave shall hereby be exempted from that civil dominion his master hath over him, but be in all other things in the same state and condition he was in before.

CVIII. Assemblies, upon what pretence soever of religion, not observing and performing the abovesaid rules, shall not be esteemed churches, but unlawful meetings, and be punished as other riots.

CIX. No person whatsoever shall disturb, molest, or persecute another for his speculative opinions in religion, or his way of worship.

CX. Every freeman of *Carolina* shall have absolute power and authority over his negro slaves, of what opinion or religion soever.

CXI. No cause, whether civil or criminal, of any freeman, shall be tried in any court of judicature, without a jury of his peers.

CXII. No person whatsoever shall hold or claim any land in *Carolina* by purchase or gift, or otherwise, from the natives, or any other whatsoever; but merely from and under the Lords Proprietors; upon pain of forfeiture of all his estate, moveable or immoveable, and perpetual banishment.

CXIII. Whosoever shall possess any freehold in *Carolina*, upon what grant or title soever, shall, at the farthest, from and after the year one thousand six hundred and eighty-nine, pay yearly unto the Lords Proprietors for each acre of land, English measure, as much fine silver as is at this present in one English penny, or the value thereof, to be as a chief rent and acknowledgment to the Lords Proprietors, their heirs and successors for ever. And it shall be lawful for the Palatine's court, by their officers at any time, to take a new survey of any man's land, not to out him of any part of his possession, but that by such a survey the just number of acres he possesseth may be known, and the rent thereupon due may be paid by him.

CXIV. All wrecks, mines, minerals, quarries of gems, and precious stones, with pearl-fishing, whale-fishing, and one half of all ambergrease, by whomsoever found, shall wholly belong to the Lords Proprietors.

CXV. All revenues and profits belonging to the Lords Proprietors in common shall be divided into ten parts, whereof the Palatine shall have three, and each proprietor one; but if the Palatine shall govern by a deputy, his deputy shall have one of those three tenths, and the Palatine the other two tenths.

CXVI. All inhabitants and freemen of *Carolina* above seventeen years of age, and under sixty, shall be bound

to bear arms, and serve as soldiers whenever the grand council shall find it necessary.

CXVII. A true copy of these *Fundamental Constitutions* shall be kept in a great book by the register of every precinct, to be subscribed before the said register. Nor shall any person, of what condition or degree soever, above seventeen years old, have any estate or possession in *Carolina*, or protection or benefit of the law there, who hath not before a precinct register subscribed these *Fundamental Constitutions* in this form :

“I A. B. do promise to bear faith and true allegiance to our sovereign lord king *Charles* the Second, his heirs and successors ; and will be true and faithful to the Palatine and Lords Proprietors of *Carolina*, their heirs and successors ; and with my utmost power will defend them and maintain the government according to this establishment in these *Fundamental Constitutions*.”

CXVIII. Whatsoever alien shall, in this form, before any precinct register, subscribe these *Fundamental Constitutions*, shall be thereby naturalized.

CXIX. In the same manner shall every person, at his admittance into any office, subscribe these *Fundamental Constitutions*.

CXX. These *Fundamental Constitutions*, in number a hundred and twenty, and every part thereof, shall be and remain the sacred and unalterable form and rule of government of *Carolina* for ever. Witness our hands and seals, the first day of March, 1669.



## RULES OF PRECEDENCY.

I. THE Lords Proprietors ; the eldest in age first, and so in order.

II. The eldest sons of the Lords Proprietors ; the eldest in age first, and so in order.

III. The landgraves of the grand council ; he that hath been longest of the grand council first, and so in order.

IV. The cassiques of the grand council ; he that hath been longest of the grand council first, and so in order.

V. The seven commoners of the grand council that have been longest of the grand council ; he that hath been longest of the grand council first, and so in order.

VI. The younger sons of proprietors ; the eldest first, and so in order.

VII. The landgraves ; the eldest in age first, and so in order.

VIII. The seven commoners, who next to those before-mentioned, have been longest of the grand council ; he that hath been longest of the grand council first, and so in order.

IX. The cassiques ; the eldest in age first, and so in order.

X. The seven remaining commoners of the grand council ; he that hath been longest of the grand council first, and so in order.

XI. The male line of the proprietors.

The rest shall be determined by the chamberlain's court.

THE  
HISTORY OF CAROLINA:

BEING

AN ACCOUNT OF THAT COLONY,

ORIGINALLY PUBLISHED

IN THE

HISTORY OF THE BRITISH EMPIRE IN AMERICA.

BY J. OLDMIXON.

---

LONDON, 1708.

THE  
HISTORY OF CAROLINA.

CHAPTER I.

*Containing an Account of the Discovery and Settlement of this Province, and of all the Wars, Factions, Disturbances, and other Events there, from that time to the present.*

WE are not ignorant of the pretences of the concern'd in this Province, who affirm, 'twas discover'd by *Sebastian Cabot*. Mr. *Archdale*, one of the Proprietors, in his printed Description of *Carolina*, says, *Henry* the VIIIth about the year 1500. furnished Sir *Sebastian Cabot* with shipping, (he was born at *Bristol*, though his father was a *Venetian*,) to make a discovery; and he fell upon the coast of *Florida*, and having sail'd along the continent a considerable way North-East, return'd. But this does not appear in any authentick historian; nor that Sir *Sebastian Cabot* ever got so far to the South.

*Carolina* is the Northern part of the vast region of *America*, which was discovered by *John Ponce de Leon*, in the year 1512. He made land about 30 degrees from the *Æquator*, near the river of *San Mattæo*, the most Southerly part of this province. He sail'd thither from the Island of *Porto Rico*, and gave the country the name of *Florida*, for that the face of it has the resemblance to a continual spring.\*

\* Castell. of America.



The Spaniards, who passionately desir'd to secure it to themselves, eight years afterwards sent *Vasquez de Ayllon* to make a further discovery of it, as belonging to *Charles V.* in whose name *de Leon* had taken possession of it. He came upon the North Coast, and call'd the North North-West River by the name of *Jordan*. He did nothing memorable, except this infamous action, of inviting many of the natives aboard his ships, where when he had got them, he hoisted sail, and carry'd them into miserable bondage.

In the year 1526. *Charles V.* Emperor of *Germany* and King of *Spain*, sent *Pamphilio Narvesi* to *Florida*, who stay'd so long in the South-West part of this country, which is the most barren, that, says my author, *they were fain to eat one another*, his crew having spent their provisions.

Ten years afterwards *Ferdinando de Soto* came hither in search of gold and silver mines, having a large army of 900 foot, and 500 horse. Himself, and three parts of his soldiers, dy'd, either thro' want, or by sickness, or the Indians; and the rest were led back by *Lewis Moscos* to *New Spain*, tho' not without great difficulty, for the natives setting upon them several times in their march, kill'd all that fell into their hands.

This unfortunate and expensive expedition so discourag'd the Spaniards, that for several years they made no more attempts in these parts, and indeed they search'd no further than that part of the Continent which lies opposite to the Gulph of *New Spain*, and not within and beyond the Streights of *Bahama*, which includes that part of the country we are now treating of, and which is the most fertile and rich, abounding in several merchantable commodities.

The French perceiving the *Spaniards* neglected this

long tract of land, Admiral *Coligny*, in the reign of *Charles IX.* procur'd two of the king's ships to be sent thither, the command of which he gave to *Jean Ribaut*, who after a voyage of two months, arriv'd at the river of *Dolphins*, between that of *San Mattæo*, and that of *May*, lying about the 30th degree.

The next river to that of *May*, he call'd the *Seine*. The next to that, the *Somme*; then the *Loire*; then the *Charente*, and the *Garonne*. At the mouth of *Albemarle* River, then call'd the *Great River*; the port being safe and commodious, he built a fort, which he called *Charles Fort*, and gave it the name of *Port Royal*, in 32 degrees of Latitude, bordering on *Virginia*, now *North Carolina*, where the first settlement was made by any European nation.

The civil wars raging in *France*, *Ribaut's* soldiers mutiny'd for want of supplies. The natives, 't is true, were very kind to them, out of hatred to the *Spaniards*; but they could not furnish them with many necessaries which they wanted; and the Admiral was so engag'd in politicks at home, that he had not leisure to provide for the wants of his colony. So *Ribaut* having made some discoveries in the North-East part of *Florida*, return'd to *France*, and in his return, if credit may be given to an old author,\* his company were reduc'd to such extremity, that they kill'd and eat one of their own men; and probably would have done so by others, had they not accidentally met with an *English* ship, the master of which furnish'd them with some provisions. A peace being concluded 2 years after in *France*, between the Papists and the Protestants, *Coligny*, who was then in favour at court, procur'd other ships to be sent to this country, which was now call'd *Carolina*, from Fort

\* Castell. of America.



*Charles*, as that was from the French King. The command of those ships, and the men aboard, was given to *Lewis Laudoner*, who was ordered to carry on the settlement. He arriv'd here the 20th of *June*, 1564. with 3 ships, and was kindly receiv'd by the *Indians*, but could find no gold and silver mines, tho' he spent much labour and time in search after them. His provisions being almost all gone, and the natives either unable, or unwilling to furnish him with more, *Laudoner* resolv'd to return also to *France*; and as he was preparing to depart, *Jean Ribaut* arriv'd with 3 ships, which had so good an effect on the *Indians*, that they seem'd to be as welcome to them as to the *French*. The Kings of *Homoloo*, *Seravatri*, *Almacam*, *Malica*, and *Castri*, waited upon *Ribaut*, to congratulate his arrival, and promis'd to conduct him to the *Apalataean* Mountains, which part *Carolina* from *Virginia*.

The *French* conceiv'd great hopes of this settlement, but all vanish'd on the arrival of the *Spaniards*, who with a squadron of ships and land forces, drove the *French* out of their forts, kill'd *Ribaut*, and 600 men, after having given them conditions of life, and oblig'd *Laudoner*, with a few of his countrymen who remain'd alive, to return to *France*.

The French King took no notice of this act of violence committed on his subjects, because they were Protestants; and indeed 't is thought *Coligny* intended by this settlement, to secure a retreat for himself, and his brethren of the reform'd religion, in case they were conquer'd in *France*. *Peter Melanda* commanded the *Spaniards*, who dislodg'd the *French*, and so provok'd the *Indians* by his cruelty and injustice, that they were very ready to revenge themselves when opportunity offer'd, as it did not long after; for *Capt. De Gorgues*, a French



gentleman, at his own cost, fitted out three stout ships, and with 280 men sail'd to *Carolina*, where he took the fort, and put all the Spaniards within it to the sword. They had built two other forts, which he easily reduc'd, and serv'd the garrisons as he did that of Fort *Charles*. He demolish'd them, and was assisted by the Kings of *Homoloea* and *Seravatri*.

The French travelled into the dominions of the great King of *Apalacha*,\* near the mountains, where they converted many Indians to Christianity. These Indians were more civil than those to the Northward, their King's dominions larger, and their manners, in a great measure, resembled the *Mexicans*.

We do not find that Monsieur *de Gorgues* made any settlement here; or that the Spaniards attempted to recover the country; which from the year 1567, lay deserted by all European nations, till the reign of King *Charles II.* of *England*.† In the year 1622. several English families flying from the massacre of the Indians in *Virginia* and *New England*, were driven on these coasts, and settled in the province of *Mallica*, near the head of the river of *May*, where they acted the part of missionaries among the *Mallicans* and *Apalachites*. The King of the country is said to have been baptiz'd; and in the year 1653. Mr. *Brigstock*, an Englishman, went to *Apalacha*, where he was honourably entertain'd by his countrymen, who were there before him; and from his relation of the country ours is taken.

It will not be unacceptable to the curious, to see a description of *Carolina*, as it was before the English settled there, which we find very distinctly in a Discourse, printed A. D. 1644. The nearest River of any

\* *Dav. of Kid.* p. 247. † *Ibid.*

note, to *Virginia*, falling into the Sea, is the *Jordan*, which lies in 32 Degrees; from whence, about 20 Leagues downwards to the South, is the Promontory of *St. Helen* near *Port-Royal*, which the French chose for the best and surest place to begin their Plantations. \* Between the River *Jordan* and *St. Helens*, are *Oristanum*, *Ostanum*, and *Cayagna*; *Oristanum* lying 6 Leagues from *St. Helens*; *Ostanum* 4 Leagues from *Oristanum*; and *Cayagna* 8 Leagues from *Ostanum*. From *St. Helens* to *Dos Bazos* Haven is 5 Leagues. From thence to the Bay *de Asapo*, 3 Leagues; thence to *Cafanusium* 3, to *Capula* 5, to *Saron* 9, to *S. Alcany* 14, and to *S. Peter* 20 Leagues, lying in 31 Degrees of Latitude. The next place is *San Mattæo*, 4 Leagues from *St. Peter*.

'T will be difficult for an inhabitant of the present *Carolina*, to reconcile all these names to the modern, and the old description to the new; wherefore we shall not pretend to it, at least but occasionally, and where we can be almost sure that we are in the right.

This country having been abandoned by all European Nations, for near 100 years, it seemed reasonable then, that any one who would be at the expence of settling upon it, and cultivate it, should possess it; and the pretence of Sebastian Cabot's discovering it, gave the Crown of ENGLAND a title to it, which King CHARLES II. asserted: For some noblemen and gentlemen begging it of him, he made a grant of it, by a pattent, bearing date the 24th of March, 1663, to Edward Earl of Clarendon, then Lord High Chancellor of ENGLAND, George Duke of Albemarle, William Lord Craven, John

\* Castell. p. 33



Lord Berkley, Anthony Lord Ashley, Sir George Cartaret, Sir William Berkley, and Sir John Colliton: "Who," to use the words of the grand Charter, "being excited with a laudable and pious zeal, for the propagation of the gospel, begged a certain country in the parts of America not yet cultivated and planted, and only inhabited by some barbarous people, who had no knowledge of God, &c. wherefore the king granted them all that territory in his dominions in America, from the North end of the Island called Lucke-Island, which lies in the Southern Virginian Sea, and within 36 Degrees of N. Latitude; and to the West as far as the South Seas; and so Southerly, as far as the River San Mattæo, which borders on the coast of Florida, and is within 31 Degrees of North Latitude, and so West in a direct line, as far as the South Seas aforesaid:" With all Royal Fisheries, Mines, power of life and limb, and every thing necessary in an absolute propriety, paying a quit-rent of 20 Marks yearly.

We are not to enter into the merits of the cause, nor inquire by what right King CHARLES became possess'd of this province, and *Carolina* to be a part of *his Dominions* in America; 'tis enough for us, that he gave the Proprietaries such a Charter, and that they proceeded towards a Settlement by virtue of it; which was in a few years effected. Whatever has been said of the French and Spaniards, 't is but just, that if one Nation does not think a Country worth cultivating, and deserts it, another, who has a better opinion of it, may enter upon it, by the law of nature and reason.

The Proprietaries, after they had got their Charter, gave due encouragement for persons to settle in this Province, and there being express provision made in



it for a toleration, and indulgence to all Christians in the free exercise of their religion, great numbers of Protestants, dissenters from the Church of England, retired thither.

This toleration appears so firm by this Charter, that we wonder any Palatine could presume to break in upon it. The King granted the Proprietaries full and free license, liberty and authority, by such legal ways and means, as they shall think fit, to give unto such person and persons, inhabiting, and being within the said Province, or any part thereof, who really in their judgments, and for conscience sake, cannot, or shall not conform to the Liturgy, Form and Ceremonies of the Church of England, and take and subscribe the Oaths, and Articles, made and establish'd in that behalf, or any of them, such indulgences and dispensations in that behalf, for, and during such time and times, and with such limitations and restrictions, as they, &c. shall think fit.

Let us now see what the Proprietaries did, pursuant to the power the King had invested them with, to grant liberty of conscience. We cannot have a better authority than the *Case of the Dissenters in Carolina*, published lately by a gentleman of this Province.

“The first Proprietors were so sensible that nothing could people that Province, and enrich it, but an universal and absolute toleration, that they made the most express and ample provision for such a toleration that ever was made in any Constitution in the world, as may be seen in the 96, 101, 102, 106 Articles of the Fundamental Constitutions: Which provide, *as the Lords Proprietors word it in those Constitutions*, That ‘since the Natives of that place, who will be concern’d in our

Plantations, are utterly strangers to Christianity, whose idolatry, ignorance, or mistake give us no right to expel or use them ill, and that those who remove from other parts to plant there, will unavoidably be of different opinions concerning matters of religion, the liberty whereof they will expect to have allowed them; and that it will not be reasonable for us, on that account, to keep them out; therefore, that sure peace may be maintain'd, amidst the diversity of opinions, and our agreement and compact with all men may be duly and faithfully observ'd, the violation whereof, upon what pretence soever, cannot be without great offence to Almighty God, and great scandal to the true religion which we profess: And also that Jews, Heathens, and other Dissenters, from the purity of the Christian Religion, may not be scar'd, and kept at a distance from it, but by having an opportunity of acquainting themselves with the truth and reasonableness of its doctrines, and the peaceableness and inoffensiveness of its professors, may by good usage and perswasion, and all those convincing methods of gentleness and meekness, suitable to the rules and designs of the Gospel, be won over to embrace, and unfeignedly receive the Truth.' *Therefore the said Constitutions provided for their Liberty, but declar'd,* "That no person above seventeen years of age, shall have any benefit or protection of the law, which is not a member of some Church or Profession, having his name recorded in some one religious record.'"

Thus did these Lords Proprietors take care, that persons of all professions in religion should be protected and secur'd in the free exercise of them; and the reader thus prepossess'd with the laws of the country, on which the government of the colony is intirely founded, will be the better able to judge of the principles of those men,



who, in the sequel of this history, we shall find endeavouring to over-turn the most considerable articles of these Fundamentals; for great numbers of protestant dissenters from the Church of England, removing with their families to *Carolina*, when there were so many inhabitants, that a form of government was necessary, the proprietaries agreed on that abovemention'd, call'd, the the Fundamental Constitutions, consisting of 120 articles, sign'd by the Duke of *Albemarle*, then palatine of the province; the Lord *Craven*, the Lord *Ashley*, Sir *John Colleton*, the Lord *Cornbury*, the Lord *Berkeley*, Sir *George Cartaret*, the 1st March 1699. Which constitutions, as is expressed in the last article, *shall be and remain the sacred and unalterable form and rule of government in Carolina for ever.*

They were drawn up by that famous politician the Earl of *Shaftsbury*, one of the proprietors, and the only one that could be suspected of having the least inclination to favour the dissenters. The first article of these fundamentals, is, that a "Palatine shall be chosen out of one of the Proprietaries, who shall continue during life, and be succeeded by the eldest of the other proprietaries." The palatine has the executive power in most cases, and the rest of the proprietaries have their places and privileges. Mr. *Archdale*, in the beforementioned treatise says, "They center'd all their power in four of them, viz. in a palatine of their own choosing, and three more, who were authorised to execute the whole powers of the charter. This is call'd the palatine's court; and their deputies in *Carolina* execute it as they are directed by their principals."

By the fundamental constitutions, there are to be three hereditary noblemen in every county, one call'd a landgrave, and two call'd cassiques. The parliament



consists of the proprietors, or their deputies, the governour and commons; and by the fundamentals should have 25 landgraves, and 50 cassiques to make a nobility: But the number of landgraves and cassiques is very small, and they are not summon'd to make an upper-house, on that account; so the Governour and the Proprietors deputies arrogate that title. The commoners are chosen by the freeholders of every county, as the commons in *England*; and all were at first to sit in one house, and have equal votes. This Parliament should meet once in every two years, and oftener, if occasion require. The courts of justice are besides those of the Palatine's court, the Chief Justice's court, the High-Constable's court, the Chancellor's court, the Treasurer's court, the Chamberlain's court, the High-Steward's court: Besides which, there are the Great Council and the Hundred courts. Mr. *Archdale*, on this head, tells us, "The Charter generally, as in other charters, agrees on royal privileges and powers, but especially at that time it had an over-plus power to grant liberty of conscience, tho' at home was a hot persecuting time; as also a power to create a Nobility, yet not have the same titles as here in *England*: And therefore they are there by patent, under the Great-Seal of the province, call'd landgraves and cassiques, in lieu of earls and lords, and are by their titles to sit with the Lords Proprietors deputies, and together make the upper house, the lower house being elected by the people. These landgraves are to have four baronies annex'd to their dignities, of 6000 acres each barony; and the cassiques two baronies, of 3000 each, and not to be divided by sale of any part. Only they have power to let out a third part for three lives, to raise portions for younger children." Every county has a sheriff and four justices of the peace.

Every planter pays 1*d.* an acre quit-rent to the Proprietaries, unless he buys it off. All the inhabitants and free-men, from 16 to 60 years old, are bound to bear arms, when commanded by the *Great Council*.

The Proprietaries enter'd into a joint-stock, and fitted out ships on their own proper charges, to transport people and cattle thither, which expence amounted to 12000*l.* besides as much or more disburs'd by single Proprietors to advance the Colony; and all their rents and incomes have since the beginning been laid out in publick services.

Many Dissenters of good estates went over, and many other persons in hopes to mend their fortunes. And if they could tell how to improve the opportunities that were put into their hands there, they had seldom any reason to repent of going thither.

Tho' the difficulties and dangers they met with at first were a little discouraging, all free persons, who came over, were to have 50 acres of land for themselves, 50 more for each man-servant, and 50 more for each woman-servant marriageable; and not marriageable, 40 acres. Each servant out of his or her time was to have 50 acres, paying the quit-rent of 1*d.* an acre.

The proportion of land was much greater by the first instructions which the Proprietaries sent their Governours, but they afterwards thought fit to reduce it to the present allotment. Some gentlemen who did not care to be liable to the yearly quit-rent of 1*d.* an acre, bought their lands out-right.

The common rate of purchasing now, is 20*l.* for a 100 acres, and 10*s.* a year quit-rent. The Proprietors, in all their leases, never forget to except all mines, minerals, and *quarries of gemms* and precious stones.

Things being thus established, the Lords Proprietaries



appointed Col. *William Sayle*, to be Governour of their province, about the year 1670. The first plantations that came to any perfection, were about *Albemarle* and *Port-Royal* rivers. But *Ashley* and *Cooper* rivers drew people that way, for the convenience of pasture and tilage, for which reason that part of the country became most inhabited.

In 1671. the Proprietors sent Cap. *Halsted* with a supply of provisions and stores for the colony, and created *James Cartaret*, Sir *John Yeomans*, and *John Lock*, Esq; landgraves.

The constitutions having been found deficient in some cases, temporary laws were added, and the form of government settled thus.

A Governour named by the Palatine.

A Council } 7 Deputies of the Proprietors.  
consisting } 7 Gentlemen chosen by the Parliament.  
of } 7 of the eldest Landgraves and Cassiques.

An Admiral.

High-Steward.

A Chamberlain.

High-Constable.

Chancellor.

Register of births, burials,  
and marriages.

Chief-Justice.

Secretary.

Register of writings.

Surveyor.

Marshal of the Amiralty.

Treasurer.

All which were nominated by the Proprietors respectively. The *quorum* of the council were to be the Governour and 6 councillors, of whom 3 at least were to be Proprietors deputies; and because there were not inhabitants to make a Parliament, according to the *fundamental constitutions*, 't was order'd to consist of the governour, the deputies of Proprietors, and twenty members chosen by the freeholders; of whom ten were to be



elected by *Berkley's* county, and ten by *Colliton* county; which number was encreas'd, as more counties were laid out, and more people came to settle in the province.

The temporary laws were made in the year 1671. At which time *William*, Earl of *Craven*, was Palatine. On which office he enter'd after the death of the Duke of *Albemarle*; who, as has been said, was Palatine, when the *fundamental constitutions* were sign'd, but dy'd soon after. In the same year Cap. *Halsted* was order'd to make discoveries up *Ashley* river, and a model of a town was sent, which it will be well, if the people of *Carolina* are able to build 100 years hence; but the Proprietaries, as appears by their constitutions and instructions to their Governours, thought 't was almost as easy to build towns, as to draw schemes.

The next Governour to Col. *Sayle* was Sir *John Yeomans*, baronet; in whose time many of the before-mentioned transactions happen'd, but we have not been able to distinguish the events in his government from those in *Sayle's*.

About the year 1680. the Proprietaries made *Joseph West*, Esq; one of the first planters, their Governour. He was a man of courage, wisdom, piety, and moderation: And such an one was necessary in his time; for tho' many Dissenters had fled from the rage of their enemies in *England*, yet there were not wanting men of other principles, who by factions disturb'd the peace of the infant colony. Mr. *Archdale's* word will, in this case, be more acceptable to the reader: "The most desperate fortunes first ventur'd over to break the ice, which being generally the ill livers of the *pretended churchmen*, tho' the Proprietaries commissioned one Col. *West* their Governour, a moderate, just, pious, and valiant person; yet having a council of the loose prin-

cipled men, they grew very unruly, and had like to have ruin'd the colony, by abusing the *Indians*, whom in prudence they ought to have oblig'd in the highest degree, and so brought an *Indian War* on the Country, like that in the first planting of Virginia, in which several were cut off; but the Governour, by his manly prudence at least in a great measure extinguish'd the Flame, which had a long time threatned the dissolution of the Colony." The two Factions were that of the Proprietaries and that of the Planters, like Court and Country Party in England. This division got to such a head, that one Mr. John Culpeper, was sent prisoner to England, with a Charge of High-Treason against him, for raising a Rebellion in *Carolina*; for which he was try'd at Westminster-Hall, and upon hearing the matter, it appear'd only to be a disorderly quarrel among the Planters and Inhabitants of the Province, so he was acquitted.

Col. West held a parliament in Charles Town, A. D. 1682. In which several Acts were pass'd and ratify'd by him, (Andrew Percival, Esq.; William Owen, Esq.; and Maurice Matthews, Esq.; *Deputies of the Proprietaries*); as "An Act for Highways, for suppressing Drunkenness and profane Swearing, for Observation of the Lord's Day, and for settling the Militia."

'T was in this Governour's Time, that the *Westoes*, a Nation of the Indians, were troublesome to the Colony, and attempted the subversion of this hopeful Settlement, as the Act of Parliament to raise Money for repelling them words it. There was not much Blood shed, or Money spilt; for 4 or 500*l.* paid the Charge of the War, and other publick Expences.

The Lords Proprietaries erected a Commission for Maurice Matthews, Esq.; William Fuller, Esq.; Jona-



than Fitz, Esq.; and John Boon, Esq.; to decide all causes between the English and Indians. And Mr. West is charg'd with dealing in Indians: For which, and opposing the Proprietaries Party, he was remov'd, in the Year 1683. and Joseph Moreton, Esq. appointed Governour in his stead.

'T was about this time, that the Persecution rais'd by the Popish Faction, and their adherents, in England, against the Protestant Dissenters, was at the height; and no Part of this Kingdom suffer'd more by it than Somersetshire. The Author of this History liv'd at that time with Mr. Blake, brother to the famous General of that name, being educated by his Son-in-law, who taught School in Bridgewater; and remembers, tho' then very young, the reasons old Mr. Blake us'd to give for leaving England: One of which was, That the miseries they endur'd, meaning the Dissenters then, were nothing to what he foresaw would attend the Reign of a Popish successor; wherefore he resolv'd to remove to *Carolina*: And he had so great an Interest among Persons of his principles, I mean Dissenters, that many honest substantial Persons engaged to go over with him.

I must prevent all prejudice to what I have said, by declaring that this book is written by one who is not himself a Dissenter, but verily believes, the true Church of England is the most orthodox, and the most pure Church in the world. And by the true Church of England, he understands all those who live up to the doctrine it professes; who by their piety, charity, and moderation, are ornaments of our Holy Religion, and who do not blindly espouse a Name out of Interest, or from the impressions of education; who pity, and not



hate, such as dissent from them ; who are loyal to their Prince, submissive to their Superiours, true to their Country, and charitable to all : Of such a temper is every true Church-man ; and may their number daily encrease, till we are all of one mind, and one Religion, as we have but one God, and one Saviour.

If the reader will pardon this digression, he shall have no more ; and so much 't was necessary to say, that he may not think, whatever is said of Mr. Blake, or his brethren, is out of respect to his profession, but as a Christian : For tho' I doubt not there may be many good Christians of the same principles, I should esteem them more, if they would be convinc'd, and conform ; that the Union, so often recommended by our Gracious and Glorious Queen ANNE, may be universal.

I say the more of Mr. Blake, because his family is one of the most considerable in this Province ; where he arriv'd in the Year 1683. with several other Families, the followers of his fortune. What Estate he sold in England, he sold to carry the effects along with him ; and tho' the sum was not many Thousands, if it did at all deserve the plural Number ; yet 't was all that his great Brother left him, tho' for several Years he commanded the British Fleet ; and in a time when our Naval Arms were victorious, and the treasures of New-Spain seldom reached home.

By Mr. Blake's presence in *Carolina*, the Sober Party, we call them so in opposition to Mr. Archdale's Ill Livers, began to take Heart, and the other to be discourag'd in their irregular courses. The Gentleman I just mention'd, in his *Description of Carolina*, writes thus : " In Governour Moreton's time, General Blake's Brother, with many Dissenters, came to *Carolina* ;

which Blake being a wise and prudent person, of an heroic temper of spirit, strengthened the hands of sober inclin'd people, and kept under the first loose and extravagant spirit," &c. The Governour, as we are told, marry'd Mrs. Elizabeth Blake, his daughter; and by this alliance, the strength of their party was so encreased, that we hear little of the other till Mr. *Colliton's* government.

There being some complaints against Mr. *Matthews*, and the other Commissioners for deciding causes between the *English* and the *Indians*, they were discharg'd and the commission abrogated. The Lords Proprietaries order'd the *Indians* 400 miles from *Charles Town*, to be taken into their protection.

The county of *Berkeley*, between *Stono* and *Sewee*, was now laid out; and soon after *Craven* county, on the north of *Berkeley*; and *Colliton* county, on the south: All which counties were divided into squares of 12000 acres, for the several shares of the Proprietaries, land-graves and cassiques.

Mr. *Moreton*, at his entering upon his office, call'd a Parliament, which met in form, and pass'd several acts; as, "For raising 500*l.* for defraying the publick charge of the province; for regulating the Surveyor General's fees; for raising the value of foreign coin; for trial of small and mean causes under 40*s.*; for damages of protested bills of exchange; for ascertaining publick officers fees; to suspend prosecution for foreign debts; to inhibit the trading with servants or slaves; for laying out, and making good high-ways; for preventing the taking away boats and canoos; for marking of all sorts of cattle; to prevent unlicens'd taverns and punch-houses, and ascertaining the rates and prices of wine, and other liquors; to prevent runaways." All which acts were sign'd by



Joseph Moreton, Esq; Governour, John Godfrey, Esq; John Boon, Esq; James Moor, Esq; Maurice Matthews, Esq; Andrew Percival, Esq; Arthur Middleton, Esq; counsellors and deputies; and Mr. Joseph Oldys, clerk to the parliament. At this time, Robert Gibbs, Esq; was treasurer of the colony; John Moor, Esq; secretrary; John Boon, Esq; Rcbert Daniel, Esq; Mr. Bernard Schinkingh, Mr. Peter Hearn, and Cap. Florence O'Sullivan, were appointed commissioners for stating and passing the publick accounts. Maurice Matthews, Esq; was also Surveyor-General. The trade of dealing in *Indians* continu'd, and several of the Proprietors deputies were concern'd in it: Whether the Governour, Mr. Moreton, favour'd it or not, we cannot undertake to determine. 'T is certain, he did not long enjoy his office; For it appears by the copies of the original instructions sent by the Proprietaries to his successor, that in the following year the Palatine made Sir Richard Kyrle Governour. He was a gentleman of *Ireland*; and dying within the year, Joseph West, Esq; was again chosen Governour by the council; and being a man of great interest, the Proprietaries thought fit to confirm him in his government: But they turn'd out Maurice Matthews, Esq; James Moor, Esq; and Arthur Middleton, Esq; from being deputies and councilors, for disobeying their orders, and sending away *Indians*. They also displac'd their secretary John Moor, Esq; and put Rob. Quarry, Esq; in his place.

Thus we see the latter has enjoy'd honourable offices many years in the *American* colonies; with the interest of which he must, by this means, be very well acquainted.

In Mr. West's second government, the Right Honourable the Lord Cardrosse remov'd to *Carolina*, and, with



ten Scots families, settled at *Port-Royal*, esteem'd the most convenient place in this province for commerce, as being the best port. The Lord Cardosse having been disgusted with the government of the province, for some ill usage he met with, return'd to Scotland, and the Spaniards dislodg'd the Scots who had seated themselves on that fine river. This Lord was of the house of Buchan, and in King William's reign enjoy'd the title of Earl of Buchan.

Dissenters continuing to come hither from all parts of *England*, the colony thriv'd and encreas'd in numbers and riches.

James Colliton, Esq; of *Barbadoes*, brother to Sir Peter Colliton, baronet, a Proprietary, being honour'd with the title of landgrave, left the island he liv'd in, and transported himself and family to Carolina, where he seated himself at old Charles Town, on Cooper river, built a handsome house there; and being made Governour, his seat is to this day call'd the Governour's house. Had this gentleman had as much honour and capacity as his brother Sir Peter, we should have had no occasion to excuse our selves for keeping to the truth of history in his behalf. One of his successors writes in this manner of his government: "The party Governour Moreton had gone a great way in suppressing, grew now so strong among the common people, that they chose members to oppose whatsoever the Governour requested; insomuch that they would not settle the militia act, tho' their own security depended on it, and that it would be grounds of their further strength." The reason of the discontent the people lay under, were disputes about the tenure of their lands, and payment of their quit-rents, which were not settled till Mr. Archdale's government.

Mr. Colliton call'd a Parliament. *A. D.* 1687. This

assembly not liking the Proprietaries *fundamental constitutions*; and thinking they could supply the deficiencies in them, appointed a committee to examine them: And these gentlemen drew up a new form of government, differing in many articles from the former; to which they gave the title of *standing laws*, and temporary laws. This committee were James Colliton, Esq; Governour, Paul Grimbail, Esq; and William Dunlap, Esq; deputies; Bernard Schinking, Thomas Smith, John Farr, and Joseph Blake, Esqs; commoners. But neither the Lords Proprietaries, nor the people of Carolina accepted of them; and thus the *fundamental constitutions* keep their ground to this day.

Mr. Colliton gave such discontent in his administration, that he was banish'd the province; a fate few Governours of colonies were ever so unhappy as to meet with.

Mr. Archdale tells us, Mr. Smith succeeded Mr. Colliton, and that he succeeded Mr. Smith; but then the latter must have been twice Governour: For we find several other gentlemen, who had that title and office before the year 1694. when Mr. Archdale says, Governour Smith wrote over to the Proprietaries, to advise them to send one of their number to Carolina. For Col. Robert Quarry was Governour about the year 1690. After him, Mr. Southwell. And in the year 1692. Col. Philip Ludwell held this government. In which 't is certain, he was succeeded by the above-mention'd Thomas Smith, Esq; landgrave of this province.

We are not doubtful of any Error in this Order of the Governours, except in Mr. Southwell's; our informations having been uncertain as to him.

"Mr. Smith," says Mr. Archdale, "was a wise, sober, well-living Man; who grew so uneasy in the Govern-



ment, by Reason he could not satisfy People in their Demands, that he wrote over, Anno. 1694, 'It was impossible to settle the Country, except a Proprietary himself was sent thither, with full Power to hear their Grievances.' " The Proprietaries took Governour Smith's Letter into Consideration, and the Lord Ashley was pitch'd upon by all the Lords as a Person every way qualify'd for so good a Work; but he desir'd to be excus'd, on Account of his particular Affairs in England. Upon which Mr. Archdale, was chosen by the Proprietaries, to be sent over with large and ample Powers. Which having receiv'd, he embark'd and sail'd to Carolina. When he arriv'd, and enter'd upon the Government, in August, 1695. he found all Matters in great Confusion, and every Faction apply'd themselves to him, in hopes of Relief. In order to which he summon'd an Assembly, and made a kind Speech to them. The Parliament chose Jonathan Amary, Esq. to be their Speaker; and having presented a dutiful Address to the Governour, proceeded to do Business. But the Divisions among them were so great, that had not Mr. Archdale exercis'd a great deal of Patience, neither his Power as Governour, nor his higher Title of Proprietary, could have brought that Assembly to any Temper; which he at last effected, and the Disorders of the Province were remedy'd.

The Parliament presented an Address of Thanks to the Governour, to be transmitted to the Proprietaries, and all things ended well. In his time the *Tammasees*, an Indian Nation, who formerly liv'd under the Spanish Government, and now under the English, made an incursion into the Territories of another Indian Nation, near *Sancta Maria*, not far from *St. Augustino*, took several Prisoners, and intended to sell them for Slaves



at *Barbadoes*, or *Jamaica*, as had been usual among them. Mr. Archdale hearing of it, sent for the King of the *Tammasees*, and order'd him to bring those Indians to *Charles-Town*, which he did. They were Papists; and the Kings of England and Spain being at that time Confederates, the Governour gave the King of the *Tammasees* orders to carry them to *St. Augustino*, with a Letter to the Governour: which may serve to give us an Idea of the Power of an Indian King, who receives orders from a Governour of a small Province, as *Carolina* was then<sup>a</sup> at least, whatever it is now.

The Spaniard who commanded in *St. Augustino*, return'd Mr. Archdale a Letter of Thanks; and not long after another Indian King was sent by the Spanish Governour, with a Letter of Complaint, of wrong done the Spanish Indians, by those ally'd to the English.

The Spanish Indians were called *Churchcates*; of whom the *Apalachicoles*, English Indians, had kill'd three. The Governour commanded that Nation, and all others depending on the English, to forbear molesting those within the Spanish Jurisdiction; which had so good an Effect, that when Mr. Robert Barrow, Mr. Edward Wardell, and other Englishmen, were afterward cast away to the Southward of *Augustino*, the barbarous Indians offer'd them no hurt; and when they arriv'd at that Town, the Governour supply'd them with all Necessaries.

Col. Bull, one of the Council, and a greater Trader with the Indians, engag'd that Nation which dwelt about Cape Fear, to submit to the English, who however were afraid to trust them; for a Vessel coming from *New-England*, being shipwrack'd on that Coast, the Passengers, to the number of 52, despaired of their

Lives from those Barbarians, but resolv'd to defend themselves as well as they could: Accordingly they entrench'd in their little Camp. The Indians came down, and by Signs of Friendship invited them to come forth; which they were afraid to do. At last, when their Provisions were almost all spent, some of them ventur'd out, were kindly receiv'd, and furnish'd by the Indians with Necessaries. The King invited them to his Town, treated them, and 4 or 5 of them travelling to *Charles-Town*, gave the Governour notice of their misfortunes; which hearing, he sent a Ship to fetch the rest; and they arriv'd safely at the Capital of *Carolina*.

In Mr. Archdale's Time two Indians quarrelling in their drinking one of them presently kill'd the other; whose Wife being by, immediately dismembered the Murderer, to revenge her Husband's death, cutting off his Privities with a Knife. The Governour happening to be near the Place where the Murder was committed, order'd the Criminal to be pursu'd. He was taken in a Swamp about 16 Miles from the Town; to which he was sent under a Guard. The Nation to whom the slain Indian belong'd, hearing of his Death, their King came to Mr. Archdale, and desir'd Justice upon the Murderer. Some of whose Friends would have bought him off as usual; but nothing less than his death would satisfy the injur'd Nation; and, according to the custom of his Country, the Governour order'd him to be shot by the Kinsman of the Deceas'd. As he was leading to execution, his King came to him, and bid him "die like a Man, since he must die," adding, "he had often forewarned him of Rum," the Liquor which he was drunk with when he kill'd the Man, "and now he must lose his Life for not taking his Council."



When he came to the Tree, he desir'd not to be ty'd to it, but to stand loose, saying, "I will not stir when he shoots me." So he was shot in the Head, and fell down dead.

This piece of Justice hinder'd a War between the Nations to which these two Indians belong'd. The Indians inhabiting the Country about the River Pemlico, were almost all consum'd by a Pestilential Disease, while this Governour was in *Carolina*; and the Coranines, a bloody and barbarous People, were most of them, cut off by a neighbouring Nation.

In his Time several Families remov'd from New-England to settle at Carolina, and seated themselves on the River Sewee, in North Carolina. These are all the Events which happen'd during Mr. Archdale's Government, at least he has thought fit to communicate no more to the Publick; and as inconsiderable as they may appear to some Persons, who are us'd to turn over the Græcian and Roman Histories, if they will give themselves the Trouble to examine the Affairs of these two Empires, they will find them as trivial, in the beginning at least, if they can distinguish the History from the Fable.

We cannot expect much Business in the Infancy of a Colony; and yet Carolina is not so young, but Factions have been as rampant there, as if the People had been made wanton by many Ages of Prosperity.

Mr. Archdale, to use his own Phrase, "Return'd for England, being not sent for Home." And Joseph Blake, Esq. son of the before-mention'd Mr. Blake, being become a Proprietary, was looked upon as the fittest Person to succeed him in his Government; in which Office he behav'd himself to the Satisfaction of



the Country, which he govern'd with equal Prudence and Moderation.

In his Time, Major Daniel brought from England new Constitutions, consisting of 41 Articles, wherein as ample Provision was made for Liberty of Conscience, as in the Fundamental Constitutions. These new Laws were call'd, the last *fundamental constitutions*, and sign'd by John Earl of Bath, Palatine; Anthony Lord Ashley, the Lord Craven, the Lord Cartaret, the Earl of Bath, Sir John Colliton, William Thornburgh, merchant, Thomas Amy, and Wil. Thornburgh; but they were never confirm'd in Parliament at *Carolina*.

Mr. Blake, tho' he was himself a dissenter, finding there was no settled maintenance for the Church of England minister, procur'd an act of Assembly (in which there were a great number of dissenters) for the settling a very convenient house with a glebe, two servants, and 150*l.* per annum upon the minister of Charles Town for ever. 'T was by his influence that act past, and he gave his assent to it; he, as Governour, having a negative voice to all bills. His lady also was one of the greatest benefactors towards the ornaments of the Church. And this friendship deserv'd a more grateful return than they met with from those who succeeded in the government.

Mr. Blake dying about the year 1700. after he had been Governour 4 or 5 years, the Proprietaries deputies met, according to their instructions in such cases, and proceeded to the election of a new Governour; which post is generally conferred on the eldest landgrave, if there's no objection to him, and no person sent from England with that character.

Joseph Moreton, Esq; being the eldest landgrave, was elected Governour by the deputies: but Capt. James

Moor, one of these deputies, knowing the party he had among them, objected against Mr. Moreton, as if he had made a breach of the trust reposed in him by the true and absolute Lords and Proprietaries, by accepting of a commission from King William, to be Judge of the Admiralty, when he had at the same time a commission from the Lords Proprietaries for the same office.

Tho' this objection was answered by Mr. Moreton's friends; "That it did not appear by the charter, the Proprietaries can empower any one to try persons for facts committed out of their dominions, which is necessary for such a judge;" and the Proprietaries could not grant it; yet such was Mr. Moor's interest, that on this his objection Mr. Moreton was set aside, and his opponent Mr. Moor chosen Governour. Mr. Moreton inform'd and complained to the Proprietaries, but was never redrest.

From this election I date the rise of all the misfortunes that have since befallen this colony, and that have given the government of England so much trouble.

The Earl of Bath was dead, and his son, John Lord Granville, lately advanc'd to the House of Peers, was Palatine. All the world knew how zealous that gentleman had been for promoting a bill against occasional conformists in England, and that he shewed his aversion to dissenters even in the court of Stannaries in the West, while he was Warden. The bitterness of his spirit appeared in the speeches he made to the representatives of that court; and was such, that he was not long employed by a government, which is founded on principles of justice and moderation; which has in all things promoted union, and which has united the hearts of all the subjects of the British empire more than all the



princes could do since the *conquest*, and many ages before it.

In an ill time therefore did this Palatine countenance the divisions in Carolina, by encouraging this and the succeeding Governour in their vain endeavours, to establish that for a law there, which had been rejected with such marks of abhorrence in England by our illustrious representatives.

Mr. Moor was easily confirm'd in his new dignity by the Palatine ; and as he is said to have sought after it to enrich himself, so he made use of it to that end, he being in mean circumstances, if the representation of the principal inhabitants of the colony does not deceive us.

Let us give the reader the proper words, that we may not be accus'd of partiality, which we detest in all things that hurt the truth. But we know very well, that faction will often accuse fact of partiality ; and an historian may write things true, and yet by writing the truth only of one side, and concealing what is to its disadvantage, it may give a plausible appearance to a bad cause ; wherefore we solemnly declare, that after a full enquiry we have not been able to learn any thing that could excuse the disorders we are about to relate, and vindicate the administration in Carolina, while the Lord Granville was Palatine. Whether that Lord or his Governours ought to be blam'd most, let the world judge.

Mr. Moor, says the author of the above-mention'd representation,\* having thus boldly gotten the government, resolv'd to make the best use of his authority, and finding himself too poor, with the countenance of his office, to make any considerable profit of the Indian trade, he

\* Case of Diss. in Car. p. 29. 30.



laid the design of getting it wholly into his power. He to that end procur'd a bill to be brought into the assembly, then sitting, for regulating the Indian trade: which bill was so drawn, that had it past, he would have engross'd all that beneficial commerce. But Mr. Robert Stephens and Mr. Nicholas Trott (who had not then forsaken the country interest) and some others, so plainly shew'd the ill aim of that act, that 't was thrown out of the assembly: Which Mr. Moor dissolv'd, perceiving they would not answer his ends.

We do not think our selves oblig'd to keep to the words of this representation, which are too rough in some places; but we keep religiously to the sense; and having refer'd the reader in the margin to our authority, he cannot suppose we endeavour to impose on him.

The Governour call'd a new assembly about the latter end of the year 1701. At the choosing of which, tho' the right of electing be in the freeholders only, he so influenc'd the sheriff, that strangers, servants, aliens; nay, malatoes and negroes were poll'd, and return'd.

Such as at the place of election oppos'd these practices, were abus'd, and some assaulted by Mr. Moor's favourites. By this means having got several into the assembly, men of no sense and credit, who would vote as he would have them; he there kept them from being thrown out, on the petition of those who were unjustly excluded.

Colliton county sent a representation against him to the Palatine, containing in substance the same, as that we have spoken of before; therefore we cannot suspect the truth of it.

When the Governour was afraid any of the members \*

\* Case of Diss. in Car. p. 34.

he was sure was in his interest would be turn'd out, on petitions, he prorogu'd the assembly: And when at last they were suffered to sit, the inquiry into the sheriff of Berkley county's return was obstructed, by setting on foot an ill contriv'd design of raising forces to attack St. Augustino, a fort belonging to the Spaniards, to the southward of Carolina. If any member of the assembly undertook to speak against it, and to shew how unable the province was at that time to undertake such an expedition, he was presently look'd upon by him and his adherents, as an enemy and traitor to his country; \* and accordingly revil'd and affronted; tho' the true design of the expedition, as the representation from Colleton county tells us, was "no other than catching and making slaves of Indians for private advantage." He would have had this military enterprize been undertaken before the war with Spain was proclaim'd; but the assembly carry'd that in the negative.

Before we treat of this expedition, we must observe what past further in the assembly. Mr. John Ash, one of the members, propos'd to have the last Fundamental Constitutions, which Mr. Daniel brought over, confirm'd; but he was oppos'd by Mr. Trott and Mr. How, the Governour's creatures. †

This Mr. Trott had himself been Governour of *Providence*, and behav'd himself so arbitrarily, that he was complain'd of to King William some Years before. Trott and How expos'd the Constitutions as ridiculous; and the Country was thus left in an unsettled Condition.

There's one Article in this Representation which is very extraordinary: "That the said late Governour

\* Case of Diss. in Car. 35      † Ibid.



Moor did grant Commissions to Anthony Dodsworth, Robert Mackoone and others,\* to set upon, assault, kill, destroy, and take as many Indians as they possibly could; the Profit and Produce of which Indian Slaves were turn'd to his private Use. Whereas such Undertakings, unjust and barbarous in themselves, will in all Probability, draw upon us an Indian War."

We have said enough to give an Idea of the Condition the People of *Carolina* were in under such a Government, and have taken it all from Memorials presented by their Agents to the Lords Proprietaries. The next thing that comes in our way is the War of *Augustino*.

Two Thousand Pounds were rais'd by an Act of the Assembly, to defray the Charge of this Expedition. The Governour prest as many Merchant Ships as were necessary to transport the Troops he intended to embark; who were order'd to rendezvous at *Port-Royal*.

The Number of Men which were listed for this Enterprize were 1200, 600 English, and 600 Indians. Col. Moor took the Command on himself, as General of all the Forces that should be rais'd within the Limits of his Government.

Col. Rob. Daniel, a very brave Man, commanded a Party who were to go up the River in Periaga's, and come upon *Augustino* on the Land side, while the Governour sail'd thither and attack'd it by Sea. They both set out in August, 1702. Col. Daniel in his way took *St. John's*, a small Spanish Settlement; as also *St. Mary's*, another little Village belonging to the Spaniards. After which he proceeded to *Augustino*, came before

\* Coll. County Repr. Article 5.



the Town, enter'd and took it ; Col. Moor not being yet arrived with the Fleet.

The Inhabitants having notice of the Approach of the English had pack'd up their best Effects, and retir'd with them into the Castle, which was surrounded by a very deep and broad Moat.

They had laid up Provisions there for 4 Months, and resolv'd to defend themselves to the last Extremity. However Col. Daniel found a considerable Booty in the Town. The next Day the Governour arriv'd, and a Council of War was immediately call'd, in which 't was resolv'd to land.

Accordingly the Governour came ashore, and his Troops following him, they entrench'd, posted their Guards in the Church, and block'd up the Castle. The English held the Possession of the Town a whole Month, but finding they could do nothing for want of Mortars and Bombs, they dispatch'd away a Sloop for *Jamaica* ; but the Commander of the Sloop, instead of going thither, came to *Carolina*, out of Fear or Treachery. Finding others offer'd to go in his stead, he proceeded in the Voyage himself, after he had lain some Time at *Charles-Town*.

The Governour all this while lay before the Castle of *Augustino*, in expectation of the Return of the Sloop : Which hearing nothing of, he sent Col. Daniel, who was the Life of the Action, to *Jamaica*, on the same Errand.

This Gentleman being hearty in the Design, procur'd a Supply of Bombs, and return'd towards *Augustino*. But in the mean time two Ships appear'd in the Offing, which, being taken to be two very large Men of War, the Governour thought fit to raise the Siege, and abandon his Ships, with a great Quantity of

Stores, Ammunition, and Provision, to the Enemy. Upon which the two Men of War entered the Port of *Augustino*, and took the Governour's Ships. Some say he burnt them himself. Certain it is, they were lost to the English, and that he return'd to *Charles-Town* over Land, 300 Miles from *Augustino*. The two Men of War that were thought to be so large, proved to be two small Frigats, one of 82, and the other of 16 Guns.

When Col. Daniel came back to *Augustino*, he was chas'd, but got away; and Col. Moor retreated with no great Honour homewards. The *Periagas* lay at *St. John's*, whither the Governour retir'd, and so to *Charles Town*, having lost but two Men in the whole Expedition. *Arratomakaw*, King of the *Yanioseaves*, who commanded the Indians, retreated to the *Periagas* with the rest, and there slept upon his Oars, with a great deal of Bravery and Unconcern. The Governour's Soldiers taking a false Alarm, and thinking the Spaniards were coming, did not like this slow Pace of the Indian King in his Flight; and to quicken him into it, bad him make more haste: But he reply'd, "No; though your Governour leaves you, I will not stir till I have seen all my Men before me."

The first Representation, call'd also, The present State of Affairs of Carolina,\* reflects a little too bitterly on Col. Moor on this Head; and one would suspect the Truth of what it contains, if it was not confirmed by the second. We are told there, "They sent plunder to *Jamaica* by their trusty Officers, under colour of seeking Supplies, and sending for Bombs and Mortars." Which is a malicious Turn given by Col Moor's Ene-

\* Coll. County Repr. p. 30.



mies to Col. Daniel's going to *Jamaica*, who by the Dispatch he made there shewed he really went for Mortars; and had the Governour staid till he had return'd, the Castle of *Augustino* had perhaps now been in English Hands; for the Spaniards had not above 200 Men aboard the two Frigats. This Expedition, as unfortunate as it was in it self, was much more so in the Consequence of it; for it brought a Debt of 6000*l.* on the Province. The Assembly had been under a Prorogation during the Governour's absence, and when he return'd they met. The first Thing they went upon, was to raise Money to pay off the Debt above-mention'd, and then they took into Consideration the Danger of the Country, as it lay expos'd to the Southward. But while these Bills were passing, another for the better regulating elections, pass'd the Lower House twice, and was sent up to the Governour and Council, by whom 't was rejected without so much as a Conference. Upon which several of the Members, jealous of their Privileges, and being so ordered by those that sent them, enter'd their Protestation, and left the House; \* but return'd the next Day, offering to sit longer, if the rest of the Assembly would join with them in asserting their Right. The Whole Assembly consists of but 30 Members, and 15 of them protested against the irregular Proceedings of the Governour. Instead of tempering Matters, when they return'd to the house, they were abus'd and treated with the most scandalous reflections, unbecoming an assembly that represented a whole province. And as they were insulted within doors, they were assaulted without; for a day or two after Lieut. Col. George Dearsby drew his sword upon Thomas Smith, Esq; a landgrave, and

\* See the Representation of the Members of Colliton County.



once Governour of the colony, threatning his life. John Ash, Esq; a member of the assembly, was not only abus'd in the streets by a company of drunken fellows, but forc'd aboard a ship belonging to Cap. Rhett, and threatned to be hang'd, or sent to Jamaica, or left on some desart-Island. This Mr. Ash is the man who was employ'd as agent for the people of Carolina, to represent their grievances in the first memorial, call'd, "The Present State of Affairs in Carolina;" and the persons who thus barbarously treated him, were George Dearsby, Nicholas Nary, Thomas Dalton, and others, whom, says the representation of Colliton county, article xi. "the Governour had treated immediately before the riot began, and us'd such expressions to them, as gave them, next their drink, the greatest encouragements for what they acted;" telling them, "The protesting members would bring the people on their heads for neglecting to pay the country's debts. After the riot began, of part of which he was an eye-witness, having first drunk with some of them, he withdrew himself out of the way." This riot continued 4 or 5 days; and Edmund Bellinger, Esq; a landgrave, and justice of peace, attempting to suppress it, was call'd opprobrious names by the rioters, and Rhett can'd him for a considerable time. The rioters assaulted Mr. Joseph Boon, a merchant, deputed by Colliton county, to present the above-mention'd second representation to the Palatine and Lords Proprietaries, and put him in danger and fear of his life, without any provocation. The same they did by Mr. James Byres, who with the rest complain'd to the Governour; and receiving no satisfaction, they ask'd him, whether he did not look on himself, as Governour, oblig'd to keep the peace of the province: The Governour reply'd, *That's a question I am not oblig'd to an-*

*swer.* He told them, 't was a justice of peace's business.

The rioters went one night to the house of one John Smith, a butcher in Charles-Town, and forcing open the door, threw down a woman big with child, and otherwise misusing her; she brought forth a dead child, with the back and skull broken. These instances are enough to shew any man the temper of this Governour and his party; who were the same that stickled so much for the unhappy bill we must speak of in the sequel of this history. What follow'd upon this riot, is told us in the late tract, which I shall make use of in the author's own words, "As this riot was rais'd encourag'd and countenanc'd by the said Governour and council;\* And as no assistance could be obtain'd to quell it, so all methods to enquire into, and punish it, have been render'd ineffectual, and the course of justice intirely stop'd. For Sir Nathaniel Johnson was made Governour in the room of the said Moor. The said Governour Moor was presently made Attorney General; and Mr. Trott, another of the chief abettors of the riot, the Chief Justice of the Common Pleas; who in this province is sole judge. Sir Nathaniel Johnson was General of the Leward Islands, in the reign of the late King James; but he quitted his government upon the revolution, and retir'd to Carolina, where he liv'd privately till the death of the late King James. Upon which he first took the oaths to the government; and some time after was made Governour of the province. And he has since his being Governour appointed such sheriffs, as prevent all prosecutions of this riot at their assizes or quarter sessions (which are the only courts of justice in this province) where crimes

\* Case of Diss. in Car. p. 19.



of this nature can be try'd; and where the said Mr. Trott is sole judge, by returning such jurors as were known abettors of the said riot: So that there is a total failure of justice, and nothing but corruption in the whole frame and administration of government."

Colliton county representation tells us particularly, that Mr. Bellinger did what in him lay to have the said riot inquir'd into. He gave in the record of it to the bench; and some of the grand jury urg'd to have it presented, but to no purpose. The first representation informs us, that the grand jury presented it to the court as a great grievance, that the riot was not look'd into, and the rioters prosecuted; yet no justice against them could be obtain'd; the judge giving for answer, '*Twas before the council, his superiors*: The present Governour, "That it was an action done before his coming to the government; that he thought the time of prosecution laps'd, but would take care the like should be no more."

This answer had in the last part of it a face of moderation; and such an air was necessary, because an assembly was about being elected. "The conspirators," as my author terms them,\* "saw that a new Parliament might set all things to rights again, and therefore when the time of a new election came, which, according to their constitution, is once in two years; they resolv'd to procure a commons house of assembly of the same complexion with the former, and by more illegal practices. If those they had us'd in the former elections would not do their business, their designs took effect; and such a commons house of assembly was return'd, as fully answered their expectations."

The first representation brought over by Mr. Ash, in-

\* Case of Diss. in Car. p. 20.



forms us, "That at the election for Berkley and Craven county, the violence in Mr. Moor's time, and all other illegal practices, were with more violence repeated, and openly avow'd by the present Governour, and his friends."

The second representation adds, "Jews, strangers, sailors, servants, negroes, and almost every Frenchman in Craven and Berkley counties, came down to elect, and their votes were taken, and the persons by them voted for, were return'd by the sheriffs."

The assembly meeting, chose Job How, Esq; to be their speaker, and this was that parliament, who, to oppress the Protestant dissenters, brought in a bill contrary to the first and last Fundamental Constitutions to the true interest of the colony, and the right of every freeholder there. 'T was entitl'd, "An act for the more effectual preservation of the government, by requiring all persons that shall hereafter be chosen members of the commons house of assembly, and sit in the same, to, &c. and to conform to the religious worship in this province, according to the church of England, and to receive the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper according to the rights and usage of the said Church."

Every Dissenter that was turned out of the house, by virtue of this act, made room for the most bigotted of the faction to get in; for it provided, that the person who had the most votes next to such dissenter, should be admitted in his place; and those that oppos'd the dissenters being generally, according to the before-mention'd author, men of violent and persecuting principles, the faction secur'd the power in their own hands.

There were 12 Members for this Bill, and 11 against it, in the Lower House; and in the Upper, Joseph Moreton, Esq. a Landgrave, and one of the Proprieta-

ry's Deputies was deny'd the Liberty of entering his Protest against it. The Bill pass'd the 6th of May, A. D. 1704. and was sign'd by Sir Nathaniel Johnson, Col. Thomas Broughton, Col. James Moor, Robert Gibbs, Esq; Henry Noble, Esq; Nicholas Trott, Esq.

The Governour and Proprietaries Deputies, upon passing this Act, allarm'd all the Dissenters, who according to the Orthodox Minister of *Charles Town*, the Reverend Mr. Marston's Letter to the Reverend Dr. Stanhope,\* are the soberest, most numerous, and richest People of this Province; and this Assembly was compos'd of many Men of very loose and corrupt Morals.

We have shewn in the Beginning of the History of *Carolina*, that by the Fundamentals of the Province, the Dissenters could not be justly excluded from any Rights of the Members of it; we have shewn here what a Sort of Convention, and by what Government countenanc'd, this Assembly was; and there's no need of exaggerating matters, to make the thing look black; wherefore we shall proceed in our History.

It cannot be imagin'd that a People, who had been us'd so ill, would sit still, and tamely bear such barbarous Usage: especially considering those that were concern'd in the Riot were some of the worst, and those that suffer'd by it, some of the best Men in the Province.

Col. Joseph Moreton, and Edmund Bellinger, Esq; Landgraves, and Deputies of the Lords Proprietaries, all the other Members of *Colliton* County, and several of the greatest Worth and Reputation in *Berkley* Coun-

\* Case of Diss. part II. p. 57.



ty, prevail'd with Mr. Joseph Ash to come for England, to represent the miserable State of the Province to the Proprietaries.

The Faction being apprehensive of their Danger in such a Proceeding, did their utmost to prevent Mr. Ash's Voyage; and 't was not without the greatest Difficulty that he got away from *Carolina* to *Virginia*, where his Powers and Instructions were convey'd to him, as Agent for the Gentlemen and Inhabitants above-nam'd.

Coming to England, he apply'd himself to the Lord Granville, then Proprietary of the Province: But finding he was entirely in the Interests of the prevailing Party in *Carolina*, he despair'd of seeing the Grievances he came to complain of, redress'd: He therefore drew up the first Representation, often cited in this Treatise, printed a Sheet of it, and intended to go through with it; but dy'd before he could finish it; and his Papers, after his Death, were betray'd into his Enemies Hands.

How this Agency was liked in *Carolina*, we may suppose; and that the Author of "The Case of the Dissenters in *Carolina*," does not impose upon us, in telling us, "The Governour and his Agents prosecuted and insulted several of the Inhabitants, and particularly Landgrave Smith, on the Account of some private Letters which they sent to the said Ash, while he was in Virginia and England, and which were found among the Papers betray'd to the Governour's Agents."

Mr. Ash may probably represent Things with too much Partiality, especially if what Mr. Archdale says of him be true; \* "Their first Agent seem'd not a Person

\* Descripton of Carolina, p. 25



suitably qualify'd to represent their State here, not that he wanted Wit, but Temper."

What Share the Governour had in this Business, appears also in the same Tract.\* "Sir Nathaniel Johnson by a Chymical Wit, Zeal, and Art, transmuted or turn'd this Civil Difference into a religious Controversy; and so setting up a Standard for those called High Church, ventur'd at all to exclude all the Dissenters out of the Assembly, as being those principally that were for a strict Examination into the Grounds and Causes of the Miscarriage of the *Augustino* Expedition."

The Party did not stop here; for on the 4th of November an Act past, and was sign'd by the Governour, and the Deputies above-nam'd; entitl'd "An Act for establishing Religious Worship in this Province according to the Church of England; and for the erecting of Churches for the Publick Worship of God, and also for the Maintenance of Ministers, and the building convenient Houses for them."†

Which Act Mr. Archdale acquaints us, "notwithstanding its splendid Gloss, savour'd of a persecuting Spirit, and of a haughty Dominion over the Clergy itself; for they set up a High Commission Court, giving them power to place and displace Ministers, and act much in the Nature of the High Commission Court erected by King James II. in England." These Commissioners were Sir Nathaniel Johnson, Thomas Broughton, Esq; Col. James Moor, Nicholas Trott, Esq; Col. Robert Gibbes, Job How, Esq; Ralph Iazard, Esq; Col. James Risbee, Col. George Logan, Lieut. Colonel William Rhett, William Smith, Esq; Mr. John Stroude,

\* Description of Carolina, p. 23. † Ibid p. 24.

Mr. Thomas Hubbard, Richard Beresford, Esq; Mr. Robert Seabrook, Mr. Hugh Hicks, John Ashby, Esq; Capt. John Godfrey, James Serurier, alias Smith, Esq; and Mr. Thomas Barton.

It will not be improper to give a Character of this James Serurier, who has been mightily employ'd by the present Government in *Carolina*; and we cannot do it better, than in using the same Words Mrs. Blake, Mother of the Proprietary Joseph Blake, Esq; writes to the Lords Proprietaries. "Towards the satisfaction of the Augustino debt, an act was contriv'd for forcing the currency of bills of credit to the value of 6000*l*. These bills were declar'd current in all payments, and the refuser of them sueable in double the value of the sum refus'd; whereby the boldest stroke has been given to the property of the settlers in this province, that ever was known in any country not governed by arbitrary power. And the bad consequences of this forc'd currency, in relation to trade with strangers, are so great, that they can scarcely be exprest. But there has nothing of this been weigh'd by your Lordship's deputies here, or by the pack'd members of our commons house of assembly. Besides all this, the people are not satisfy'd how many bills are truly sent abroad; and the great concern, Mr. James Smith, alias Serurier (who cheated the Scots company of a considerable sum of money, and with his keeper made his escape from London hither) had in this contrivance, gives a jealousy of indirect practices." By this the reader understands what inconveniences the Augustino expedition brought upon the colony, and what sort of persons were promoters of this occasional bill in America. But to shew that this faction in the assembly had nothing less in their view, than the real advancement of religion, and



the Church of England; \* the Reverend Mr. Edward Marston, minister of that Church in Charles Town, was censur'd by them, for three passages of a sermon preach'd there by him; two of which passages were not in the said sermon; and that which was amounted to no more, than that the clergy had a divine right to a maintenance. They depriv'd him of his salary settl'd on him by act of Parliament, and of 50*l.* besides due to him by an act of Assembly: Tho' the chief reason was his having visited Mr. Landgrave Smith, when he was in custody of a messenger, being committed by the commons house, and living friendly with the dissenters.

Of this Assembly the same reverend divine says, "They made some very odd and unjustifiable laws, which have occasion'd great feuds and animosities here."† And in his representation to the Lords Proprietaries; "Most of the late members of Assembly have been constant absenters from the holy Sacrament: So 't is no wonder they have inserted an absurd oath in a late act, &c. I cannot think it will be much for the credit and service of the Church of England here, that such provisions should be made, for admitting the most loose and profligate persons to sit and vote in the making of our laws, who will but take the oath appointed by the late act." And of the High Commissioners 't is said, "Eleven of the twenty were never known to receive the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper."

And that this furious faction were no friends to the Church of England is plain, by their design to wrest the ecclesiastical jurisdiction out of the hands of the right reverend father in God, Henry Lord Bishop of London.

\* Case of Diss in Car. p. 23. † See his letter to Dr. Stanhope, Part II.



Mr. Marston being threaten'd in Col. Risbee's house, "That at the next sessions of Assembly he should see the Bishop of London's jurisdiction abolish'd there." And of this Carolina Parliament he adds further, "Our lower house of Assembly imprison by a vote of the house, *sinie die*, and bid defiance to the *Habeas Corpus* act, tho' made in force there by an act of Assembly." The Governour was very "cholerick with the minister, because he had made Landgrave Smith a visit, at the house of the messenger; and a bully lash'd him causelessly with his whip, and tore his gown from his back. His creatures also in the assembly were the occasion of his sufferings."

If I am accus'd of being partial in representing this matter, I answer, that besides the Memorials publish'd by the agent of Carolina, Mr. Archdale's tract and others, I have diligently inquired into the truth of the fact, and have not been able to learn the least hint that makes against it, or vindicates the party that is complain'd of, and were powerfully protected by the Lord Granville; notwithstanding it was made out to him, that the Assembly in passing the occasional bill in Carolina,\* were guilty of the most notorious ill practices, and were men of corrupt principles and manners. That bill was brought into the house the 4th of May, and carry'd so precipitately, that it past the 6th, four days before the time to which they were prorogu'd. There never were above 23 members present, from the 26th of April to the 6th of May. There was but one more for it than against it; and of the latter many were members of the Church of England.

There's one thing very remarkable in the act, which

\* Part I. p. 38.

is the stile: "Be it enacted, by his Excellency John Lord Granville, and the rest of the true and absolute Lords and Proprietors of Carolina," &c. A stile never assum'd by them till very lately. From whence we may observe how pleas'd that faction is every where with the despotick and absolute power, insomuch as to usurp the name, when they cannot obtain any thing more. *The case of the Dissenters in Carolina*, is so full of irregularities in the course of this affair, that we must refer the reader to it. We have taken the most material, and now are to see what was done in England relating to this matter.

The principal merchants in *London* trading to *Carolina*, drew up a petition to the Lord Granville against passing this act, or to order its repeal. Which petition they lodg'd with Mr. Boone, the agent of Carolina, who solicited the Palatine seven weeks before he could prevail to have a board of Proprietaries call'd.

Mr. Archdale, one of the Proprietaries, oppos'd the ratifying the bill against the dissenters, at the board, and with such solid reasons, that 't is amazing to find the Palatine make this short answer to all of 'em: "Sir, you are of one opinion, and I am of another; and our lives may not be long enough to end the controversy: I am for this bill, and this is the party that I will head and countenance."

What other tone could he have talk'd in had he been Sultan of Carolina? Mr. Boone pray'd he might be heard by council. The Palatine reply'd, "What business has council here? It is a prudential act in me; and I will do as I see fit. I see no harm at all in this bill, and I am resolv'd to pass it." He should have added, *Car tel est notre Plaisir*.

As all methods to procure justice from this board were



ineffectual, in the case of the dissenters, the same were they in Mr. Marston's case, and the abuses he met with from the party, the Lord Granville was resolv'd to head and countenance. And what that party was in England, and how they have seen their unreasonable attempts baffl'd and exploded, is too well known, to need any remembrance here.

The bill which occasion'd all the complaints in Carolina, having past thus illegally and arbitrarily, the dissenters in this province *being notoriously known to be above two-thirds of the people*, and the richest and soberest among them, according to Mr. Marston's evidence, 't was not likely that they would suffer themselves to be insulted and persecuted without seeking redress. The very Assembly who past the bill about half a year afterwards past another to repeal it, when the house was full; but it was lost in the upper house; " and the Governour, in great indignation dissolv'd the commons house, by the name of the Unsteady Assembly. The Society for propagating the gospel in America and elsewhere, meeting in St. Paul's church, taking the act for the establishing religious worship, &c. into consideration, resolv'd not to send or support any missionaries in that province, till the said act, or the clause relating to the lay commissioners, was annul'd.

There being no hopes of any redress of the grievances the inhabitants of this colony suffer'd in Carolina, nor from the Lords Proprietaries in England, they resolv'd to bring the matter before the house of Lords in England, not doubting but to have entire justice done them by that august Assembly; where the language of their Palatine was never heard from the throne, at least in this reign, or the last; both which are the glory of the British annals.



Mr. Boon was not only empower'd by the principal inhabitants of Carolina to act as their agent, but he was assisted in his agency by several eminent merchants of London who sign'd the petition to the House of Lords; as Mr. Michaiah Perry, Mr. Joseph Paice, Mr. Peter Renew, Mr. Christopher Fowler, and others.

The Effect of which was, after a full hearing of the Cause at the Lord's Bar, that most Honourable House, who have done such great Things for the Liberties of England, voted an Address to the Queen, in behalf of the Province of Carolina: But the Reader cannot be better satisfy'd, than to have it in their own Words; by which the State of the Case will be best seen.

\* "The House having fully and maturely weigh'd the Nature of these two Acts, found themselves oblig'd in Duty to your Majesty, and in Justice to your Subjects in *Carolina*, (who by the Express Words of the Charter of Your Royal Uncle King Charles II. granted to the Proprietors, are declared to be the Liege People of the Crown of England, and to have Right to all the Liberties, Franchises, and Privileges of Englishmen, as if they were born within this Kingdom. And who by the Words of the same Charter, are to be subject to no Laws, but such as are consonant to Reason, and as near as may be to the Laws and Customs of England) to come to the following Resolutions.

"First, That it is the opinion of this house, that the act of the assembly of *Carolina*, lately pass'd there, and since sign'd and seal'd by John Lord Granville, Palatine,

\* The Humble Address of the Right Honourable the Lords Spiritual and Temporal in Parliament assembled, Die Martii 12, 1705.

for himself, and for the Lord Cartarett, and the Lord Craven, and Sir John Colliton, four of the Proprietors of that Province, in order to the ratifying it, entitled, 'An Act for the establishing Religious Worship in this Province, according to the Church of England, and for the erecting of Churches for the public Worship of God, and also for the Maintenance of Ministers, and building convenient Houses for them.' So far forth as the same relates to the establishing a Commission for the displacing the Rectors or Ministers of the Churches there, is not warranted by the Charter granted to the Proprietors of that Colony, as being not consonant to Reason, repugnant to the Laws of this Realm, and destructive to the Constitution of the Church of England.

"Secondly, That it is the Opinion of this House, That the Act of the Assembly of *Carolina*, entitled, 'An Act for the more effectual Preservation of the Government of this Province, by requiring all Persons that shall hereafter be chosen Members of the Commons House of Assembly, and sit in the same, to take the Oaths, and subscribe the Declaration appointed by this Act, and to conform to the Religious Worship in this Province, according to the Rites and Usage of the said Church,' lately pass'd there, and sign'd and seal'd by John Lord Granville, Palatine, for himself, and the Lord Craven, and also for the Lord Cartarett, and by Sir John Colliton, four of the Proprietors of that Province, in order to the ratifying of it, is founded upon Falsity in matter of Fact, is repugnant to the Laws of England, contrary to the Charter granted to the Proprietors of that Colony, is an Encouragement to Atheism and Irreligion, destructive to Trade, and tends to the depopulating and ruining the said Province.



"May it please your Majesty ;

"We your Majesty's most dutiful Subjects, having thus humbly presented our Opinions of these Acts, we beseech your Majesty to use the most effectual methods to deliver the said Province from the arbitrary Oppressions, under which it now lies ; and to order the Authors thereof to be prosecuted according to Law."

To which Her Majesty was graciously pleased to answer :

"I thank the House for laying these matters so plainly before me ; I am very sensible of what great Consequence the Plantations are to ENGLAND, and will do all that is in my Power to relieve my Subjects."

It appear'd to the House, that some of the Proprietors absolutely refus'd to join in these Acts. This matter being referred to the Lords of the Committee of Trade, they examin'd into it ; and finding all the Fact charg'd upon the Promoters of these Bills, true, represented to Her Majesty, the 24th of May, 1706. That the making such Laws is an Abuse of the Power granted to the Proprietors by their Charter, and will be a forfeiture of such Power. They further humbly offer'd to Her Majesty, That she would be pleas'd to give Directions for re-assuming the same into her Majesty's Hands by *Scire Facias*, in Her Majesty's Court of Queen's Bench. Which Representation was signed by the Right Honourable the Lord Dartmouth, the Honourable Robert Cecil, Esq ; Sir Philip Meadows, William Blathwayte, Esq ; Matthew Prior, Esq ; and John Pollexfen, Esq.

On the 10th of June, her majesty was pleased to approve of the said representation ; and accordingly having declar'd the Laws mention'd therein to be NULL and VOID, did order, That for the more effec-



tual proceeding against the said charter by way of Quo Warranto, Mr. Attorney, and Mr. Solicitor General do inform themselves fully concerning what may be most necessary for effecting the same.

Thus did our most Gracious Sovereign hear the cry of the oppress'd, right the innocent, and do justice on the oppressor. For no distance of country can put any of her subjects out of her protection; nor no difference of opinion (provided they are kept within the bounds of duty and religion) prevent her favouring alike all her people, and doing her utmost to make them all happy, as the infinite God has made her reign to herself, and her empire in a distinguish'd manner.

The assembly which pass'd these two memorable acts were dissolv'd in the following year, and a new one summon'd to meet at *Charles Town*. At the election, Craven and Berkley counties were so streightened by the qualifying act, that they had not 20 men to represent them, unless they would choose a dissenter, or a man not fit to sit in the assembly. Nineteen of the party against the *Occasional Bill* were chosen, and one Mr. Job How was elected by the interest of the Goosecreek faction, a branch of the former. The French, who were free-holders, voted for them, being induc'd to it, by a Frenchman's being set up for a candidate. They also procur'd masters of ships, particularly Cap. Cole, who lay in the harbour, to vote on their side. This election was made in the town, and the faction gave out, an Assembly was chosen, who would repeal the Church-act, and not pay the Augustino debt, threatening if they did, the house and town should quickly be too hot to hold them.

In Colliton county, there were about 14 men would qualify themselves: Therefore none of the dissenters

appear'd, and there were but 10 votes out of 200 that appear'd at the election. The 10 electors voted for 14 candidates, and the sheriff return'd 10 that had the majority of votes.

On Jan. 2. 1705. the members met, but not enough to make a house, and choose a speaker. Mr. Stephens, one of the members, ask'd Mr. How, in the Governour's presence, to attend; but he refus'd. Before night the house was compleat, and waited on the Governour, and ask'd if he would direct them to choose a speaker? He answer'd, he thought 't was too late, but if they would venture they must do it with speed, for he was not well, and 't would endanger his health to sit up. So they presently chose Mr. Seabrook, and presented him to the Governour, who approv'd of the choice.

The next day the house met, the speaker in the chair, and the members were call'd upon to qualify themselves: Six did, and three more were ready to do it, and debates arising about qualifying, the house adjourn'd.

The house meeting again, a report was, as 't is said, industriously spread, that the members had forfeited 50*l*. a man for adjourning before they were qualify'd. Mr. How and Mr. Wiggington attended in their places, and offer'd to qualify themselves; but Mr. Bornwell coming with a message, the house waited on the Governour; who spoke to this purpose:

“GENTLEMEN,

“You are building on a wrong foundation, and then the superstructure will never stand; for you have dissolv'd your selves by adjourning, before there was a competent number of members to adjourn, and I cannot dissolve you if I would, you not being a house. All this I know very well, as being my self many years a



member of the House of Commons in England; and therefore as I am head, I would advise you to go back no more to the house, but go every man about his own business: For if you should persist in settling and making laws, besides incurring the penalties of the act, the laws would be of no force," &c.

The speaker refus'd to return to the chair, and the members dispers'd. The Governour and Council disowning the Assembly, Mr. Wiggington declar'd, 'T was his opinion the house was dissolv'd. But their dissolution was aggravated, by the pleasure the government took in making them *Felo de se*, their own murderers.

Then another Assembly was call'd, the choice of which was carry'd on with greater violence than the former. Job How, Esq; was chosen speaker, and the members for the most part qualify'd themselves according to the qualifying act. The faction had not then heard of the proceedings against them in England, which indeed were not come to a conclusion. They continu'd their irregularities as if they were the most innocent men in the province, and the only true patriots. They pass'd an act for their continuance two years after the death of the present Governour, or the succession of a new one: The reason is told us in the preamble, "Whereas the Church of England has of late been so happily establish'd among them, fearing by the succession of a new Governour, the Church may be either undermin'd, or wholly subverted, to prevent that calamity befalling them, be it enacted," &c. Mr. Job How, speaker of the Assembly, dying some time after, Col. William Rhett was chosen in his place. But what has been since done in these affairs, we know not more than in general, that the two acts have been repeal'd, and the party who drove things on with such fury, have entirely



lost their credit, and that the Proprietaries are oblig'd to them for the cause now depending ; wherein if they are cast, the government of the province will be forfeited to the Crown. They may thank themselves for it, or at least their late Palatine the Lord Granville ; for since the foregoing pages were written, that Lord dy'd.

How things may be manag'd now, is not difficult to be foreseen, from the good intelligence between the persons we have just mention'd ; and the fall of this faction is a terrible example to all colonies, not to let any prejudice or passion hurry them on to do things which they cannot answer to their superiours in England.

'T is not yet known who will be Palatine of this province, there being some disputes in the succession. 'T is suppos'd the Lord Craven will succeed the late Lord Granville, who assign'd his Propriety to the Duke of Beaufort.

## CHAPTER II.

*Containing a Geographical Description of Carolina ; as also an account of the Climate, Soil, Product, Trade, First Inhabitants, &c.*

'T is very well known, that the province of Carolina has been a long time divided into two separate governments, the one call'd *North Carolina*, and the other *South Carolina* ; but the latter being the more populous, goes generally under the denomination of *Carolina*, and as such we have treated of it in the foregoing pages. The Proprietaries of *North Carolina* are the Proprietaries of *South Carolina* ; tho' the Governours are different, in other things they are exactly the same. And we shall

put them together in the geographical description; as also in our account of the climate, soil, product, trade, first inhabitants, &c.

Carolina, as has been said, contains all the coast of *North America*, between 31 and 36 degrees of northern latitude. Its breadth is not to be computed, King Charles II. having granted the Proprietors all the land westward in a direct line from the above-mention'd degrees to the South Seas. 'T is in length three hundred miles. Its situation is most convenient for trade, the coast pleasant and safe, not stormy, or frozen in the winter.

As to the climate, Mr. Archdale says of it, "Carolina is the northern part of Florida, viz. from 29 degrees to  $36\frac{1}{2}$ , and is indeed the very centre of the habitable part of the northern hemisphere; for taking it to be habitable from the equinoctial to 64 degrees, the centre of Carolina lies in about 32, which is about the middle of 64, lying parallel with the Land of Canaan, and may be call'd the temperate zone comparatively, as not being pester'd with the violent heats of the more southern colonies, or the extremes and violent colds of the more northern settlements. Its production answers the title of Florida, quia Regio est Florida. Carolina North and South is divided into 6 counties; of which two are in North Carolina, Albemarle and Clarendon; and four in South, Craven, Berkley, Colliton, and Cartarett counties."\*

The first is Albemarle county, to the north, bordering on *Virginia*. 'T is water'd by Albemarle river; and in this part of the country lies the island Roanoke, where Philip Amidas and Arthur Barlow, whom Sir Walter Rawleigh sent to *Virginia*, landed. This county

\* Diss. of Car. p. 6.



may be said to belong to *Virginia*, as New England, &c. did, which justifies King Charles's grant. When Carolina was first settled, Albemarle was more planted than any of the other counties, and consisted of near 300 families. But the plantations upon Ashley river in time grew upon it so much, that most of the planters here remov'd thither. This river is full of creeks on both sides of it, which for breadth deserve the name of rivers, but they do not run far into the country. At Sandy Point, it divides it self into two branches, Noratoke and Notaway; and in the North Point lives an Indian nation, call'd the Mataromogs. Next to Albemarle is Pantegoe river; between them is Cape Hattoras, mention'd in the History of Virginia. Next to it is Neuse river. The Coranines, an Indian nation, inhabit the country about Cape Look-out.

Next to Albemarle is Clarendon County, in which is the famous Promontory, call'd Cape Fear, at the mouth of Clarendon River, call'd also Cape Fear River. Hereabouts, a colony from Barbadoes formerly settled. The Indians in this neighbourhood are reckon'd the most barbarous of any in the province. The next river is nam'd Waterey River, or Winyan, about 25 leagues distant from Ashley River: 'T is capable of receiving large Ships, but inferior to Port Royal, nor is yet inhabited. There's another small river between this and Clarendon river call'd Wingon river, and a little settlement honour'd with the name of *Charles Town*, but so thinly inhabited, that 't is not worth taking notice of. We come now to South *Carolina*, which is parted from North by Zantee river. The adjacent Country is call'd

Craven County; it is pretty well inhabited by English and French; of the latter there's a settlement on Zantee river, and they were very instrumental in the ir-



regular election of the *Unsteady Assembly*. The next river to Zantee is Sewee river; where some Families from New England settled: And in the year 1706, the French landing there, they were vigorously oppos'd by this little colony; who beat off the invaders, having forced them to leave many of their companions dead behind them. This county sends 10 members to the assembly. We now enter

Berkley county, passing still from North to South. The Northern parts of this shire are not planted, but the Southern are thick of plantations, on account of the two great rivers, Cooper and Ashley. On the North coast there's a little river call'd Bowal river; which, with a Creek, forms an island, and off the coasts are several isles, named the hunting-islands, and Sillivant's isle. Between the latter and Bowal river, is a ridge of hills which, from the nature of the soil is called the Sand-hills. The river Wando waters the North-west parts of this county, and has several good plantations upon it, as Col. Daniel's on the South side, and Col. Dearsby's lower down on the North. It runs into Cooper river, near the latter, and they both unite their streams with Ashley river at *Charles Town*. The late assembly enacted "That a church should be built on the South-east of Wando river, and another upon the neck of land, lying on the North-west of Wando," but we do not see that this act was obey'd.

*Charles Town*, the capital of this province, is built on a neck of land between Ashley and Cooper rivers, but lying most on Cooper river, having a creek on the North side, and another on the South. It lies in 32 deg. 40 min. N. lat. 2 leagues from the sea. This is the only free port in the province, which is a great discouragement to it, and a vast injury to trade: "T is for-

tify'd more for beauty than strength." It has 6 Bastions, and a line all round it. Towards Cooper river are Blake's Bastion, Granville Bastion, a Half Moon, and Craven Bastion. On the South creek are the Pallisades, and Ashley Bastion; on the North a line; and facing Ashley river are Colliton Bastion, Johnson's cover'd Half-Moon, with a draw-bridge in the line, and another to the Half-Moon, Carterett Bastion is next to it. If all these works are well made and can be well mann'd, we see no reason why they should not defend as well as beautify the town; which is a market town, and thither the whole product of the province is brought for sale. Neither is its trade inconsiderable; for it deals near 1000 miles into the continent: However, 't is unhappy in a bar, that admits no ships above 200 tuns. Its situation is very inviting, and the country about it agreeable and fruitful: The highways extremely delightful, especially that call'd Broad-way, which for three or four miles make a road and walk "so pleasantly green, that" \* says my author, "I believe no prince in Europe, by all his art, can make so pleasant a sight for the whole year." There are several fair streets in the town, and some very handsome buildings; as Mr. Landgrave Smith's house on the key, with a draw-bridge and wharf before it; Col. Rhett's on the key: also Mr. Boon's, Mr. Loggan's, Mr. Schinking's, and 10 or 12 more, which deserve to be taken notice of. As for public edifices, the church is most remarkable: 'T is large and stately enough; but the number of the professors of the Anglicane worship encreasing daily, the auditory begin to want room, and another church. This is dedicated to St. Philip; and by the act, which appointed the high commission court, 't was enacted,

\* Archd. p. 9.



“ That Charles Town, and the Neck between Cooper and Ashley river, as far up as the plantation of John Bird, Gent. on Cooper river, inclusive, is, and from henceforth shall for ever be a distinct parish, by the name of St. Philip's in Charles Town; and the church and cæmetry then in this town were enacted to be the parish church and church-yard of St. Philip's in Charles Town. Mr. Williams was the first Church of England minister in Carolina: A person of whom since Mr. Marston has said so much, we shall say no more. One Mr. Warmel was sent over after him. The Reverend Mr. Samuel Marshal was the first establish'd minister at Charles Town; and his successor was Mr. Edward Marston, the present rector of St. Philip's; he came over seven years ago. Mr. Kendal, minister of Bermudas, was invited to this colony; and Mr. Corbin, an acquaintance of Mr. Marston's, coming by chance, he got him settled in this province.

The Society for Propagating the Gospel sent over one Mr. Thomas, to convert the Roman Catholick Indians; *but he did not obey his mission.*\* On the contrary, 't was by his influence on some men of interest here, that Mr. Kendal was displac'd: Upon which he went distracted.

Mr. Warmell was also us'd so ill by him, that he also dy'd distracted; and Mr. Corbin, was forc'd to leave the colony, by the causeless quarrels of the inhabitants; in which the dissenters had the least hand. 'T was by their procurement that the 150*l.* a year, &c. was settled on the orthodox minister of this church. The church stands near the cover'd Half Moon.

\* See Mr. Marston's Letter to Dr. Stanhope, Part II. of Case of Dissens. p. 58.



There's a publick library in this town, and a free-school has been long talk'd of: Whether founded or not, we have not learn'd. The library is kept by the minister for the time being. It owes its rise to Dr. Thomas Bray; as do most of the American libraries, for which he zealously solicited contributions in England.

Not far off, by Cartarett Bastion, is the Presbyterian meeting-house; of which Mr. Archibald Stobe is minister. Between Colliton and Ashley Bastion is the Anabaptist Meeting-house, Mr. William Screven minister. The French church is in the chief street: Besides which there is a Quakers meeting-house, in the suburbs of it, properly so call'd, on the other side of the draw-bridge, in the Half Moon, toward Ashley river.

To the southward is the watch-house; and the most noted plantations in the neighbourhood of Charles Town, are Ferguson's Underwood's, Gilbertson and Garnett's.

We may see by this description that the town is full of dissenters, and would flourish more, were not the inhabitants uneasy under the government there. For one may imagine they who fled from England, to avoid persecution, cannot be well pleas'd to meet with it in America; or to cross the Atlantick, to live under oppression abroad, while their relations and friends at home enjoy all the blessings of a peaceful and gentle administration.

There are at least 250 families in this town, most of which are numerous, and many of them have 10 or 12 children in each; in the whole amounting to about 3000 souls.

In Charles Town the Governour generally resides,

the Assembly sit, the courts of judicature are held, the publick offices are kept, and the business of the province is transacted.

The neck of land between Cooper and Ashley rivers is about 4 miles over; and the banks of both of these are well planted. The chief settlements on Cooper river are Mathew's, Green's, Gray's, Starkey's, Grimboll's Dickeson's, and Izard's; the latter on Turkey Creek. About a mile from thence is the mouth of Goose-Creek, which is also very well planted. Here Mr. William Corbin above-mention'd liv'd, and had a congregation of Church of England men; and one of the churches propos'd to be built by the Assembly which pass'd the two fatal acts we have spoken of, was to be erected.

Mr. Thomas, a missionary sent by the Society before-mention'd, settled here, by Capt. How's and Col. Moor's solicitations; as did Mr. Stackhouse, and the Reverend Dr. Lejau.

Mr. Marston in his letter to the Reverend Dr. Stanhope, accuses Mr. Thomas of being the occasion of the ill usage that made Mr. Kendal run distracted. He complains he never had university education, saying, "That the best service your society can do this young man, Mr. Thomas, is, to maintain him a few years at one of our universities, where he may better learn the principles and government of the Church of England, &c. and some other useful learning, which I am afraid he wants."

Sir John Yeaman's, and Mr. Landgrave Bellenger's plantations are here; as also Col. Gibb's, Mr. Schinking's, and Colliton's company. Between this and Back river are Col. Moor's and Col. Quarry's plantations.

Back river falls in Cooper river, about 2 miles above



Goose-Creek, and its western branch a little higher. Here another church was propos'd to be built. The most noted plantations are Capt. Comming's, and Sir Nathaniel Johnson's, bordering on the barony of Mr. Thomas Colliton.

We must now take a view of Ashley river, where we first meet with Mr. Landgrave West's plantation on one side, and Col. Gibb's on the other. Mr. Baden's over against Col. Godfrey's; Mr. Simond's opposite to Dr. Trevillian's; and Mr. Pendarvis's to Mr. West's, Mr. Colliton's to Mr. Marshal's, and others almost contiguous.

This part of the country belongs to the Lord Shaftesbury. On the south-west of Ashley river is the great Savana. One of the churches intended to be erected in this county, was to have been built on Ashley river.

Dorchester is in this shire, bordering on Colliton county. 'T is a small town, containing about 350 souls. There's a meeting-house belonging to the independants, the paster of which is Mr. John Lord. Next to it is Stono river, which divides Berkley from Colliton county, to which we must now proceed, observing only that Berkley county sends ten members to the Assembly. The same does

Colliton county; which Stono river waters, and is join'd by a cut, near Mr. Blake's plantation, to Wadmoolaw river. The north-east parts of this division of the province is full of Indian settlements; and the Stono and other rivers, form an island, call'd Boone's Island, a little below Charles Town, which is well planted and inhabited. The two chief rivers in this county are North Edistow, and South Edistow. At the mouth of the latter is Col. Paul Grimboll's plantation; and for two or three miles up the river, the plan-



tations are thick on both sides, as they continue for three or four miles higher on the north side, and branching there, the river meets with the North Edistow.

Two miles higher is Wilton, by some call'd New London, a little town, consisting of about 80 houses. Landgrave Moreton, Mr. Blake, Mr. Boon, Landgrave Axtel, and other considerable planters, have settlements in this neighbourhood, which is Sir John Colliton's precinct.

A church was to have been built on the south side of the Stono, had that project gone on, and the act taken effect. This county has 200 freeholders, that vote in election for Parliament men. There's an Orthodox church in this precinct, of which Mr. Williams is minister.

Carterett county is not yet inhabited, but is generally esteem'd to be the most fruitful and pleasant part of the province; this and Colliton county are distinguish'd from the other by the name of the *Southward*. In it is the great river Cambage, which joining with the river May, forms with the sea Island Edelano.

The country upon the river May was inhabited by the Westoes, an Indian nation already mention'd. There's a pleasant lake and valley in it; and the first English that came to Carolina, thought of settling hereabouts; but the Indians advis'd them to the contrary, because the harbour of Port Royal was the finest in Florida, and would have tempted the Spaniards to disturb them.

The Scots settled here, under the Lord Cardross, but were soon forc'd to abandon their settlements, as has been elsewhere hinted. Port Royal river lies 20 leagues from Ashley river, to the south, in 31 degrees, 45 minutes, north latitude. It has a bold entrance, 17 foot

low water on the bar. The harbour is large, commodious, and safe for shipping, and runs into a fine fruitful country, preferable to the other parts of Carolina. It spends its self, by various branches, into other large rivers. This port is not 200 miles from Augustino, and would be a great curb to the Spaniards there, where their settlement is not very considerable.

Next to it is the river of May, and then San Mattæo; which is the last of any note in the English Florida, a name this province highly deserves.

The air of this country is healthy, and soil fruitful,\* of a sandy mould, which near the sea appears ten times more barren than it proves to be. There's a vast quantity of vines in many parts on the coasts, bearing abundance of grapes, where one would wonder they should get nourishment. Within land the soil is more mix'd with a blackish mould, and its foundation generally clay, good for bricks.

Its products are the chief trade of the inhabitants, who send it abroad, according as the market offers; and 't is in demand in America or Europe. But the chief commerce from hence is to Jamaica, Barbadoes. and the Leward Islands. Yet their trade to England is very much encreas'd; for notwithstanding all the discouragements the people lie under, seventeen ships came last year, laden from Carolina, with rice, skins, pitch, and tar, in the Virginia fleet, besides stragling ships.

Its principal commodities are provisions, as beef, pork, corn, pease, butter, tallow, hides, tann'd leather, hogs-head and barrel staves, hoops, cotton, silk; besides what they send for England. Their timber trees, fruit

\* Arch. p. 8.



trees, plants, and animals, are much the same with those in Virginia; in which history may be seen a large account of them: But since Mr. Archdale has been a little particular in his, and has added a short description of the natives, &c. we will communicate what he says to the reader.

“T is beautify'd with odoriferous woods, green all the year; as pine, cedar, and cypress. T is naturally fertile, and easy to manure. Were the inhabitants industrious, riches would flow in upon them; for I am satisfy'd, a person with 500*l.* discreely laid out in England, and again prudently manag'd in Carolina, shall in a few years live in as much plenty, as a man of 300*l.* a year in England; and if he continues careful, not covetous, shall increase to great riches, as many there are already witnesses, and many more might have been, if luxury and intemperance had not ended their days.

“As to the air, 't is always serene, and agreeable to any constitutions, as the first planters experienc'd. There is seldom any raging sickness, but what is brought from the southern colonies; as the late sickness was, which rag'd A. D. 1706. and carry'd off abundance of people in Charles Town, and other places.

“Intemperance also has occasion'd some distempers. What may properly be said to belong to the country is, to have some gentle touches of agues and fevers in July and August, especially to new comers. It has a winter season, to beget a new spring. I was there,” adds my author, “at twice, five years, and had no sickness, but what I got by a careless violent cold; and indeed I perceiv'd that the fevers and agues were generally gotten by carelessness in cloathing, or intemperance.

“Every thing generally grows there that will grow in any part of Europe, their being already many sorts of



fruits, as apples, pears, apricocks, nectarines, &c. They that once tast of them, will despise the watry washy tast of those in England. There's such plenty of them, that they are given to the hogs. In 4 or 5 years they come from a stone to be bearing trees.

'All sorts of grain thrive in *Carolina*, as wheat, barley, peas, &c. And I have measur'd some wheat-ears 7 or 8 of our inches long. It produces the best rice in the known world, which is a good commodity for returns home; as is also pitch, tar, buck, doe, bear skins, and furs, though the last not so good as the Northern colonies.

"It has already such plenty of provisions, that it in a great measure furnishes Barbadoes, Jamaica, &c. There are vast numbers of wild ducks, geese, teal; and the sea and rivers abound in fish. That which makes provisions so cheap, is the shortness of the winter: For having no need to mow for winter fodder, they can apply their hands in raising other commodities.

"The rivers are found to be more navigable than 't was at first believed; and t' was then prudently contriv'd, not to settle on the most navigable; but on Ashley and Cooper river, those entrances are not so bold as the others; so that enemies and pirates have been dishearten'd in their designs to disturb that settlement.

"The new settlers have now great advantages over the first planters, since they can be supply'd with stocks of cattle and corn at reasonable rates."

I shall conclude this account of *Carolina*, with an extract of a letter from thence, from a person of credit;

in whose words I communicate it to the publick : He speaks of the *Southward*.

“The many lakes we have up and down breed a multitude of geese, and other water-fowl. All along Port-Royal river, and in all this part of *Carolina*, the air is so temperate, and the seasons of the year so regular, that there's no excess of heat or cold, nor any troublesome variety of weather : For tho' there is every year a kind of winter, yet it is both shorter and milder than that at Ashley or Cooper river ; and passes over insensibly, as if there was no winter at all. This sweet temperature of air, causes the banks of this river to be cover'd with various kinds of lovely trees ; which being perpetually green, present a thousand landships to the eye, so fine, and so diversify'd, that the sight is entirely charm'd with them. The ground is very low in most places near the river ; but rises gradually, at a distance, with little hills adjoining to fruitful plains, all cover'd with flowers, without so much as a tree to interrupt the prospect. Beyond these are beautiful vales, cloath'd with green herbs, and a continual verdure, caus'd by the refreshing rivulets that run through them. There are a great many thickets, which produce abundance of simples. The Indians make use of them for the cure of their diseases. There are also sarsaparilla, cassia trees, gums, and rosin, very good for wounds and bruises ; and such a prodigious quantity of honey, which the bees make every where, that the store of it is not to be exhausted. Of this they make excellent spirits, and mead as good as malaga sack. The bees swarm five or six times. There's a kind of tree, from which there runs an oil of extraordinary virtue, for the curing wounds. And another tree, which yields a balm, thought to be scarcely inferior to that of *Mecca*.”



Silk is come to a great importance here, some families making 40 or 50 pound a year, and their plantation work not neglected, their little Negro children being serviceable in feeding the silk-worms. And we must do Sir Nathaniel Johnson the justice, to own he has been the principal promoter of this improvement, as also of the vineyards. He makes yearly 3 or 400*l*. in silk only.

But 't is objected, Since the climate is so proper, since grapes are so plentiful, and the wine they make so good, why is there not more of it? why do we not see some of it?

To which I answer, That the inhabitants either think they can turn their hands to a more profitable culture, or impose upon us in their reports; for I would not think them so weak, as to neglect making good wine, and enough of it, if they could, and thought it worth their while.

They manufacture their silk with wool, and make druggets. The French protestants have set up a linnen manufacture; and good romalls are made here.

A French dancing-master settling in Craven county, taught the Indians country-dances, to play on the flute and hautboit, and got a good estate; for it seems the barbarians encourag'd him with the same extravagance, as we do the dancers, singers, and fiddlers, his countrymen.

Tho' we have said enough of the Virginian Indians, who are much the same with the Carolinian; yet since we find Mr. Archdale speaks of them in particular, let the reader see what he has said of 'em.

"Providence was visible in thinning the Indians, to make room for the English. There were two potent nations, the Westoes and Sarannas, who broke out into



an unusual civil war before the English arriv'd; and from many thousands reduc'd themselves to a small number. The most cruel of them, the Westoes, were driven out of the province; and the Sarannas continu'd good friends, and useful neighbours to the English. It pleas'd God also to send unusual sicknesses among them; as the small-pox, &c. The Pemlico Indians in North Carolina, were lately swept away by a pestilence; and the Caranine, by war. The natives are somewhat tawny, occasion'd chiefly by oiling their skins, and by the naked rays of the sun. They are generally streight body'd, comely in person, quick of apprehension, and great hunters; by which they are not only very serviceable, by killing deer, to procure skins for trade with us; but those that live in country plantations, procure of them the whole deer's flesh, and they will bring it many miles for the value of about 6*d.* and a wild turkey of 40 pound for the value of 2*d.*"

They have learn'd one of their worst vices of the English, which is, drinking; and that occasions quarrels among them, one of which we have mention'd in the time of Mr. Archdale's government. As to what he would excite us, to their conversion to Christianity, 't is a project which, like a great many other very good ones, we rather wish than hope to see effected.

Mr. Thomas was sent to instruct the Yammokees in the Christian religion, and had an allowance of 50*l.* a year from the before-mention'd society, besides other allowances: But finding it an improper season, his mission is respited; the reason is, those Indians revolted to the English from the Spaniards and not being willing to embrace Christianity, 't is fear'd they would return to their old confederates, if any means were made use of to that purpose.

This country is in a very flourishing condition; the families are very large; in some are 10 or 12 children; and the number of souls in all is computed to be 12000. The children are set to work at 8 years old. The ordinary women take care of cows, hogs, and other small cattle, make butter and cheese, spin cotton and flax, help to sow and reap corn, wind silk from the worms, gather fruit, and look after the house. 'Tis pity this people should not be easy in their government; for all their industry, all the advantages of the climate, soil, and situation for trade, will be useless to them, if they live under oppression; and Pensylvania will have no occasion to complain, that she tempts away her inhabitants; being a new beauty, a fairer, and consequently a powerful rival.

We shall conclude this history and account of *Carolina*, with a list of the present proprietaries, and chief officers of this colony.

William Lord Craven,  
Henry Duke of Beaufort,  
The Honourable Maurice  
Ashley, Esq; Brother to  
the Earl of Shaftsbury,

} Proprietaries.

John Lord Cartarett,  
Sir John Colliton, Baronet,  
Joseph Blake, Esq;  
John Archdale, Esq;  
Nicholas Trott, Esq;

Sir Nath. Johnson, Governour, salary 200*l.* a year.

Col. James Moor,  
Col. Thomas Broughton,  
Col. Rob. Gibbs,  
Mr. Nich. Trott;  
Mr. — Ward,  
Mr. Hen. Noble,

} Counsellors.

Speaker of the Assembly, William Rhett, Esq.

The Secretary, — Ward, Esq; his salary 60*l.* a year.

The Chief Justice, Mr. Trott, 60*l.*

The Judge of the Admiralty-Court, Col. James Moor,  
40*l.*

Surveyor General, — How, Esq; 40*l.*

Attorney General Col. James Moor, 60*l.*

Receiver General, the same, 60*l.*

Naval Officer, Mr. Trott, 40*l.*

Collector of the Customs, Col. Thomas Broughton.

Agent for the Colony in England, Mr. Joseph Boone.





A

SHORT DESCRIPTION

OF THE

PROVINCE OF SOUTH CAROLINA:

WITH AN ACCOUNT OF

THE AIR, WEATHER, AND DISEASES,

AT

CHARLESTOWN,

WRITTEN IN THE YEAR 1763.

---

LONDON:

Printed for JOHN HINTON, at the King's Arms, in Paternoster Row.

MDCCLXX.

PROVINCE OF SOUTH CAROLINA  
ADVERTISEMENT.

THE following short account of South Carolina was first written for the information and private use of a gentleman in England, without any intention of its being ever exposed to the public view; and that it is now published is not owing to any value the author puts upon it, who is very sensible of its imperfections, but to the desires of some, who imagine, that the medical part may be of use to those who may become settlers in our new colonies of East and West Florida, where the climate and soil much resemble South Carolina; consequently the diseases, and the cure of them, will be little different. If it ever proves of any use to them, the writer, who is an author with reluctance, will think himself sufficiently repaid for his trouble; and, if the critics will forgive this first essay, he promises never to trespass this way again, being determined,

"Cum tot ubique

Libris occurras, perituras parcere Chartas."

WITHIN THE YEAR 1792

LONDON

Printed by J. Smith, in Pall-mall.



ACCOUNT  
OF THE  
SITUATION, AIR, WEATHER, AND DISEASES  
OF  
SOUTH CAROLINA.

---

CHAPTER I.

*Of its Situation, Soil, and some of its Natural Productions.*

*South-Carolina* is part of that extensive country on the Eastern Shore of *North-America*, named by the *Spaniards Florida*, and by the *English*, in the days of Queen *Elizabeth*, *Virginia*.

By the late regulation of the south provinces, it is bounded on the south and west by the river *Savannah*, whose mouth is in latitude 31 deg. 52 min. north ; and is divided from *North-Carolina* by a little river, about thirty miles south of *Cape-Fear*, lat. 35, towards the sea ; and more to the westward, by a line whose situation is not yet exactly fixed. It formerly extended south to the 29th degree, including the province of *Georgia*, whose north bounds, following the course of the *Savannah* river, reduces this province to a small compass, by meeting the line, that, when fixed, will divide the two

*Carolina's*, with an acute angle, near the *Cherokee Indian* town of *Keowee*, about three hundred and twenty miles distant from *Charles-Town*. The *French* made a Settlement here, which had a short duration, in the reign of *Charles IX*, under their admiral *Coligni*, who named the country *La Caroline*, in honour of that prince. It was settled by the *English* in the year 1663, by a grant from king *Charles the Second*, after whom it is named, to the Earl of *Clarendon* and others: A plan for the Government of it was designed by that great statesman *Anthony Ashley Cooper*, Earl of *Shaftesbury*; and digested into form by the excellent Mr. *Locke*; whence great expectations were raised: but, however specious their Plan might appear, experience soon shewed its impracticability, and pointed out the necessity of getting rid of it by putting the province into the hands and under the protection of King *George the Second*.\* This remedy has answered all that the most sanguine could have expected from it; it has long thrown off that drooping and languishing state its first fine-spun constitution kept it under; and it is now become one of the most opulent and thriving among the *British Colonies*.

The surface of the earth here, and in all the maritime parts of *North America*, exhibits a lively representation of the state of nature, as described by Sir *William Temple*, in his miscellanies; it is almost certain, by the appearance the level surface gives, that the sea was once possessed of this region, and, upon its subsiding, left the different strata to consolidate, according to the rules of specific gravity; and this I am confirmed in by

\* This change was promoted by the inability of the lords proprietors to protect their colony from the revenues arising out of their rents, and their reluctance to advance any money out of their estates in *England* towards the expence.

examining wells, pits, and surfaces of bluffs," where either rivers or speets of rain have worn them down perpendicularly. Without doubt, all over was left a plain extent, upon the first recess of the sea ; but, the fountains taking their rise from the mountains, in seeking their way towards the ocean; wherever they met with either resistance or cavity they bedded, and thereby formed the immense number of morasses, savannahs, cane and cypress galls, that are every-where interspersed in the country, and thereafter forced their channels to the sea.

This low, flat and moist surface extends sixty or seventy miles back from the ocean ; about this distance the ground begins to rise, and little hills appear gradually above one another, till they reach their majestic summit called the *Blue Mountain*, the pride of the *Apalachian* hills, about three hundred and fifty miles west of the *Atlantic* sea : here,

"the mournful larch

Its drooping foliage hangs ; the stately pines  
Their boughs together mix'd, in close array,  
(Wedg'd like the ancient phalanx) from the axe  
Rear their tall heads secure, on craggy cliffs  
Rooted, or over precipices dread,  
Waving their umbrage broad."

KEATE.

The soil is known and distinguished by its natural productions, and may be divided into four kinds, *viz.* pine-land, oak-land, swamps, and marshes.

The pine-land is by far of the greatest extent ; near the sea, the soil is of a dry whitish sand, producing a great variety of shrubs, and a coarse kind of grass, that cattle are not fond of eating ; though here and there is a little of a better kind, especially in the meadows called savannahs ; it naturally bears two kinds of fruit, *viz.*



whortleberries, much like those of *England*; and chinquopin nuts a kind of dwarf chesnut, about the size of an acorn; it likewise bears peaches well, and the white mulberry, which serves to feed silk-worms; the black mulberry is about the size of a black cherry, and has much the same flavour.

The oakland commonly lies in narrow streaks, between pineland and swamps, creeks or rivers; the soil is a blackish sand, producing several kinds of oak, bay, laurel, ash, walnut, gum-tree, dog-tree, hickory, &c. On the choicest part of the land grown parfimon trees, a few black mulberry and *American* cherry trees; wild grapes grow on this land, and are of two sorts, both red; *viz.* fox-grapes, about the size of a small cherry; and cluster-grapes, about the bigness of a white currant; this land is justly esteemed the most valuable for corn or indigo.

A swamp is any low, watery place, that is covered with trees or canes; there are three kinds of them, cypress, river, and cane swamps: they are called the golden mines of *Carolina*; from them all our rice is produced, consequently they are the source of infinite wealth, and will always reward the industrious and persevering planter.

Marshes are of two sorts, hard and soft; they abound much on the sea Islands: the soft and salt marshes have as yet been of little use, on account of the great expence of damming out the salt-water; the hard produce a grass that is esteemed good feeding for horses.

The *Apalachian* mountains are said to have a large share of the mineral kingdom; I have seen several pieces of copper, lead, and sulphur ores, brought from thence: I believe, from accounts I have received, that copper may be had in great plenty; but the high price of labour, with the certain and easy livelihood obtained

here by other means, has hitherto rendered those subterranean riches useless and neglected. These mountains are more extensive than the *Alps* and *Apennine* added together ; they stretch from the back of the provinces of *New-England* almost to the cape of *Florida*, a course of more than fifteen hundred miles :

“ In this wild scene of Nature’s true sublime,  
What prospects rise ! Rocks above rocks appear,  
Mix with the incumbent clouds, and laugh to scorn  
All the proud boasts of art : in purest snow  
Some mantled, others their enormous backs  
Heave high, with forests crown’d ; nor, midst the view,  
Are wanting those who their insulting heads  
Uprear, barren and bleak, as in contempt  
Of vegetative laws.

“ Deep within their bowels lies  
The marble various-vein’d ; and the rich ore  
Winds its slow growth : nor here unfrequent found  
The crystal, catching from its mineral bed  
A changeful tinge, yellow, or red, or green,  
Azure, or violet, wanting strength alone  
To be the gem it mimics.—On these heights  
Blooms many a modest flow’ret, scarcely known  
Even to the vale beneath, tho’ sweet as those,  
That, when proud Rome was mistress of the world,  
Adorn’d the shrines of Flora ; many a shrub  
Of sovereign use, and medicinal herb,  
Spread humbly forth their leaves, by careless foot  
Of savage trampled, till some chance disclose  
Their latent virtues.”

KEATE.

These mountains give rise to many large and navigable rivers. Those that run from the east side all empty themselves into the *Atlantic* ocean ; those that run from the west side mix their streams with the rivers *St. Laurence* and *Mississippi*, or the *Canada* lakes :

“ And, as they glide along, survey their banks  
Circled with mountains, that appear to bend  
Beneath the woods they bear.”



About two hundred miles north-west of *Charles-town*, I observed very large rocks of grey marble, variegated with red or blue veins ; the part above ground generally appeared coarse ; that under ground is no doubt of a better quality. About this place is great plenty of the squamous fissile species of stone, called by the naturalists *Lapis Specularis*, or *Talc* ; it is like so many sheets of paper on the surface of the earth, of a very different shape and size ; is extremely bright and glittering, sometimes clear and transparent, but generally of a beautiful bluish-green colour, and breaks like slate : it is called *Marienglass* in *Russia*, and used for windows and lanthorns all over *Siberia*, and indeed in every part of the *Russian* empire ; it looks more beautiful than glass, and, as it will stand the explosion of cannon, must be preferable to it.—Crystals of a beautiful water inferior only to the diamond, are frequently picked up here. About sixty miles south-east from the *Indian* town of *Keowee*, there is a rocky hill, called *Diamond-Hill* ; where pieces of crystal, in various figures, generally hexagonal, hang, like icicles from the rocks, and seem to be exudations from them in the same manner as gums are from trees ; they require a great force to separate them from the rocks, and are often very large.

The province is well supplied with springs ; some of them are impregnated with iron, and others with sulphur : banks of oyster-shells are met with frequently, at a great distance from the sea ; I saw one, once, about one hundred and thirty miles in-land ; the oyster-shells were of a very large size, many of them petrified, but the greatest number in their natural state : as they are always on the surface of the ground, and upon such places as were formerly certainly possessed by the *Indians*, I see no reason to suppose them the relics of an



inundation, (the general opinion) but that they were brought there by the *Indians*.

There is, 'in many places of the province, variety of clays, of which tobacco-pipes, and the finest earthenware or *China*, may be manufactured ; likewise, marles, boles, nitrous earths, chalk stones, and some bituminous fossils.

## CHAPTER II.

### *Of the Air and Weather.*

The summers are generally dry, clear, calm, and excessive hot ; the autumn moist, warm, and unequal : one minute serene, the next cloudy and tempestuous ; the winter is near the same length as in England, and pretty cool, though the mid-day sun is always warm, even when the evenings and mornings are sharp, and the nights cold : the spring is a most delightful season ; our boundless forests are then cloathed with leaves, and inamelled with aromatic flowers and blossoms of the most lively colours, perfuming the ambient air ; the winged songsters chirping on every bough, with enchanting melody :

“ No gradual bloom is wanting, from the bud,  
First-born of spring, to summer's musky tribes ;  
Nor hyacinths deep purpled, nor jonquils  
Of potent fragrance ; nor narcissus fair,  
As o'er the fabled fountain hanging still ;  
Nor broad carnations ; nor gay spotted pink ;  
Nor shower'd from every bush the damask rose ;  
Infinite numbers, delicacies, smells,  
With hues on hues expression cannot paint :  
The breath of nature, and her endless bloom.

“ Every copse  
Thick wove, and tree irregular, and bush,

Bending with juicy moisture, o'er the heads  
Of the coy choristers, that lodge within  
Are prodigal of harmony : the thrush  
And woodlark, o'er the kind contending throng  
Superior heard, run through the sweetest length  
Of notes.

“ Join'd to these

Innumerable songsters, in the freshening shade  
Of new-sprung leaves, their modulation mix  
Mellifluous. The jay, the rook, the daw,  
And each hard pipe discordant heard alone,  
Aid the full concert : while the stock-dove breathes  
A melancholy murmur, thro' the whole.” THOMSON.

The air is more clear and pure here than in Britain, being seldom darkened with fogs ; the dews, however, are great, especially in the end of summer, and beginning of the fall. The rains are heavy, but commonly short, and observe no particular season or time of the year.

The winds are generally changeable and erratic, blowing from different points of the compass, without any regularity ; about the vernal and autumnal equinoxes, they are commonly very boisterous ; at other seasons moderate. The northerly winds are cold, dry, and healthy ; they disperse fogs and mists, giving a clear sky. The north-west is the coldest we have ; it comes to us over an immense tract of land, and from the snow-capped Apalachian mountains ; whenever it blows the air is cool ; and in the winter it generally brings us frost, and often snow : it is vulgarly and deservedly called the great physician of the country, as by its force it clears the air of the putrid autumnal effluvia, and by its coolness shuts up the pores of the earth and of the trees, keeping in their vapours, the principal sources of the epidemics of the warm season : this refreshing, invigor-

ating, and bracing wind is anxiously expected, about the month of October, by all ; but by those particularly who have the misfortune to be afflicted with the more obstinate intermittents, to whom it generally affords relief: the easterly winds are always cool ; from them we have our most refreshing summer showers : when they blow for any continuance, they occasion coughs and catarrhal fevers. The south and south-west winds are warmest and most unhealthy : in whatever season they blow, the air is foggy and affects the breathing. In summer they are sultry and suffocating ; an excessive dejection of spirits, and debility of body, are then an universal complaint ; if this constitution lasts any considerable time, hysterics, hypo, intermitting and remitting, putrid, slow, or nervous fevers, are produced.

The changes from heat to cold, and *vice versa*, in the spring and fall, are often sudden and considerable, and absolutely depend on the direction and force of the wind: I have sometimes known a difference of more than 20 degrees in Fahrenheit's thermometer in a few hours. In thermometers graduated by his scale, kept in the shade, where the air has free access, the mercury yearly rises in the hot months, to the 96th, sometimes to the 100th degree, and (what is more insupportable) the nights are then very little cooler than the days. In the winter it always falls considerably below the freezing point.

This province is subject to frequent and dreadful tempests of thunder and lightning, in May, June, July and August: I must use the words of the descriptive Mr. Thomson, to give a just idea of the awful appearance of the artillery of the sky, whose reports are so loud and sharp, and frequently destructive, as to confound the most undaunted.



"'T is lightning, fear, and dumb amazement all :  
When, to the startled eye, the sudden glance  
Appears far south, eruptive through the clouds ;  
And, following slower in explosion vast,  
The thunder raises his tremendous voice :  
At first, heard solemn o'er the verge of heaven,  
The tempest growls ; but as it nearer comes,  
And rolls its awful burthen in the wind,  
The lightnings flash a larger curve, and more  
The noise astounds ; till o'er head a sheet  
Of livid flame discloses wide, then shuts  
And opens wider, shuts and opens still  
Expansive, wrapping ether in a blaze ;  
Follows the loosen'd aggravated roar,  
Enlarging, deep'ning, mingling, peal on peal,  
Crush'd horrible, convulsing heaven and earth."

We have suffered little from lightning since the erecting of sharp points in many public buildings, and some private houses of this town, recommended by the ingenious Mr. Franklin of Philad. to draw the electrical fluid (or fire, or by whatever name I ought to call it), from the clouds that are charged with it, and thereby prevent an explosion.

Earthquakes are unknown here, or so trifling as to have passed unnoticed.

There are three remarkable hurricanes remembered by the inhabitants ; the last happened on the 15th of September, 1752. The summer preceding was uncommonly dry and hot ; for several days together, about the middle of July, the mercury in Fareinheit's thermometer always reached ninety-nine or one hundred degrees. Very little rain fell between that time and September the 14th, when the wind in the afternoon began to blow with great violence from the north-east and continued increasing till the morning of the 15th, when its force was irresistible ; it stopped the course of the Gulf

stream, which poured in upon us like a torrent, filling the harbour in a few minutes; before eleven o'clock, A. M. all the vessels in the harbour were on shore, except the *Hornet* man of war, who rode it out by cutting away her masts; all the wharfs and bridges were ruined, and every house and store, &c. upon them beaten down, as were also many houses in the town, with abundance of roofs, chimnies, &c. almost all the tiled or slated houses were uncovered, and great quantities of merchandise, &c. in the stores of the Bay-street, were damaged by their doors being burst open. The town was likewise overflowed, the water having risen ten feet above high-water mark at spring-tides; and nothing was to be seen but ruins of houses, canoes, wrecks of boats, masts, yards, barrels, staves, &c. floating and driving with great violence through the streets, and round about the town: The inhabitants, finding themselves in the midst of a tempestuous sea, the violence of the wind continuing, the tide (according to its common course) being expected to flow, till after one o'clock, and many of the people being up to their necks in water in their houses, began now to despair of life; but (here we must record as signal an instance of the immediate interposition of Divine Providence as ever appeared) they were soon delivered from their apprehensions; for, about ten minutes after eleven o'clock, the wind veered to E. S. E., S. and S. W. very quick, then (though its violence continued, the sea still beating and dashing with amazing impetuosity) the waters fell above five feet in the space of ten minutes; without which sudden and unexpected fall, every house and inhabitant of this town must, in all probability have perished. This shifting of the wind left the stream of the Gulf of Florida, to follow its wonted course; and before



three o'clock, P.M. the hurricane was intirely over; many people were <sup>s</sup>drowned, and others much hurt by the fall of houses: For about forty miles round Charles-town, there was hardly a plantation that did not loose every out-house upon it, and the roads, for years afterwards, were incumbered with trees blown and broken down.

Whirlwinds are sometimes felt here; a most violent one of that kind, commonly known under the title of Typhones, pass'd down Ashley river on the 4th of May, 1761; and fell upon the shipping in Rebellion Road, with such fury as to threaten the destruction of a large fleet, lying there, ready to sail for Europe. This terrible phænomenon was seen by many of the inhabitants of Charles-town, coming down Wappoo-creek, resembling a large column of smoke and vapour, whose motion was very irregular and tumultuous, as well as that of the neighbouring clouds, which appeared to be driving down nearly in the same direction, (from the S. W.) and with great swiftness: The quantity of vapour which composed this impetuous column, and its prodigious velocity, gave it such a surprising momentum, as to plow Ashley river to the bottom, and to lay the channel bare, of which many people were eye-witnesses: When it was coming down Ashley river, it made so great a noise as to be heard by most of the people in town, which was taken by many for a constant thunder; its diameter, at that time, has generally been judged to be about three hundred fathoms, and in heighth, to a person in Broad-street, to be about thirty-five degrees, though it increased in its progress to the road: As it passed the town, it was met by another gust, which came down Cooper river; this was not of equal strength or impetuosity with the other, but, upon their meeting together,



the tumultuous and whirling agitations of the air were seemingly much greater, insomuch that the froth and vapour seemed to be thrown up to the apparent height of thirty-five or forty degrees towards the middle, whilst the clouds, that were now driving in all directions to this place, appear'd to be precipitated, and whirled round, at the same time, with incredible velocity ; just after this, it fell on the shipping in the road, and was scarce three minutes in its passage ; the distance is near two leagues ; five vessels were sunk outright ; his Majesty's ship the *Dolphin* and many others lost their masts. Whether was this done by the immense weight of this column pressing them instantaneously into the deep ? Or was it done by the water being suddenly forced from under them, and thereby letting them sink so low as to be immediately covered and ingulphed by the lateral mass of water ? This tremendous column was seen, at noon, upwards of thirty miles south-west from Charles-town, where it arrived about twenty-five minutes after two, making an avenue in its course of a great width, tearing up trees, houses, and every thing that opposed it ; great quantities of leaves, branches of trees, and even large limbs, were seen furiously driven about, and agitated in the body of the column as it passed along : The sky was overcast and cloudy all the forenoon ; about one o'clock it began to thunder, and continued more or less till three ; the mercury in Fahrenheit's thermometer, at two o'clock, stood at deg. 77 : By four o'clock the wind was quite fallen, the sun shone out, and the sky was clear and serene ; we could scarce believe that such a scene had been so recently exhibited, were not the sinking and dismantled vessels so many striking and melancholy proofs of its reality.

That kind of meteor known by the name of *Aurora*

*Borealis*, or *Northern Lights*, are sometimes seen in the autumn, and generally denote warm and dry weather; they appear in the form of large pillars or streamers, a little to the north of the place where the sun sets in June; their motions are commonly languid, and they soon disappear. I have not observed them to rise more than twenty-five degrees above the horizon. Halo's round both the sun and moon are frequent in dry weather, and are imagined signs of approaching rain.

### CHAPTER III.

#### *Of the Inhabitants and their Food.*

The inhabitants are either white or black; the white are between thirty and forty thousand; all the males, from sixteen years of age to sixty, are mustered, and carry arms in the militia regiments, and form together a body of about seven thousand: Their complexion is little different from the inhabitants of Britain, and they are generally of a good stature and well-made, with lively and agreeable countenances; sensible, spirited, and open-hearted, and exceed most people in acts of benevolence, hospitality, and charity. The men and women who have a right to the class of gentry (who are more numerous here than in any other colony in North America) dress with elegance and neatness: The personal qualities of the ladies are much to their credit and advantage; they are generally of a middling stature, genteel and slender; they have fair complexions, without the help of art, and regular features; their air is easy and natural; their manner free and unaffected;



their eyes sparkling, penetrating, and inchantly sweet: They are fond of dancing, an exercise they perform very gracefully; and many sing well, and play upon the harpsicord and guitar with great skill; nor are they less remarkable for goodness of heart, sweetness of disposition, and that charming modesty and diffidence, which command respect whilst they invite love, and equally distinguish and adorn the sex—in short, all who have the happiness of their acquaintance, will acquit me of partiality, when I say they are excelled by none in the practice of all the social virtues, necessary for the happiness of the other sex, as daughters, wives, or mothers.

The weather is much too hot in summer, for any kind of diversion or exercise, except riding on horseback, or in chaises, (which few are without) in the evenings and mornings; and this is much practised. In the autumn, winter, and spring, there is variety and plenty of game for the gun or dogs; the gentlemen are not backward in the chase. During this season there is once in two weeks a dancing-assembly in Charles-town, where is always a brilliant appearance of lovely, well-dress'd women: We have likewise a genteel playhouse, where a very tolerable set of actors, called the American company of comedians, frequently exhibit; and often concerts of vocal and instrumental music, generally performed by gentlemen.

The Negro slaves are about seventy thousand; they, with a few exceptions, do all the labour or hard work in the country, and are a considerable part of the riches of the province; they are supposed worth, upon an average, about forty pounds sterling each; And the annual labour of the working slaves, who may be about forty thousand, is valued at ten pounds sterling each. They



are in this climate necessary, but very dangerous domestics, their number so much exceeding the whites; a natural dislike and antipathy, that subsists between them and our Indian neighbours, is a very lucky circumstance, and for this reason: In our quarrels with the Indians however proper and necessary it may be to give them correction, it can never be our interest to extirpate them, or to force them from their lands; their ground would be soon taken up by runaway Negroes from our settlements, whose numbers would daily increase, and quickly become more formidable enemies than Indians can ever be, as they speak our language, and would never be at a loss for intelligence.

The general assembly, about two years ago, (understanding that there was in the treasury a considerable sum of that money appropriated by the general duty act, for the encouragement of poor protestants, to become settlers in the province) passed an act to increase the bounty to be given to each; which is now four pounds sterling to all above the age of twelve years, and two pounds to those who are between two years and twelve, and one pound to all under two years; besides this, his majesty's bounty is one hundred acres of land, wherever they chuse it, provided it has not been granted before, to the head of every family, male or female; and fifty acres for every child, indented servant, or slave, the family consists of. If this act has the desired effect, the security and opulence of the province will be increased, and the adventurers will be pleased to find a change from poverty and distress to ease and plenty; they are invited to a country not yet half settled, where the rivers are crouded with fish, and the forests with game: and no game-act to restrain them from enjoying those bounties of providence, no heavy

taxes to impoverish them, nor oppressive landlords to snatch the hard-earned morsel from the mouth of indigence, and where industry will certainly enrich them.

There is both great plenty and variety of food, for the subsistence of the inhabitants, at reasonable prices. I shall here only name the different sorts, as it will be sufficient for my present purpose; and begin with the vegetables: Of these the Indian corn, or maize, is of general use, being the chief subsistence of the plantation slaves. Rice, which is produced here in great quantity and perfection; upwards of one hundred thousand barrels of it are now exported annually to Europe, to the Northern colonies, and to the West-Indies, each barrel containing between five and six hundred weight. Wheat is cultivated, with much success, by the German protestants, who are settled on the interior parts of the province; they would have been able to supply the province with all the flour we consume, by this time, had they not been interrupted by the Cherokee war. These industrious people distil a palatable brandy from peaches, which they have in great plenty; likewise from potatoes, Indian corn, and rye: But to return to our vegetable food: We have plenty of potatoes, both Irish and Spanish; pumpions, pease, and beans, of different kinds; apples, pears, nectarines, peaches, plums of several sorts, chesnuts, walnuts, olives, pomegranates, oranges, lemons, figs, citrons, melons, with a great variety of other fruits, and many of the European pot-herbs, as cabbages, brocoli, colliflower, &c. &c. In enumerating the animal part of our food, I begin with the fish: Mullet, whiting, black-fish, rock-fish, sturgeon, porgys, trout, bream, and many other sorts of flat fish; likewise oysters, crabs, shrimps, and sometimes



turtle. Black cattle are extremely plentiful, many gentlemen owning from five hundred to fifteen hundred head; the beef is best about Christmas, the stall-fed cattle being then brought to market; the sheep are numerous; poultry and pork we have in plenty, and very good, though I cannot agree with the inhabitants, who believe they have both these of a kind superior to the rest of the world: In the woods and fields are plenty of wild turkeys of a large size, geese, ducks, doves, pigeons, partridges, hares, rabbits, racoons, possums, &c. likewise a beautiful species of deer: The hunting of them is a healthy exercise, and a very entertaining diversion; they are the principal animal food of our back settlers, and of the Indians; and likewise a considerable branch of trade, great quantities of their skins being yearly exported; a small duty laid on them is appropriated for the support and maintenance of the clergy. The buffalo's are sometimes found in the woods near the mountains; but they are not near so numerous as they were a few years ago; they are used as food, though their beef is hard and disagreeable to the palate.

Madeira wine and punch are the common drinks of the inhabitants; yet, few gentlemen are without claret, port, lisbon, and other wines, of the French, Spanish, or Portugal vintages. The ladies, I mention it to their credit, are extremely temperate, and generally drink water; which, in Charles-town, and all places near the sea, is very unwholesome; as the soil is not solid enough to strain it sufficiently, it has always a mixture of sand or earth in it.

Before I finish this chapter, it may not be improper to add, that Indigo \* is cultivated here with much

\* Vid. Chapter VII.



success; between four and five hundred thousand weight of it is yearly exported; and that the soil, in many parts of the province, is very proper for the cultivation of olive-trees and vines, articles that have been hitherto almost totally neglected; a little attention to them would save much money expended on oil and wine, which we now import. The cotton-tree likewise grows naturally in this province, and might be of great use in cloathing the poorer sort of white inhabitants and the Negroes, if any pains were taken to cultivate it. The honourable society for the propagation of arts, manufactures, and commerce, may be assured, that their most sanguine expectations would be gratified in the culture of many other useful commodities, native and exotic, if pursued here with vigour and perseverance; the situation and climate of the colony, and of all other places about the same distance from the equator in both hemispheres, being universally allowed to be the best for the production of all the necessaries and conveniences of life.

#### CHAPTER IV.

##### *Of Charles Town, and the other Towns and Garrisons.*

The province is divided into four counties and nineteen parishes. Charles-town is the metropolis, which is happily situated on a neck of land, or peninsula, formed by two navigable rivers, where they mix their streams, and present us with a large commodious harbour; Ashley-river washes the town on the west and south, and Cooper-river on the east; these rivers run parallel to one another, at about a mile's distance, for a

considerable way into the country, gradually separating to their sources. The streets are broad, straight, and uniform, intersecting one another at right angles ; those that run east and west extend from one river to the other ; the Bay-street which fronts Cooper-river and the ocean, is really handsome, and must delight the stranger who approacheth it from the sea.

There are about eleven hundred dwelling-houses in the town, built with wood or brick ; many of them have a genteel appearance, though generally incumbered with balconies or piazzas ; and are always decently, and often elegantly, furnished ; the apartments are contrived for coolness, a very necessary consideration.

The white inhabitants are about four thousand, and the Negro servants near the same number. I have examined a pretty exact register of the births and burials for fifteen years, and find them, excepting when the small-pox prevailed, nearly equal ; the advantage, though small, is in favour of the births ; though to the burials are added all transient people who die here, as sailors, soldiers, or the inhabitants of the country, whose business or pleasure bring them frequently to this Metropolis. The south-east part of the town fronts the sea, from which it is about three leagues distant, and from whence, in the hot season, we have refreshing breezes, which the flood-tide always brings or increases.

The town is divided into two parishes, St. Philip's and St. Michael's ; St. Philip's church is one of the handsomest buildings in America : It is of brick plastered, and well enlightened on the inside ; the roof is arched except over the galleries ; two rows of Tuscan pillars support the galleries and arch that extend over the body of the church ; the pillars ornamented, on the inside, with fluted Corinthian pilasters, whose capitals



are as high as the cherubims over the center of each arch, supporting their proper cornice: The west end of the church is adorned with four Tuscan columns, supporting a double pediment, which has an agreeable effect; the two side doors, which enter into the belfry, are ornamented with round columns of the same order, which support angular pediments that project a considerable way, and give the church some resemblance of a cross: Pilasters of the same order with the columns are continued round the body of the church; over the double pediment is a gallery with banisters; from this the steeple rises octagonal, with windows in each face of the second course, ornamented with Ionic pilasters, whose intabature supports a balustrade; from this the tower still rises octagonal, with sashed windows on every other face, till it is terminated by a dome, upon which stands a lanthorn for the bells, and from which rises a vane in the form of a cock.

St. Michael's church is built of brick; it is not yet quite finished. It consists of a body of a regular shape, and a lofty and well-proportioned steeple, formed of a tower and spire; the tower is square from the ground, and in this form rises to a considerable height: the principal decoration of the lower part is a handsome portico, with Doric columns, supporting a large angular pediment, with a modilion cornice; over this rises two square rustic courses; in the lower one are small round windows, on the North and South; in the other, small square ones: On the East and West from this the steeple rises octangular, having windows on each face, with Ionic pilasters between each, whose cornice supports a balustrade; the next course is likewise octagonal, has sashed windows and festoons alternately on each face, with pilasters and a cornice, upon which rises a



circular range of Corinthian pillars, with a balustrade connecting them; from whence is a beautiful and extensive prospect over the town and harbour, along the coast, and into the sea, as far as the eye can carry one; this charming prospect is frequently heightened by the appearance of ships, at a distance, sailing towards the port. The body of the steeple is carried up octangular within the pillars, on whose intablature the spire rises, and is terminated by a gilt globe, from which rises a vane, in the form of a dragon: This steeple is one hundred and ninety-two feet in height, and is very useful to the shipping, who see it long before they make any other part of the land; which eminently distinguishes this place from the rest of the coast, where there is a sameness very dangerous to mariners. The church is eighty feet in length, without including the tower and retired place for the altar, and fifty-eight feet wide.

Besides the churches, there are meeting-houses for the members of the church of Scotland, for those called Independents, two for Baptists, one for French, and one for German protestants: Though all of them are neat, large, and convenient, they are too plain to merit particular descriptions.

Near the center of the town is the state-house, a large, commodious brick building; the south front is decorated with four  $\frac{2}{3}$  columns of the composite order, whose capitals are highly finished, supporting a large angular pediment and cornice; it consists of two stories besides the roof; on the lower are the court-room, the secretary's office, and apartments for the house-keeper; on the upper story are two large, handsome rooms; one is for the Governour and Council, the other for the Representatives of the people, with lobbies and rooms for their clerks: The room, called the council-chamber, appears

rather crouded and disgusting, than ornamented and pleasing, by the great profusion of carved work in it; in the upper part of the house or roof is a large room for the provincial armory: Near the state-house is a very neat market-place, well-regulated and plentifully supplied with provisions.

Above three hundred top-sail vessels enter and clear at this port, annually, bringing us necessities and luxuries from every quarter of the globe, and carrying our produce to Europe, the northern colonies, and the West-Indies.

About ten years ago, a plan was approved of for fortifying Charles-town in a very respectable manner, and soon after began to be put in execution, on the south and south-east of the town, but was discontinued without finishing any part of it, though much money had been laid out for that purpose; the town is at present defended, towards the water, by seven batteries or bastions, of which three are considerable ones, connected by courtine lines, having platforms with about one hundred heavy cannon mounted. The old fortification, on the land side, is in ruins; a new work was begun in 1757, a little without the other; the plan was a horn-work, to be built with tappy, and flanked with little batteries and redoubts, at proper distances; the whole to extend from one river to the other, but a stop was put to this likewise, after a considerable progress was made in it, either for want of money, which is probable; or from an opinion, that it was unnecessary: Besides these works, the harbour is defended by Fort-Johnson, about two miles distant from Charles-town, on a sea island, which forms one side of the harbour: It is placed within point-blank shot of the channel, through which the ships must pass in their way to town: The lower battery is on a level

with the water, and has fifteen eighteen-pounders, and five nine-pounders, mounted *en Barbette*; the upper part of this fort is old and very irregular; it has two demi-bastions towards the water, and a third projection in the form of a swallow's tail, all of them having platforms and cannon mounted. Towards the land is a gate with a ravelin, two ditches, two bridges, and a glacis, with the beginning of a new work built with tappy, on the north-west, left unfinished. The captain of this fort is commissioned by the King. There are barracks in it for fifty men; but, on the approach of an enemy, the militia of the island march into it for its defence.

There are several charitable societies in the town; the principal of them is called the Carolina Society, which, by an easy subscription, maintains many decayed families, and educates many orphans; I must not forget to mention the St. Andrew's Club, which is chiefly composed of Scotsmen, but whose charitable donations are confined to no country. There is a society calculated for the promotion of literature, named the Library Society, at present in a flourishing state, and through whose means many useful and valuable books have been already introduced into the province, which probably would not otherwise have soon found their way here, private fortunes not being equal to the expence. The following account of the intentions of this society was published, about two years ago, by way of introduction to their rules.

## ADVERTISEMENT.

Et Artes trans mare currunt.

The advantages, arising to mankind from learning, are so evident, that all civilised societies, both ancient



and modern, have given the greatest encouragement to the promotion of it, and ever held it in the highest veneration and esteem: As this is not to be acquired but by a liberal education, together with the use of valuable books, the Charles-town Library Society, having both these points in view, must appear in a very favourable light, to all who have the least degree of generous regard for the welfare and happiness of posterity.

“ Though any attempt to enumerate or recommend the benefits of education may appear superfluous, yet, the following most obvious contrast cannot fail to make the strongest impression in favour of our undertaking; let a person of any consideration or humanity take a serious view of the Indian inhabitants of this extensive continent, and it will be impossible for him to reflect without very mortifying sentiments, how little human nature, uncultivated, differs from the brute; on the other hand, with what exalted pleasure will he contemplate the splendid figure, which Great Britain, the admiration and envy of the world, at present makes, when compared with its rude and savage state, in the days of Julius Cæsar; and who, without the most melancholy reflections, can cast his eye on the ancient state of Babylon, Egypt and Greece, those seats of empire, those fountains of learning, and nurses of arts and sciences, and from thence turn to their present miserable condition, oppressed with slavery, their learning extinct, their arts banished by a successive inundation of barbarians?

“ As the gross ignorance of the naked Indian must raise our pity, and his savage disposition our horror and detestation, it is our duty as men, our interest as members of a community, to take every step, pursue every method in our power, to prevent our descendants from sinking into a similar situation; to obviate this possible evil, and

to obtain the desirable end, of handing down the European arts and manners to the latest times, is the great aim of the members of this society, who are ambitious of approving themselves worthy of their mother-country, by imitating her humanity, as well as her industry, and by transporting from her the improvements in the finer as well as in the inferior arts.

“Desirous, therefore, that this laudable ambition may be as extensive as the province, they invite every lover of his country, every well-wisher to posterity, to join with them in promoting the good purposes intended by this society.”

Then follows an account of the rise, progress, and present state of the society, not necessary to be copied here ; I shall only add, that lieutenant governor Bull is president of the society, and a sanguine promoter of their commendable pursuits.

Beaufort is the next most considerable place, though a small town, about seventy miles S. W. from Charlestown, pleasantly situated on the south side of a sea island, named Port Royal, from its harbour, which is capacious and safe, and into which ships of a large size may sail ; here is a collector, with other custom-house officers. The harbour is defended by a small fort, lately built of tappy, a cement composed of oyster-shells beat small, with a mixture of lime and water, and is very durable. The fort has two demi-bastions to the river, and one bastion to the land, with a gate and ditch ; the barracks are very good, and will lodge one hundred men, with their officers ; there are in it sixteen weighty cannon, not yet mounted, the platforms and parapet wall not being finished for want of money.

Georgetown is about sixty miles N. E. distant from Charlestown ; it is near the size of Beaufort, and is like-



wise a port of entry, having a collector and other custom house officers. The general assembly provided money to build a fort, some years ago, for the defence of the harbor ; but I have not heard that it has yet had a beginning.

There are several look-outs, as they are called, along the coast, having two or more guns and three or four men each ; who are to alarm the inhabitants on the approach of the enemy in privateers, or the more formidable danger of fleets.

On our Western frontiers, about three hundred and twenty miles N. W. from Charles-town, is Fort-Prince George, situate in a fertile valley, through which runs a considerable river, named here Keowee river, from the Indian town on the west bank of it : this fort was built by governor Glen, and lately repaired by colonel Grant ; it is a regular square, has an earthen rampart about six feet high, on which stockades are fixed ; with a ditch, a natural glacis on two sides, and bastions at the angles, on each of which are four small cannon mounted ; it is within gun-shot of the Indian town, and has very good barracks for one hundred men.

Near New Windsor, about one hundred and seventy miles lower down on the same river, but now called Savannah river, on a beautiful and commanding situation, is another fort, named Fortmore, about one hundred and fifty miles west from Charles-town ; it is built of six-inch plank nailed to posts of light wood, with four towers or bastions on the angles, on which are small cannon mounted ; on the inside is a banquet, with loop holes in the courtines for small arms ; it has neither ditch nor glacis, but very good barracks for one hundred men. This fort, though not built above fifteen years, is already in a ruinous condition ; this and all the other forts,



with two in Georgia, are garrisoned by his majesty's three independent companies stationed here.

## CHAPTER V.

### *Of the diseases most frequent in Charles-town and its neighbourhood.*

#### SECTION 1.

The diseases, that may be termed epidemics, are either acute or chronic. The acute diseases may be subdivided into those of the warm and those of the cold seasons.

The first are intermittents of all kinds, fluxes, and cholera morbus : The winter diseases are pleurisies, peripneumonies, and catarrhal fevers.

The chronic diseases are obstructions of the abdominal viscera, hæmorrhoids, ruptures, worm fevers, and what is called the lame distemper.

\* Intermittents appear in different forms, such as tertian, double-tertian, quotidian, and remitting fevers ; all which, however they may vary in their type, in different constitutions and other circumstances, are, nevertheless, of the same nature, and proceed from the same cause, viz. heat and moisture. A principal source of humidity is from the under-ground water, which is always near the surface ; and, as the soil is light, the moisture easily transpires by the heat of the sun loading the air with vapours, even where no water is visible. Another, and more general cause of the humidity and corruption of the atmosphere is from the imperfect ventilation, there being no hills to receive the winds, or to direct them in streams upon the lower grounds ; hence the air is apt to stagnate, and the more so by reason of the great quantities of trees,

\* Vid. Pringle's Observations on the diseases of the Army, and Cleg-horn's Diseases of Minorca.

which not only confine but moisten the air by transpirations from their bodies and leaves : this is an excrementitious moisture, whose former salubrious parts were spent in the nutrition of the trees, plants, and their efflorescencies ; and the remainder, being perspirant, floats for a time in the air, till the grosser parts subside, and the finer rise higher.

The great heat, in the summer time, conspires with the moisture to relax the solids, and dispose the humours to putrefaction ; and, according to the various degrees of heat and moisture of the season, the epidemics appear sooner or later, are of a longer or shorter duration, and are attended with mild or alarming symptoms. The summer diseases begin commonly in July, and disappear about Christmas. In Charles-town, these diseases are proportionably less frequent, and milder than in the country ; for here we are pretty clear of trees, have a large opening to the sea, a kind of ventulation in the streets, besides a thousand culinary fires in the hottest season to dry the air. In the country they have none of those advantages, and the inhabitants in general (being more careful to acquire splendid fortunes, than to preserve their healths) build their houses near their rice-fields, or indigo-dams, where they must always keep stagnating water.

It may not be amiss to remark here, (what has been observed by Dr. Pringle of another country) that moist and rainy seasons are very different in this climate ; intense and continued heat occasion the greatest moisture in the atmosphere, by the immense exhalations they raise ; whereas frequent showers, during this season, cool the air, check the excess of vapors, dilute and refresh the corrupted and stagnated water, and precipitate, all noxious and putrid effluvia.



The cholera morbus, diarrhea's and dysenteries, appear in the same season with the fever of the intermitting kind, and seem to be only particular determinations of the corrupted humors ; to which if the first passages give vent, a cholera or flux ensues ; but, if they are retained or assumed, they occasion intermitting, remitting, and sometimes continual fevers. The late ingenious Dr. Lining, of this town, by an indefatigable series of statistical experiments made on himself, for a whole year, found, that, in the spring, the excretion of urine was to perspiration as fifty-three to thirty-three, and to alvine discharges as twenty-six ; in summer, as thirty-six to fifty-one and twenty-nine ; in autumn, as thirty-seven to forty-eight and forty ; in winter, as fifty-three to thirty-one and twenty-six : so that the discharge of the skin is greatest in summer, and least in winter ; and the urine much alike in winter and spring, but least in summer. The stools are much the largest in autumn ; hence the prevalency and cause of the cholera morbus and fluxes may be easily accounted for at that season ; for the orifices of the excretory ducts of the skin are straitened, and their discharges lessened, one thirteenth part, or from fifty-one to forty-eight ; and the urinary passages enlarged only one thirty-seventh ; and the muscular coar of the bowels, having lost a great part of its strength and elasticity, by the preceding summer heat, must necessarily, in weak persons, or such as live more irregularly, or are often exposed to sudden heats and colds common at this season, have a colluvies thrown upon them, which, accumulating for some time, will, at last, burst out in a looseness ; but, if there is greater stagnation in the intestines and stomach, a flagging of the appetite, and a pumping of the bile upwards, a cholera will happen, followed by a bilious looseness. If the sea-



son is cloudy, foggy, hazy, moist, misty, or rainy, diarrheas will prevail most, and their excretions will be thin and watery : if the season is otherwise constituted, cholera's will abound most, and the patient's stools will be more bilious, and attended with greater gripings and *Tormina Ventris*, &c. &c.

By Dr. Lining's experiments, we find, that the excretions of urine, perspiration, and the alvine discharges, added together, are considerably less in the winter and spring than in the other seasons ; at the same time the appetite is keener and digestion better, demanding a larger supply of nourishment, and consequently a larger quantity of food must go into, and be retained, in the habit of the body ; which will occasion a greater fulness in the vessels, and from their dilatation they become weaker, and the smaller ramifications less able to resist the approach and ingress of too large globules or particles ; whence a plethora will arise, which will produce inflammatory fevers, greater difficulty in the circulation and topical inflammations of the vital organs, the brain, the lungs, and even sometimes the heart. The winter diseases seldom appear before Christmas, and are most frequent in February and March. From Dr. Lining's experiments we may likewise see the reason why people generally look better, fresher, and fuller in the winter ; because the autumnal perspiration of forty-eight is reduced from that to thirty-one ; and their alvine discharges, from forty to twenty-six ; yet the appetite and digestion are both better and stronger. This also gives the reason why people in the Fall are weakest and faintest, and can least bear any evacuations ; for the quantity of urine discharged, after all the exhausting summer heat, is increased from thirty-six to thirty-seven ; and of their stools from thirty-six to forty.

## SECTION II.

Though the remote causes of all fevers may be different, they too varying considerably in different constitutions and seasons of the year ; yet the immediate or proximate cause is, in all, the same ; and nature, in all of them, operates in the same uniform manner, though with different degrees of force, in her endeavors to relieve herself of what is injurious to her ; hence there is a greater simplicity and uniformity in the cure of them all, than could well be expected, or is generally imagined.

The following very plain account of the method of curing several fevers, &c. which I have found most successful, during a long and pretty general practice, (and for part of which I am obliged to the late Dr. Lining) will be a proof of this assertion, if any is needed. I begin with

*Continual Fevers.*

Though not frequent in this climate, yet they sometimes appear in particular constitutions of the weather, and from causes not easily assignable, and continue seven or fourteen days, or to a much longer period.

The patient ought to be kept quiet in bed, with his head raised high, and covered with no more than his usual bed-cloaths ; the room should be darkened, not too warm, and fresh air frequently admitted into it, but not to blow upon the patient ; a cooling diet is absolutely necessary, such as gruel without seasoning, which should be taken frequently, a teacup full at a time ; the drink should be sage tea, barley-water, and the like, warm ; to any of which some of the juice of lemons or oranges may be added. All heating and spirituous drinks should



be abstained from. In the first day of the disease the following mixture will be of service: *R Sal. Merab. Glaub. ʒiij, aq. font. ʒvi, ft. solutio; cui adde Kerm. Mineralis gr. vi, Ol. Ment. (Sacch. except.) Gutt. iv M.*—Of this a spoonful is to be taken every hour, with a cupful of warm gruel after every dose. This mixture generally procures some loose stools, and causes a general warm sweat, which ought to be encouraged by frequent draughts of warm tea, the patient lying still and not turning himself often in bed; when he has occasion to go to stool, he must not uncover or get out of bed, but must use a bed-pan or pot, and keep the bed-cloaths well wrapt about him; while taking this medicine, the patient must avoid all acids. On the second day of the disease, if there is no abatement of the symptoms, after some loose stools have been procured by the mixture; if the patient is full of blood, and the fever rather increased than lessened, it will be proper to take away some blood, the quantity to be determined by the age and strength of the patient, or violence of the symptoms. It is not however right always to delay bleeding so long, for in corpulent people, especially those of a florid complexion; in hard drinkers, or in those who have been much exposed to the sun in the warm months; the fever often rises so high in a few hours, as to make immediate bleeding necessary; I mention this the rather, as we are here generally too sparing of the lancet. After bleeding when necessary, if there is any abatement of the symptoms, that opportunity should be embraced to give a vomit; or even if no such opportunity offers, and the patient is sick and oppressed at his stomach, a few grains of ipecacuan may be taken with safety. If the fever still continues to rage, repeat the medicine above prescribed, and afterwards give the following: *R Aq.*



Menth.  $\text{ʒvi}$ , Tart. regenerat.  $\text{ʒii}$ , pulv. Croci gr. xxiv, aq. theriacal.  $\text{ʒss}$  M. Take two spoonfuls every two hours, till the fever remits, and then give the saline mixture of Sal. Absinth. and Succ. Lemon. two spoonfuls every two or three hours, until a perfect intermission is obtained ; after which the patient is to be treated as I shall mention in the section of intermittents. If a delirium, constant watchfulness, or great sleepiness attend the fever, even after the patient has taken the mixture first prescribed with effect, apply a blister to the head, and others afterwards to the different parts of the body ; a blister applied to the head should lie on forty-eight hours ; they however ought not to be applied in the beginning of continual fevers, nor for some time after the patient has been blooded, and taken at least two phials of the first mixture ; when the watchfulness is obstinate, and the patient has been two days or longer without sleep, it will be necessary to give at night twenty or twenty-five drops of laudanum.

When the heat of the fever is great, give twenty grains of Sal. Nitri in a cup of gruel every second or third hour.

When worms are suspected to irritate the symptoms and keep up the fever, give the Indian Pink in the following manner :  $\text{ʒ}$  Loniceræ (vulgo Indian Pink) totius Plantæ  $\text{ʒii}$ , aq. bullient.  $\text{ʒ}$  viii, ft. infusio, colat. adde Tart. regenerat.  $\text{ʒiss}$ , pulv. Croci xi, Ol. Rutæ (Sacch. except.) gut. iv M. Of this give one spoonful every hour.

## SECTION III.

*Of the Slow or Nervous Fever.*

The pulse in these fevers is small, quick, and weak ; the heat does not rise to so great a height, as in the continual and inflammatory fevers ; the patient seldom complains of thirst ; the tongue is commonly white and moist in the beginning of the disease, but at last becomes dry, and red and brownish, without being attended with thirst ; the patient complains of a load or oppression at his stomach, is restless, and though frequently drowsy, seldom gets any sleep ; the dejection of spirits is very great ; there are frequent returns of heats and chills, the urine is commonly pale, the palms of the hands continue hot, even when an abatement of the fever happens ; sweats sometimes break forth, which are commonly clammy, especially about the face, without any advantage to the patient ; but when they are warm and general, the patient is relieved by them ; from the beginning there is a pain, load, or giddiness of the head. In the progress of the disease, there is commonly a noise or ringing in the ears, and towards its last period, the patient is generally affected with deafness ; then are likewise frequent twitchings of the tendons, sometimes a delirium, a stupor or insensibility, comes on, or the patient lies in almost a constant sleep.

These fevers make their advances so gradually, that the patient, unacquainted with his situation, is thereby often a great sufferer ; for having no other complaints, than an unusual weariness, weakness and aversion to action ; frequent yawnings and stretchings, a loss of appetite and disrelish to nourishment ; a dull pain or



weight in the head, with an unusual heat in the palms of the hands and forehead; I say the patient, having no other complaints but these for some days, permits the disease to make too great a progress before he takes advice; but in others, especially those who have been much exposed to the sun in the warm months, the fever in the first and second days often rises to a great height, after which it soon becomes of the nervous kind.

These fevers are often protracted to a great length, as they sometimes continue fourteen, twenty, or more days, before they terminate, though in that time there are frequent abatements of the symptoms for a few hours, but in the evenings they always increase again. As this fever generally attacks people of weak and lax habits, or those who have been previously weakened with great fatigue, or any other disease; it is evident evacuations, and especially that by bleeding, must be made with great caution; however, it is necessary to cleanse the first passages; therefore a vomit of episcuan should be given when there is any remission of the fever; but if that opportunity should not offer, and the patient has a loathing at his stomach, the vomit should be given without delay; after which the following medicine will be proper:  $\mathcal{R}$  Mann.  $\mathfrak{z}$  i, Sal. Cathart. Amar.  $\mathfrak{z}$  ii, ft. solutio in  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. aq. font. colat. adde Kerm. Mineral. gr. iv, Ol. Menth. (Sacch. except.) gutt. iv M. Of this mixture give one or two spoonfuls every hour, till it procures some loose stools; after each dose a cup of chicken-broth should be taken: After the operation of this medicine is over, give the patient the saline mixture thus prepared:  $\mathcal{R}$  Sal. absinth.  $\mathfrak{z}$  i, Succ. Lemon.  $\mathfrak{z}$  iss, misce et post effervescentiam adde aq. Menth.  $\mathfrak{z}$  iii, Sp. Sal. Volat. Oleos.  $\mathfrak{z}$  iss, Sacch. alb.  $\mathfrak{z}$  ss M. Of this give the patient one spoonful every second or third hour;



likewise, **R** Pulv. Crass. Serp. verg.  $\text{ʒii}$ , aq. font. bullient.  $\text{ʒiv}$ , ft. infusio. After it has stood some hours in infusion, strain it, and give the patient two spoonfuls every sixth hour, or oftener if very weak. In this course the patient is to continue daily till his recovery, or till the disease ends in an intermitting fever, and is then to be treated as such.

In the progress of this disease, there is generally a necessity for the repeated application of blisters to different parts, at proper intervals; if the patient is delirious or much dejected, a blister applied to the head is absolutely necessary; and, as this disease is generally protracted to many days, it is expedient, as soon as the last applied blister begins to dry up, to apply another or more to some other part: Great care should be taken to prevent the patient from sleeping long at a time; when he is rendered weak, one hour's sleep may be more than with safety he can bear: the diet should be chicken-broth, gruel, or panado, seasoned with wine; the drink, besides sage or baum-teas, should be wine-whey or weak Sangree.

#### SECTION IV.

##### *Of Intermitting Fevers.*

When these begin early in the autumn, the first fit of the fever frequently continues one, two, or three days before there is a distinct intermission; if the fever is slight, it will go off in a few hours, and in such cases there is no occasion for medicine; but if it runs high, and is accompanied with a violent head-ach, oppression at the stomach, pain in the back or delirium; give the

mixture of Sal. Glaub. and Kermes Mineral. before prescribed, and, if the heat is great, twenty grains of Sal. Nitri at the same time; if the stomach does not retain this, then give the saline mixture, as ordered in the last section, changing the Sp. Sal. Volat. Oleos. for the same quantity of the Vin. benedict. and of this give two spoonfuls every second hour; and repeat it in every succeeding fit of the fever.

When the paroxysms rather lengthen than diminish in the time of their duration, so that there may be danger of the fever becoming continual, the loss of some blood, especially from those of a sanguine habit, is necessary, as it generally brings on a distinct intermission. The diet and drink, in the time of the fever, must be the same as directed before in the continual fevers; but, if the patient is weak, that prescribed in the slow fever is most proper. In the first intermission a vomit should be given; and after the second, or at farthest the third febrile paroxysm, the Jesuit's-bark should be given in the most efficacious manner, either in substance or in strong decoction: The success of this medicine depends much on the quantity that is given, between two fits of the fever; when the intermission is short, the doses ought to be taken every half hour, and in as large quantities as the stomach will bear.

When a violent head-ach attends the disease, and continues even in the time of the intermission, it is generally removed by the application of a blister to the head.

The bark is to be continued, joined with neutral or vegetable salts, as the case may require, in each intermission, till the disease is conquered; after which (to prevent a relapse) it is always proper, that the patient continue to take three doses every day, until he has re-

covered his strength ; or a glassful, two or three times a day, of an infusion of bark, snake-root, and salt of worm-wood in Madeira wine.

The diet or drink, in the time of the intermission, must be more or less cordial and nourishing, as the patient is more or less weakened ; for diet, the following is most proper, gruel, panado, sago, and salop, seasoned with wine ; jellies, chicken-broth, and, when the intermissions are not short, boiled chicken may be allowed ; the common drink may be wine-whey, sangre, toddy, and sometimes a glass of wine.

To some patients, who have an invincible aversion to the Jesuits-bark, I have often given, with success, the bark of the root of a species of laurel, thus distinguished : *Magnolia altissima conibaccifera foliis ovato-lanceolatis, subtus argenteos cinericeis, amplissimo flore, albo fructu purpureo* : It seems to possess a febrifuge quality nearly equal to the Jesuits-bark, with less astringency, and on this account preferable to it ; when the patient gives suck, or has or ought to have the Catamenia, or Hemorrhoidal flux :—and will always answer best with children ; it is to be given in the same form and dose as the Jesuits-bark.

#### SECTION V.

##### *Of the Dysentery or Bloody Flux.*

This disease is very frequent in the Autumn, and if the intestines have been emptied of the scubala or hard excrements, that at this time commonly abound in them, will generally submit to the common practice : While these remain, the patient will get but little relief from



any medicines ; the following purging mixture and clyster will generally obtain this end ;  $\mathcal{R}$  Sal Cathart.  $\mathfrak{z}$ iss, Aq. Font.  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi, ft. solutio ; cui adde Vin. benedict. Gutt. xi, vel Kermes Mineral. Gr. vi. Ol. Menth. (Sacch. except.) Gutt. iv, Sacch. Alb.  $\mathfrak{z}$ ss M. Give two spoonfuls every hour till it purges briskly.  $\mathcal{R}$  Flor. Chamæmel,  $\mathfrak{z}$ ii, Sem. fœnicul. d. contus.  $\mathfrak{z}$ i, Aq. Font.  $\mathfrak{z}$ xii, coque ad  $\mathfrak{z}$ viii, Colaturæ adde Sapon. Venet.  $\mathfrak{z}$ i M. pro Clysmate, repetatur pro re nata.

When these scubala are all expelled, the cure is to be completed by a proper administration of the Vit. cerat. Antimonii, or small doses of Ipecacuan powder, assisted by astringents and balsamics ; among which I would recommend the following decoction, which I can affirm to be very efficacious : Take logwood, sliced thin and cut in small pieces, one oz. burnt hartshorn finely powdered, pomgranate skins, of each half an oz. sumach-roots, one oz. cinnamon, one quarter of an oz. water, three pints ; boil a third away, and strain the decoction through a hair-sieve, and give a tea-cup full every second or third hour. To this decoction, if the patient is much weakened, and has no fever, some brandy or rum may be added ; but if the patient has a fever, all astringents are to be avoided. The most proper diet is rice-gruel, panado, sago or salop, and jellies of hartshorn-shavings, without any lemon or orange juice in them, or wine ; and all to be taken warm.

The dysentery is often very obstinate, and frequently becomes a chronic disease ; in such cases I would recommend, besides a proper generous diet and general strengtheners, a decoction of the connessi bark, with sumach-roots, and pomgranate skins, not made too strong, and used for common drink ; in such cases, lime-water is a very good medicine ; but no medicine will

avail in some cases in this climate, and a removal to a colder is absolutely necessary to preserve life; nor should this, if in the patient's power, be delayed too long.

## SECTION VI.

### *Of the Pleurisy and Peripneumony.*

The patient should lose some blood from the arm, as soon as possible after the attack of this disease; the quantity to be determined by the pain and difficulty of breathing, or as the fever is more or less violent; when these symptoms are very severe, it is necessary to let the blood continue running till there be an abatement of them, or to repeat the bleeding in a few hours afterwards. In more moderate attacks of this disease, a repetition of bleeding is rarely necessary. The patient, immediately after the first bleeding, must be put to bed in a room where he will neither be exposed to the wind or air passing through crevices, and must be kept moderately warm with bed-cloaths: Then give the following medicine:  $\mathcal{R}$  Sal. Cathart.  $\mathfrak{z}$  xii. Aq. Font.  $\mathfrak{z}$  vi. ft. solutio; cui adde Kerm. Mineral. Gr. vi. Sacch. Alb.  $\mathfrak{z}$  i M. Give the patient one spoonful every hour, with some sage tea or gruel after every dose. In grown people one phial of this mixture generally procures some loose stools, and causes a general warm sweat; which last ought to be encouraged by frequent draughts of warm tea, the patient lying still; and, when he has occasion to go to stool, or make water, he must not uncover, but use a bed-pan, or some other conveniency, keeping the bed-cloaths well wrapp'd about him. In five or six hours after the operation of this mixture by stool is over, if



there is no considerable abatement of the pain. give the following:  $\mathcal{R}$  Pulv. Crass. Serp. Senicæ 3iii, coq. in 3xii Aq. Font. ad. 3vi colatur; cui adde Kerm. Mineral. Gr. vi. Sacch. Alb. 3iM. Give of this one spoonful every hour; and when there is an abatement of pain, every second or third hour. It will be of great advantage to the patient, and hasten his recovery, especially in very cold weather, or if he was violently seized, to keep some warm bricks, or quart-bottles filled with warm water, constantly to his feet and legs, under the bed-cloaths: Bathing the feet and legs in warm water might have a better effect, only it would be attended with some danger, as the patient might catch cold. About the end of the first or second day, from the use of these medicines and directions, the patient is generally much relieved, and commonly free from danger: the breathing and pain in the side are easier; the fever, heat, and thirst are more moderate; the tongue is moister, though its whiteness perhaps remains; the pulse, which in the beginning was quick, small, and hard, is now less frequent, fuller, and softer; when these alterations happen, the patient is on the recovery, and there is seldom occasion for doing any thing farther, than giving him a diet of easy digestion, and taking care he does not catch cold. If an obstinate costiveness attends the disease, which frequently happens, when the patient has been either very severely attacked, or neglected in the beginning; or when the head is much affected; care should be taken to procure loose stools as soon as possible, for, while the costiveness continues, the benefit, arising to the patient from the medicines given him, will scarce be perceptible; wherefore, after he has taken a phial of the mixture first prescribed in this section without effect, give a clyster of corn gruel, with Epsom salts, to be re-



peated pro re nata : After this repeat the mixture, of which the patient should take so much as, with the help of the clysters, will every twenty-four hours, procure five or six stools, till there be a great abatement of pain, fever, and difficulty of breathing.

When a looseness with gripes attends this disease in the beginning, the patient will not bear such plentiful bleeding as otherwise might be necessary ; it is then safest to take away a small quantity at a time, and to repeat the bleeding occasionally.

When the heat attending the fever is great, (which will seldom be the case, if the directions before given have been followed, and the belly has thereby been kept sufficiently open) it is proper to give 20 grains of salt-petre, every second hour, in sage-tea, or gruel ; but, at the same time, the directions given, with regard to the other medicines, must be followed. If the pain in the side continues fixed in one place, (for, when it shifts, there is less danger) after the above directions have been carefully followed, for above 48 hours, apply a blister to the part affected. The expectoration, when suppressed, is to be promoted by the patient's drawing the streams of warm water frequently through a funnel into the lungs : After the third day, if the cough is great, and prevents the patient from sleeping at nights, give 15 or 20 drops of laudanum every night in his common drink, or, which I prefer, the following mixture :  
℞ Capit. Papav. alb. contus. 3 ss, sem Fœnicul. d. cont. ʒii, Succ. Liquorit. 3 ss, Aq. Font. 3 xii, coq. ad 3vi, colat. adde Acet. Schillit. 3 ss M. Of this give two spoonfuls every two hours, or oftener, while the cough is troublesome.

The fever continuing after the pain in the side is gone, is to be cured first by drinking plenty of sage or

balm tea, or gruel, warm ; secondly, by blistering plasters, applied, at convenient intervals, to different parts ; thirdly, by continuing the mixture prepared of Rad. Serp. Senicæ and Kermes, &c. every third hour ; or in place of it 15 or 20 drops of Huxham, Essentia Antimonii, every third hour, in sage-tea ; fourthly, by keeping the belly open ; and fifthly, as the irritation may be kept up by worms, to give the patient the pink-root as before directed, Sect. II.

From the beginning of the disease, till the symptoms are much abated, the diet must be light and of easy digestion, such as water-gruel, which must always be taken warm, and in small quantities at a time ; the drink may be sage or balm tea, a decoction of mallows, lettuce, or Mullein-leaves in water, or flax-seed bruised ; of any of which the patient should frequently take a cupful warm, and must avoid all spirituous liquors and cold water. When the symptoms are much abated, and no complaint but weakness remaining, the patient may be allowed chicken-broth, and some toddy and sangre.

In the beginning of the winter, and of the spring, if the weather is unseasonably warm, pleurisies frequently terminate in intermitting fevers ; in which case the patient should be treated according to the directions given in that disease.

There is a disease, with which negroes are often seized, and frequently proves fatal in less than 24 hours ; in which the patient complains of a sharp, constant, and violent pain in one of his eyes, or in a particular part of his head, and is vulgarly called the pleurisy of the eye, or head : This disease requires the same method of cure as the pleurisy, only, on account of its acuteness, there is less time to be lost ; therefore the medicines above directed must be given at shorter intervals, that stools



may be procured as soon as possible, the patient having been first plentifully blooded: It is highly necessary to keep the patient's feet and legs constantly warm, with warm bricks or bottles of warm water.

## SECTION VII.

### *Of the Peripneumony.*

A peripneumony, or an inflammation of the lungs, is a much more dangerous disease, and more difficult to cure than a pleurisy, on account of the great importance of that organ to life. In this disease the breathing is short and difficult, the patient complains of a load at his breast, and the cough is more troublesome and frequent than in the pleurisy; it is frequently combined with the pleurisy, and then called pleuro-peripneumony; the same method of cure which has been directed for the pleurisy, is to be followed in it, excepting in the following things.

The room where the patient lies should be large, and the air in it rather cool, and his head raised high in the bed. When great part of the lungs is inflamed (which is known by the shortness in breathing, and the load or oppression at the breast being both very great) the pulse is thereby, for obvious reasons, rendered so small and weak, that bleeding may be judged unnecessary: This is, however, a dangerous mistake; for this case requires plentiful bleeding, and it will be found, that, as the inflammation of the lungs is thereby abated, the pulse not only becomes fuller, but the oppression at the breast and quick breathing will be greatly relieved.

A peripneumony generally terminates with an expect-



toration, which is indeed a favourable event, when the patient has been unfortunate enough not to be relieved by bleeding, and the early use of the medicines prescribed in the pleurisy ; when that is the case, the expectoration must be promoted ; to effect which, the patient should frequently draw the steams of warm water, through a funnel, into his lungs, and drink plentifully of warm gruel made thin, barley-water, tea made of hyssop, sage or balm sweetened with honey ; to which, every third hour, add 20 grains of saltpetre. The matter, when freely spit up, gives great relief to the breathing and oppression at the breast, and the disease generally goes off on the seventh day ; the cough, after the end of the second day, must be mitigated by the decoction of poppy-heads, &c. prescribed in the pleurisy, to which two drachms of the Seneka snake-root may be added with great advantage.

#### SECTION VIII.

##### *Of the Chronic Diseases.*

The chronic diseases, mentioned above, appear at all times of the year ; the frequency of obstructed viscera seems to be occasioned,\* first, by the intense and long-continued summer-heats ; they, dissipating the finest particles of the animal juices, necessarily leave the rest of a grosser and more earthly nature ; and thus a great proportion of that kind of matter is generated in the blood, which the ancients called Atrabillious ; and this being deposited in the viscera, occasions the obstructions. Besides, secondly, these obstructions may be occasioned

\* Vid. Cleghorn on the diseases of Minorca.

by the frequency of the acute diseases, especially of tertian fevers, which as they often go off with an imperfect crisis, and frequently relapse, weaken the tone of the Chylopoetic viscera, and at last terminate in hard schirrous tumours of the spleen, liver, and mesentery.

The hæmorrhoidal flux is very common; however, it is of great service in all the visceral obstructions, and therefore, however frequent or troublesome, should be rather considered as a benefit than a disease, more especially as it prevents pleurisies and peripneumonies, according to the doctrine of Hippocrates.

Ruptures are likewise common; they may be owing to this cause, viz. the obstructed viscera being swelled beyond their natural size, the intestines are too much confined, and, by the nature of the aliment, and bad digestion, being frequently distended with wind, it is not to be wondered at, that they often pass through the rings of the abdominal muscles.

Worm-fevers are very frequent, and common to all ages, though children under 5 years of age suffer most, particularly in the spring and beginning of summer. The sweet potato, Indian corn or maize, and pompion, all much used in diet, seem to have a larger share of the eggs of these mischievous insects, than the rest of the farinaceous or leguminous kind.

When a fever, in young people particularly, is attended with irregular symptoms, and is of a longer duration than usual, not easily otherwise accounted for, we may be assured that worms are the cause of them: In such cases I know of no medicine more likely to be of service than the decoction of pink-root, mentioned in section II, and to be continued till the disease terminates; blisters, and other medicines proper for particular symptoms that may occur, are not to be neglected.



The following form is a very good vermifuge:  $\mathcal{R}$  Pulv. Rad, Loniceræ (vulgo Pink-root)  $\mathfrak{z}$ ss, Æthiop. Mineral.  $\mathfrak{z}$ iii. Ol. Rutæ Gutt. xii M. et divide in xviii Dosib. Take one every night and morning. This dose is calculated for children from 5 to 8 years of age; if the patient has a purging, change the Æthiop. for the same quantity of Ocul. Cancrorum. The pink-root has been long and much used in the province, as a vermifuge; but, when over-dosed, often occasions alarming and troublesome giddiness and blindness in the patient; a strong narcotic quality in it is the cause of this, which may always be prevented by adding some of the chymical oil of rue, or worm-wood, to each dose, as in the last prescription.

I have often attended to the following advice of the judicious Hoffman, with benefit: “Ad Vermes ex tenuibus Intestinis exturbandos prodest ante Purgantium et Specificorum Usus, Clysterum ex Melle et Lacte paratum Ano infundere; ut Bestiolæ illæ, Dulcedine allutæ, ex Loculis suis ad Intestina facilius descendant. Ascariides se recto innidulantur, Clysteres detergentes lactæi, quibus Tanacetum, Ruta, Allium vel Scordis Folia incocta sunt, optimum præstant Effectum. Neque minus Temporis Enemata commodum invenient Locum, si quando verminosa Progenies, post Purgationem per Alvum non ejicitur, quod sæpius usa venit, si ista in Cæco Intestino, quod Purgans non valet attingere, Nidum obtinet. Emplastra vel Epithemata Epigastrii et Umbilici Regione applicanda, ex Absinthio, Felle Tauri, Aloe, &c. &c. conflari possunt. E. G.  $\mathcal{R}$  Fell. taurin,  $\mathfrak{z}$ ii, Colocyth, pulv. Aloes pulv. an.  $\mathfrak{z}$ ii, Ol. Absinth  $\mathfrak{z}$ ss M. ft. et Emplastrum, Abdomini applicandum.”

The disease called the lame distemper, is said to be frequently occasioned by the catching of cold; but, wherever I have seen it, I have always suspected a



venereal or yawish taint. The disease shows itself in spreading corroding ulcers of the Phagedenic kind (which betray a great degree of acrimony in the blood) in different parts of the body, but most frequently about the fauces, destroying, unless prevented in a short time, the uvula tonsillæ, &c. &c. Sometimes the first alarm or suspicion the patient has of his unhappy condition is by a perforation in his palate, without any other previous complaint; then a little uneasiness from a pimple as he imagined it, in the roof of his mouth, with a dryness and disagreeable smell in his nose: This happens oftenest, when the disease is hereditary, and the ulcer soon spreads to and erodes the bones of the nose, to the great deformity and misery of the patient. When this disease makes its attack on the fauces, it may be for some time mistaken for the ulcerated sore-throat of the putrid kind, very common in America, and well described by the two most excellent physicians, Huxham and Fothergill; and is then to be distinguished from it only by a smaller degree of fever, and not submitting to the antiseptic medicines commonly given in the other with success; but in a short time swellings in the os frontis tibiæ, &c. put the disease out of doubt.

The intentions, necessary to be pursued in the cure of this disease, are, first, to dissolve and thin the viscid coagulated humours, to fit them for expulsion. Secondly, to expel them in the most efficacious manner; and, lastly, the patient's strength and health are to be recovered and preserved by a well-regulated diet.

Alternative mercurial medicines, taken for two or three months, will answer best in the first intention; I have found the solution of the sublimate, as recommended by the Baron Van Swieten, ot the Mercurius Diaphoret. jovial. of Hoffman, by much the best medicines. Here I

must remark, that the morbid humours in this disease are sometimes so tough and viscid, that mercury alone cannot act upon them, and must go off, without any benefit to the patient, by stool. In such cases, I learned, many years ago, from the excellent Hoffman, to give salt of wormwood, or any of the fixed alkaline salts, with every dose of mercury ; by whose assistance the latter obtained an entrance among the viscid humours, and seldom afterwards frustrated my endeavors for my patient's relief. Dr. Grainger, in his *Monita Syphilica*, has claimed this manner of giving mercury, as an invention of his own ; his words are, "*Ante quatuor Annos me Remedum in sale Abfinthii ad Vires Mercurii in Sanguinem tuto, cito, expediundas invenisse gloriabar.*" As this gentleman was no stranger to Hoffman's works, it is very possible that he took the hint from him ; vid. obser. 3 sect. 1 cap. 2 vol. pag. 29, *De Febre Quartana*, Fol. Edit. Fred. Hoffman. When the blood and humours are sufficiently fused or dissolved, and fitted for expulsion, by the use of the mercurial alteratives ; give the patient for eight or ten days a decoction of the woods, in which sarsaparilla and China root should be principal ingredients ; this decoction ought to be taken in large quantities, even until the patient appears bloated with it, who is then to be put into a sweating-box (such as Ulric and Hutton used, and is much recommended by Boerhaave) once or twice every day, if the patient can bear it ; and to continue in the box from 8 to 15 minutes ; when he is taken out, his skin must be carefully dried with towels, rubbed briskly about him and he put to bed, where he should drink a large draught of the decoction, to encourage the sweat he will then be in. During this course, the patient should be careful of his diet, abstaining from all fat, oily, salt or pickled meats, and from all spiritu-



ous or heating drink ; and, if possible, confine himself to wheat bread well raised, or biscuit and raisins ; and his drink to be spruce beer, brewed with melasses ; and this should be pursued with exactness and perseverance, even for some months after he has discontinued the use of the sweating box ; which is not to be done till the ulcers, wherever they may be seated, are healed up, and all the other symptoms of the disease vanished. If the ulcers are in the throat, they should be washed with lime water and Mel. Rosar. But, if they are on the external parts of the body, they are to be dressed daily in the common way.

## CHAPTER VI.

### *Of the Indian tribes, in the neighbourhood of South Carolina.*

It has long been a dispute among the learned, when, how, or from whence America was peopled ; I must join in opinion with those who imagine it was by emigrations from the northern parts of Europe and Asia ; my reasons are the great similarity of looks and appearance between Indians and Tartars, and some customs that now prevail among Indians, used by no other people ; which were practised by the Scythians, ancestors of the Tartars, in the days of Herodotus ; for instance, the scalping of the heads of their enemies. Herodotus tells us, that the Scythians slayed their enemies heads by cutting a circle round their neck close under their ears, and stripping off the skin as they would do that of an ox ; then they softened the skins with their hands, and hanged them on the bridles of their horses, when



they rode. He who had the greatest number of these scalps thought best of himself, and was accounted a valiant man. The practice of the Scythian prophets, as described by Herodotus, has likewise a near resemblance to that used at this day by the Indian conjurers.

The arrival of Europeans in this new world has been productive of the most ruinous consequences to the old inhabitants, who have lost their ancient habitations, and the best of their lands, either by the force of arms, or of trifling presents made to them ; but this is not all their misfortune. The new comers have introduced among them many vices and numerous diseases, the consequences of vice, all formerly unknown to them ; by which many populous tribes are already extinct, and their very names forgot ; the few that remain daily decrease in their numbers, a circumstance that gives them much concern, however agreeable it may be to the selfish and all-grasping Europeans.

\* The Indians, on this part of the continent, are of a dark olive complexion, with open countenances and good features ; they are generally tall, lean, and active, but not strong ; and may be compared rather to beasts of prey than to those of burthen ; they are easily provoked to anger and of impetuous dispositions, and will not soon forgive or forget injuries, though very capable of gratitude, even to a romantic pitch, to their friends and benefactors. Their hair is always black, without curls ; the men cut and dress theirs with beads and other ornaments in various shapes, by which the tribes easily distinguish one another. In those I have seen, there is but little diversity with respect to complexion, manners, or customs ; their languages are very scanty, yet some of them have

\* Vide Mr. De la Condamine's voyage to South-America.

an energy, and are susceptible of elegance, particularly the Creek language ; but all of them want terms to express abstract and general ideas, which is an evident proof of the little improvement of the understanding among them ; time, duration, space, substance, matter, body, and many such words, have nothing equivalent in their languages ; not only those of a metaphysical, but likewise those of a moral nature, cannot be rendered into their tongue, but imperfectly, and by a circumlocution ; they have no words that correspond exactly to those of virtue, justice, liberty, gratitude, ingratitude, &c. They generally live in small bodies, few of their towns containing above 100 men ; and enjoy great liberty, which must be the case of all people who depend on hunting, and not on the cultivation of the earth for subsistence. Their institutions may rather be called customs than laws ; there are very few religious ceremonies or mysteries in use among them ; and it is observable, that the tribes nearest to our settlements, and with whom we have the freest communication, have still fewer than the others. To the shame of the Christian name, no pains has ever been taken to convert them to Christianity, on the contrary, their morals are perverted and corrupted, by the sad examples they daily have of its depraved professors residing in their towns. Polygamy is permitted among them ; yet few have more than one wife at a time, possibly on account of the expence of supporting them ; for he is accounted a good gunsman that provides well for one ; besides, the Indians are not of an amorous complexion. It is common with them however to repudiate their wives, if disoblged by them, or tired of them ; the rejected woman, if with child, generally revenges herself for the affront by taking



herbs to procure an abortion, an operation that destroys many of them, and greatly contributes to depopulate them. They purchase powder, ball, and other necessities from our traders, with deer, bear, and other skins, having no money among them.

The following observations of Baron Montesquieu are truly characteristic of Indians: "That, when a people have not the use of money, they are seldom acquainted with any other injustice than that which springs from violence, and the weak, by uniting, defend themselves from its effects: they have nothing there but political regulations. But, where money is established, they are subject to that injustice which proceeds from craft, an injustice that may be exercised a thousand ways: Their successful warriors, and old men that remember things past, have great authority; none can be distinguished among them but by wisdom and valour."—*Spirit of Laws*. To these I must add, that the Indian nations will not allow themselves to be subjects of Britain, but the friends and brethren of the English; certain it is that they are not subject to our laws; that they have no magistrates appointed over them by our kings; that they have no representatives in our assemblies: that their own consent is necessary to engage them in war on our side; and that they have the power of life and death, peace and war, in their own councils, without being accountable to us; subjection is what they are unacquainted with in their own state, there being no such thing as coercive power among them: Their chiefs are such only in virtue of their credit, and not their power: there being, in all other circumstances, a perfect equality among them.

The tribes I shall particularly mention are the Catawbas, Cherokees, Creeks, and Chickesaws.



The Catawbias have been long in our interest ; many of them joined our forces acting on the Ohio, in the campaigns against Fort Duquesne, till it was reduced ; there they unluckily got the small-pox, and carried the infection home with them, which has almost extirpated this little nation ; the few men that survived served in Colonel Grant's army in the last expedition against the Cherokees : They live about 250 miles North of Charles-town, and are surrounded on all sides by our plantations.

The nearest settlement of the Cherokees is about 320 miles distant, North-west, from Charles-town. This Tribe inhabits one of the healthiest and most beautiful countries in the world, in four divisions among the Appalachian mountains ; and, before their last war with Carolina, they had 40 villages or towns, containing about 10,000 souls, of which about 2000 were warriors, or men able to go to war. They have been generally accounted inferior, in point of courage, to their neighbours ; but, I believe, without sufficient reason. This tribe, with some others, were at war with this colony in the year 1715 ; in the year following peace was made with them, which continued till 1759, when it was interrupted in the following manner : In the beginning of the last war with France, the Cherokees, then hearty in our interest, sent, at different times, three or four hundred men to the assistance of our forces intended against Fort-Duquesne. In their return home from the campaign of 1758, they lost many of their horses, and without ceremony, made use of such stray ones as fell in their way, travelling through the West frontiers of Virginia ; and this they imagined to be no crime, as they saw it frequently practised by the white men among them : However, it was resented, and punished with much severity

by some of the inhabitants of that province, who attacked small parties of the unsuspecting Indians, killing at different times about 12 or 14 of them; the savages were not backward in taking satisfaction for their slain countrymen; and this was the beginning of a war, which, in the sequel, was the occasion of much expence and trouble to this province. There is no acquitting those people who attacked the Cherokees of ingratitude: The Indians had been to war in their defence, neglecting their hunting season, (to them their harvest) and subjecting themselves to all the inconveniences and dangers attending a long march of 1000 or 1200 miles, out and home: Besides this, the Indians had many other grievances to complain of, particularly against the traders residing among them, licensed by different colonies. I have had occasion to know some of those fellows, and must own, that, generally speaking, they are a shame to humanity, and the disgrace of Christianity; by their iniquitous and foolish conduct, they changed the idea of superior valour, honour, and discretion, the Indians had been used to form of the English, into a general contempt and dislike. The savages daily saw themselves cheated in weight and measure; their women debauched, and their young men corrupted: These wrongs and insults were made the most of by French emissaries amongst them, who took much pains, with success enough, to alienate their affections from the English. The Cherokees, in carrying on the quarrel against Virginia, were soon involved in war with the neighbouring colonies: Their war-parties, sent against that colony, being unacquainted with its Southward bounds, frequently committed murders in North-Carolina, and once scalped a woman and her child on Broad-River, in this province, (who, by the bye, both got to Charles-town and recov-



ered.) Towards the end of summer, 1759, we had accounts, that the upper Cherokees, and the garrison of Fort-Loudon, were at variance, and that the Indians seemed resolved to starve them; and that a packhorseman was actually killed in the nation. This government, being justly offended at these insults, began in September to make preparations to put a stop to them, and to resent them. The Cherokees were informed of this, and immediately there came to Charles-town the greatest number of head-men, that had ever, at one time, left the nation, to endeavour to pacify the governor, and to prevent a war, if possible, with South Carolina: They arrived, on the 20th of October, with full resolution to give every satisfaction in their power, for what mischief their young men, for it was all laid on them, might have done to us. The governor, in a few days, met them in the council-chamber, and, among other things, told them, "That he was well acquainted with all the acts of hostility they had been guilty of, and likewise those they intended against the English, and enumerated some of them; and then added, that he would soon be in their country with an army, and, when there, would let them know his demands, and the satisfaction he required, which he certainly would take, if they then refused it: as they came to Charles-Town to treat with him as friends, they should go home with safety, and not a hair of their head should be touched; but, as he had a great many warriors in arms, in different parts of the province, he could not be answerable for what might happen to them, unless they marched with his army." Oconostota, dignified and distinguished by the name of Great Warrior of the Nation, and principal of this party of chiefs, and then a hearty friend to the English, began to give a talk to the governor; but



he, being resolved that nothing should prevent his military expedition, quitted his seat, declaring the conference to be ended, and that he would hear nothing they had to say in their defence, nor any proposals from them, though much urged to it by Lieutenant-Governor Bull. It is certain that, at this time, he might have gained from the Cherokees greater concessions than were afterwards obtained at a great expence, and have likewise preserved the friendship of the chiefs of the nation, who became troublesome enemies, and will never more trust our promises.

A few days after this conference, Mr. Lyttleton set out for the Congarees, 140 miles North-west from Charles-town, the place of rendezvous for the militia; where, by the 10th of November, he mustered together about 1400 men, of which number, 50 were gentlemen of fortune, serving as volunteers, formed into a company; 50 regulars, from the independent companies; about 100 provincials; the others were draughts from the militia regiments.

The Indian chiefs who had consented to march with the army, left Charles-town, October 26th, with the regulars and provincials, and behaved very quietly, and, to appearance, with content, to the Congarees; where we arrived November the 7th, when the Indians were all made prisoners, very unexpectedly; a captain's guard was mounted over them, and in this manner they were afterwards marched to Fort-Prince George; for which I never heard any reason given, but believe the true one to be, that the officer, who commanded at Fort-Prince George, had informed the governor, that the Indians would certainly fight him, if they permitted the head-men, then with him, to get to their country before him; an issue he would now gladly avoid, as he found the

militia of his army ill-armed, undisciplined, and, with some reason, discontented and mutinous. Be this as it will, he confined 32 head-men in a small hut in Fort-Prince George, on our arrival, December the 10th, at that place ; and dismissed the inferior sort, with the women and children. Soon after we left the Congarees, Mr. Lyttleton dispatched a messenger to the Upper Cherokees, to desire Attakullakulla, or, as the English name him, the Little Carpenter, accounted the most sensible man among them, to meet him at the Fort. Agreeable to this invitation, he came to our camp, on the 17th of December. He was just returned from a war party against the French, and brought in with him several scalps and prisoners : one of the last he presented to the governor, who appointed the next day for a conference, and then “ put Attakullakulla in mind of the several treaties that had been made between the English and Cherokees ; of the kindness of the first to the other, on many occasions ; then informed him of the glorious successes of the English against their enemies, in all parts of the world. He next mentioned many outrages said to have been committed by the Cherokees on the inhabitants of South Carolina, and added, that he was come to their country with an army, to obtain satisfaction ; and that he demanded 24 Cherokees to be delivered up to him, to be put to death, or otherwise disposed of as he should direct ; and that he expected, that those given up should be such as had committed trespasses on the English.”

The Little Carpenter's answer to the Governor was to the following effect : “ That he remembered the treaties mentioned to him, as he had a share in making them ; he owned the kindness of the province of South-Carolina, but complained much of the treatment his



countrymen received in Virginia; which, he said, was the immediate cause of our present misunderstanding: That he had always been the firm friend of the English, of which, he hoped, his late fatiguing march, against their enemies the French, was a sufficient proof: That he would ever continue such, and would use all the influence he had, to persuade his countrymen to give the Governour the satisfaction he demanded, though he believed it neither would, nor could be complied with, as they had no coercive power over one another; he desired the Governor to release some of the head-men, then confined in the fort, to assist him; and added, that he was pleased to hear of the successes of his brothers the English, but could not help mentioning, that they shewed more resentment against the Cherokees, than they used to other Indian nations who had disobliged them: That he remembered some years ago, several white people belonging to Carolina, were killed by the Chactaws, for whom no satisfaction had been either given or demanded.

Upon the application of the Carpenter, Mr. Lyttelton released Occonostota already mentioned; Fiftoe', chief man of Keowee-town; and the head-warrior of Estaloe'; and next day they delivered up two men to the Governor, one of whom was the person who had scalped the woman and child before taken notice of. This alarmed all the Cherokees, who knew their connections to be weak, and who immediately got out of the way: The Little Carpenter, being convinced after this, that it was impossible to complete the number demanded, resolved to go home, and patiently await the event; and was several miles on his road, when the Governor was informed of it, who was equally alarmed and uneasy: He was now very desirous to finish the campaign with as



much credit as possible, and to return to Charles-town, with the appearance at least of a conqueror; and this could not be done without Attakullakulla's assistance and concurrence; he therefore dispatched Lieutenant Coytmore, on the 25th of December, after him, to desire him to return to the camp; which he readily did, the next day about 11 o'clock A. M. and at 4 P. M. we were informed, that a peace was concluded, or rather renewed, with the Indians; for as yet there had been no blood drawn on either side: This treaty was signed, on the part of the Indians, by Attakullakulla and a warrior from the Overhill Cherokees, who came with him; and by four others of those that had been confined, for which, they and a few more got their liberty. The Governor, impowered by one of the articles, detained 22 of those confined, as hostages, till their nation should complete the number demanded as criminals; this was said to have been done with their own consent, but, as they were prisoners, they could have no free choice; and, if they must remain such, it was of little moment to them under what denomination they were kept: About this time another Indian was delivered up, for whom one of the hostages was released; these three follows, given up by their countrymen, were carried to Charles-town, where they died in confinement. On the 29th of December, the small-pox appeared in our camp; it had raged for some time before our arrival in the Indian town, and killed almost every one it attacked. Mr. Lyttelton took many precautions to prevent the infection spreading into our army, which was incamped on the banks of the river opposite to and near Keowee; among other means of prevention, the Governor desired the Indians to burn the houses and cloaths of those who had died of it; which was complied with; but, in my opinion, it hurried the

disease among us, by the smoke driving the infectious particles towards us. Dr. Mead, in his Essay on the Plague, informs us, "That, at Skipton, a little town upon the river Stour, in Worcestershire, a poor vagabond was seen walking in the streets, with the small-pox upon him; the people, frightened, took care to have him carried to a little house at some distance from the town, providing him with necessaries. In a few days the man died; they ordered him to be buried deep in the ground, and his house and cloaths to be burnt; the wind blew the smoke upon the houses on one side of the town; in that part, some days after, eight persons were seized with the small-pox: so dangerous is heat in all kinds of pestilential disorders, and so diffusive of contagion."

As very few in our little army had gone through the small-pox, and being every way unprovided for such an accident; all immediately separated to return to the settlements, dreading and avoiding any intercourse with one another; and suffered much from hunger: The Governor followed next day, and arrived in Charles-town, January 8, 1760; where he was received as a conqueror, with illuminations, bonfires, and addresses from every society and profession; such as the intripidity of a Wolfe, or the gallant and exemplary behaviour of a Lord Howe, or such like, could only deserve: The propriety of their application to Mr. Lyttelton, on this occasion, I leave to the reader's judgment.

This expedition, which cost the province about 25,000*l*. sterling, and from which much greater things had been expected, only increased the ill-humour of the Cherokees, who received many insults during the course of it, which converted their desire of peace into a rage for war: No notice was taken of the many grievances and



oppressions they had to complain of; and, to convince them that no redress was intended, a person they knew to be their enemy, and had too much reason to dislike, was left to command the fort, from whom they expected every insult and mortification in his power; but what they resented above all was the imprisoning of their head-men, contrary to natural right, national justice, and the promises made to them in Charles-town; for these reasons, before the end of January, they attacked the house of a trader, about a mile from Fort-Prince-George, where they killed about 14 white men; and they made several unsuccessful attempts to surprise the fort, and release their friends confined there.

They next contrived the following stratagem, to destroy the commanding officer, which succeeded too well: Oconostota, about the middle of February, sent an Indian woman, whom he knew to be always made welcome at the fort, to tell the commanding officer, that he had something of consequence to communicate to him, and would be glad to speak with him at the river-side; this gentleman imprudently consented, and was shot at, and mortally wounded, while talking with the Warrior, by a party of Indians, who had been hid among the bushes for this base purpose: To revenge this, the soldiers of the garrison were permitted to kill the innocent and unfortunate prisoners, called hostages; who were butchered to death, in a manner too shocking to relate. By this massacre, for I can give it no softer name, most of the head-warriors lost relations and friends, which fired them with an implacable desire of revenge; they set out immediately in small partiess against the settlements, and their vengeance fell, with a merciless and heavy hand, on the innocent and defenceless planters: Many men, women, and children, were barbarously



killed; many who fled into the woods, for safety, lost themselves and miserably perished, and a considerable number were carried into captivity, suffering every species of distress a savage and provoked enemy could inflict upon them; the luckiest, who escaped the Indians and gained the lower settlements, were reduced, from affluence, plenty and independence, to poverty, beggary and want. This desolation extended upwards of 100 miles; every hour brought to Charles-town accounts of ravages, depredations, scalpings and ruin; the unhappy sufferers calling aloud for assistance and support; but alas! the province (distressed by the expences of the late expedition, and at the same time afflicted with the small-pox, of which dangerous disease no less than 4000 then lay ill in Charles-town) was unable of itself to manage this war, unwisely brought upon us.

The Governor applied to General Amherst for assistance, who immediately ordered 1200 choice men, under the command of the Honourable Colonel Montgomery; this gallant officer arrived in April, and marched directly towards the Indians; and on the 1st of June, by a very spirited and unusual march of 60 miles, without halting to sleep, reached and surprised the lower towns, burnt them all, took about 40 prisoners, and drove the rest to seek for shelter and subsistence among the other divisions. The Colonel rested his men some time after this, at Fort-Prince George, and then proceeded to give the Indians further chastisement: He penetrated into their middle settlements, but was attacked on his march by a large body of Indians, who had taken possession of a very advantageous post on his road, from which he drove them with difficulty; they killed and wounded about 100 of his men, on whose account he was obliged to return to the settlement: for his party, being only in-

tended for a *coup de main*, was not provided with tools to form posts for the wounded. Some time in July he received General Amherst's orders to embark for New-York, which he did about the middle of August, leaving four companies of the Royal Scots to guard our western frontiers, if the Indians should be hardy enough, after the drubbing they had received, to commit any further insults.

About this time the unhappy garrison of Fort-Loudon, which consisted of a detachment of 100 men from his Majesty's independent companies, and about as many provincials, was reduced to the deplorable alternative of starving in their fort, or submitting themselves to the mercy of the Indians; they had long struggled with uncommon hardships, their only food for some months past being poor horse-flesh, and that in a small quantity, with what vegetables they could pick up within the fort; but now even these were consumed, and no appearance of relief from any quarter: By the address of Captain Stuart of the Provincials, they made a capitulation with the savages, to whom they agreed to deliver up the fort, with the stores, cannon, and part of the ammunition; part they were allowed to carry with them. The Cherokees promised to protect them on their march to the nearest English settlement, and to hunt for their subsistence; but this they perfidiously broke, and early on the morning of August the 9th, the second day of their march, they attacked the garrison with great numbers; but after killing 26 or 29, including all the officers, except Captain Stuart, (who was carried by force, by some friendly Indians, from the rest) the savages stopt their slaughtering hands; they intended this as a satisfaction for the Fort-Prince-George massacre, and wanted to kill only a number of whites equal to what their na-



tion lost there; the survivors were all carried into captivity, and were afterwards redeemed, at a great expence, by the Province. Our people were so weakened and dispirited by famine and fatigue, that they made no resistance; besides the attack was unexpected, and so soon over, that they had no time to recollect themselves, or to form any plan for their defence.

Fort-Loudon was built in 1756, and is seated on the Tanassee river, in the Upper Cherokees, upwards of 500 miles from Charles-town; where it is impossible, in time of war, to support or relieve it, if the Indians chuse to oppose us, without an army too large to be subsisted at so great a distance from the settlements, on account of the very long and difficult land carriage: Mr. Lyttelton could not help observing this, while he was at Fort-Prince-George; when he was often put in mind of drawing off the Fort-Loudon garrison, which at that time might have been easily effected, but he always refused it.

This conduct of the Cherokees convinced us, that they were not yet heartily disposed for peace; Lieutenant Governor Bull, who now happily presided in the Government, applied once more to General Amherst for assistance. The General sent Colonel James Grant with about 1000 soldiers. The Province exerted itself very considerably; a new provincial regiment was raised; the Rangers were regimented, and both put under the command of the Colonel, who marched towards the enemy, as soon as the necessary number of carriages was provided. He entered the Cherokee country some time in May, 1761; and in the beginning of June was attacked by a large party of Indians, near the same place where they fought Colonel Montgomery the year before; he easily dispersed them, and marched into their middle set-



tlements, where he destroyed 15 towns, with all their growing crop of provisions; and continued 30 days in the heart of their country, without any opposition. It must be owned, that the Indians poorly defended their country, which is all mountainous, where a few resolute men might easily defend themselves against any number, and are attacked with great hazard. Colonel Grant returned to Fort-Prince-George, some time in July; and incamped there to wait the effects of this last chastisement. The Indians now despaired of help from the French, who had flattered them with hopes of assistance; and, being heartily tired of the war, in which they had suffered much, and were generally worsted, they sued for peace, which was given them on terms very advantageous to the Province, and to the honour of Colonel Grant, by the Lieutenant Governor.

The Creek is the next nation to us, in point of distance; they have two divisions, called Upper and Lower; the last about 400 miles, the other 500 distant S. W. from Charles-town; they inhabit a very fine country, extremely well watered, and have something more than 2000 gunmen: They are politic, warlike, and jealous of their independence: and play an artful game between the English, French, and Spaniards, they are much courted by these European nations; they make the most of us, and are not insensible of the importance of their friendship, particularly in time of war: They have lately insulted and killed several Carolina traders, for which no satisfaction has been yet given or demanded. The late treaty of peace with France and Spain, by the cession of all Florida and part of Louisiana to Britain, has given us a great advantage over this Indian tribe, who may very easily be attacked from Mobile, which is not 150 miles from the heart of their country, and has water carriage all the way.

The last tribe I have to take notice of is the Chickesaws, the faithful friends and constant allies of the English; they live between 6 and 700 miles, due west, distant from Charles-town, near the banks of the Mississippi; they have justly obtained the character of the most warlike of Indians known to us; and have, in defence of their liberty, maintained a constant war against the whole force of the French in Louisiana, since their settling in it; they have often met this European people in open fields, have fought and beat them; they are at present greatly lessened in their number by this perpetual war, and have but one town, and about 300 gunmen: They speak the same language with the Chactaws, who acknowledge the Chickesaws to be their elder brothers. This Province is kind to them, and supports them, as well as the great distance will permit; it is but just to say, that they deserve every service in our power, nor can we do too much for such bold and steady defenders of liberty, a character Britons are proud to be distinguished by: They assisted us in the late Cherokee war.

## CHAPTER VII.

### *Of Indigo.*

The following directions, for the cultivation of the indigo plant, and extracting the dye from it, were sent to me by an ingenious planter, who has long practised them with success:

“As the quantity and quality of indigo greatly depend on the cultivation of the plant, it is proper to observe, that it seems to thrive best in a rich light soil, unmixed with clay or sand; the ground to be planted should be



ploughed, or turned up with hoes, some time in December, that the frost may render it rich and mellow; it must also be well harrowed, and cleansed from all grass, roots, stumps of trees, &c. to facilitate the hoeing, after the weed appears above ground. The next thing to be considered is the choice of seed, in which the planter should be very nice; there is great variety of it, and from every sort good indigo may be made, but none answers so well in this colony as the true Guatemala; which, if good, is a small, oblong black seed, very bright and full, and, when rubbed in the hand, will appear as if finely polished.

“ We generally begin to plant here, about the beginning of April, in the following manner: The ground (being well prepared) is to be furrowed with a drill-plough or hoe, 2 inches deep, to receive the seed, and at 18 inches distant from each other; the seed must be sown regularly in these trenches, and not very thick; then lightly covered with earth. If the weather proves warm and serene, the plant will appear above ground in 10 or 14 days: a bushel of seed will sow 4 acres.

“ The ground, though not grassy, should be hoed as soon as the plant appears, to loosen the earth about it, which would otherwise much impede its growth. When the weed is in full bloom, it is to be cut, without paying any regard to its height; its leaves are then thick and full of juice, and this generally happens in four months from the planting; previous to the cutting, a complete set of vats must be provided in good order, and of the following dimensions, for every 7 acres of weed: the steeper, or vat, wherein the weed is put to ferment, to be 16 feet square in the clear, and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet deep; the battery 12 feet long, 10 feet wide, and  $4\frac{1}{2}$  feet deep, from the top of the plate: They should be made of the



best cypress, or yellow pine plank, of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches thick, well fastened to the joints and studs (which should be either live oak or light wood) with seven inch spikes, and then calked to prevent leaking. Vats, thus made, will last here, notwithstanding the excessive heat, at least 7 years. When every thing is in readiness, cut the weed and lay it regular on the steeper, with the stalk upward, which will hasten the fermentation; then lay long rails, the length of the vat, at 18 inches distance from one another; and wedge them down on the weed, to prevent its buoying up, when water is pumped into the steeper, for which the softest water answers best; the quantity to be just sufficient to cover the weed, which must now be left to ferment; this happens sooner or later, in proportion to the heat of the weather and ripeness of the plant; generally in 12 or 15 hours. when the water, now loaded with the salts and substance of the weed, is to be let out of the steeper into the battery, there to be beat: To perform which operation, many different machines have been invented; however, any instrument may be made use of that will agitate the water with violence; when this has been done for the space of 15 or 20 minutes, take a little of the liquor up in a plate, and it will appear as full of a small grain, or curdled: you are then to let in a quantity of lime-water (kept in a vat for the purpose) to augment and precipitate the fæculæ, still stirring and beating vehemently the indigo water, till it becomes of a strong purple colour, and the grain hardly perceptible; and then left to settle, which it will do in 8 or 10 hours; after this the water must be gently drawn out of the battery through plug-holes contrived for that purpose, and the settled fæculæ will remain like a caput mortuum at the bottom of the vat, which, when taken up, should be carefully strained

through a horse-hair sieve, to render the indigo perfectly clean; and then put into bags, made of Osnaburghs 18 inches long and 12 wide, and suspended for about 6 hours, to drain out the water; after which the mouths of the bags must be well fastened, and put into a press, to be intirely freed from any remains of water, which would otherwise greatly hurt the quality of the indigo. The press I use for this purpose is a box of 5 feet in length,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  wide, and 2 deep, with holes at one end to let out the water; in this I lay the bags, one upon another, till the box is full; then lay on them a plank fitted to go into the box, on which I place a sufficient number of weights, which will, by a constant and gradual pressure, intirely squeeze out the water, and the indigo will become a fine stiff paste, to be then taken out of the bags, and spread on a plank, and cut into small pieces about 2 inches square, and placed in a drying-house made of logs, that it may receive all the advantages of an open and free air, without being exposed to the sun, which is very pernicious to the dye; I have known indigo, placed in the sun, burnt up, in a few hours, to a perfect cinder. While the indigo is in the drying-house, it should be carefully turned three or four times a day, to prevent its rotting; flies should likewise be kept from it; be sure that it is sufficiently dry before it is packed, lest, after it is headed up in barrels, it should sweat, which will certainly spoil and rot it."





AN  
ACCOUNT  
OF  
MISSIONARIES,  
SENT TO SOUTH CAROLINA.

THE PLACES TO WHICH THEY WERE APPOINTED,

THEIR LABOURS AND SUCCESS, &c.

## MISSIONARIES, &c.

*Missionaries sent to South Carolina ; the places to which they were appointed ; their Labours and Success. A War raised by the Yammooses and other Indians, against the English. The Tranquillity of this Province happily restored : Thirteen Churches and Four Chapels of Ease built : Salaries settled on the Clergy : Schools opened.*

THE province of *South-Carolina* shewed so earnest a desire of having Ministers of the Church of *England*, upon the first information they received of this corporation being erected, that the society resolved very early to send missionaries to this colony, that so good a disposition of the people might be assisted as soon as possible. Accordingly, in *June 1702*, the Reverend Mr. *Samuel Thomas* was sent thither. The society designed he should have first attempted the conversion of the *Yam-moosee Indians*, but the governor, Sir *Nathaniel Johnson*, and several other gentlemen there, judging it not to be a proper season to enter upon this work, he did not engage in that mission ; but after some small continuance in the governor's family, he was appointed by Sir *Nathaniel Johnson*, to the cure of the people settled on the three branches of *Cooper* river, 15 miles distant from each other ; but to make *Gooscreek* the chief place of his residence. *Gooscreek* was one of the largest and populous county towns, and settled by *English* families entirely well affected to the Church of *England*, and who formerly had for some time the Reverend Mr. *Corbin* for their minister. The parish is 20 miles in length, and from 8 to 14 in breadth ; Mr. *Thomas* discharged

his ministerial office with very good success, he acquainted the society, that tho' his communicants at first were but 5, they soon increased to 32; that he had taken much pains also in instructing the *Negroes*, and learned 20 of them to read. But in *October* 1706, this worthy missionary died, (as several gentlemen of the country wrote word) very much lamented for his sound doctrine, exemplary life, and industry; after having laid a good foundation for his successors, to carry on the work he had begun.

The society appointed the Reverend Dr. *Le Jeau* to succeed him. Upon his arrival in the country in 1706, he acquainted them, he had met with an extraordinary kind reception from his excellency the governor and the chief Justice, and had received many tokens of great civility and goodness from several worthy persons. The people were then very busie in providing all materials for fitting up the church and parsonage house, which they soon after compleated. He transmitted to the society an account of the state of his parish and other neighbouring settlements, wherein he represented very earnestly, that it was the greatest pity imaginable, to see how many various opinions had been spread there, by a multitude of teachers and expounders of all sorts and perswasions; and yet he could find very few, that understood Christianity, even as to the essential parts of it; yet the parents and masters were endued with much good will, and a ready disposition, to have their children and servants taught the Christian religion. He was not only very diligent in his proper cure at *Gooscreek*, but also assisted in other places, where a minister was wanting; the church at *Charles-Town* being some time after his arrival vacant, he used to preach once a month there, where at *Easter* he had



but 24 communicants, tho' there were above 500 persons of age in the place. He sometimes visited the French settlement in Orange Quarter, then entirely destitute of a minister, and administred the sacraments among them. This settlement consisted then of about 32 families, out of which there were 50 persons communicants. His own parish had about 100 families, making up 1000 persons, much the greater number of which were members of the Church of England. He performed all parts of his ministerial duty with great diligence. The first year of his mission, he baptized 21 children, the second 19, and the number of the communicants increased to 35. He instructed and baptized many Negroes and Indian slaves: and whereas he found several parents had neglected to have their children baptized, because they paid some duties to the minister, he acquainted them he desired nothing, and prevailed upon a considerable number of them to bring their children for baptism; and by his private as well as publick discourses perswaded several persons of a grown age, to attend him to be instructed in the essential doctrines of Christianity, in order for receiving baptism. He used frequently on week-days to catechize the younger people at his house, as finding nothing conduced more towards promoting the gospel, than this private instruction of the youth. The Doctor was not only very laborious in his function, but by God's blessing very successful, and happy in gaining the affections of his people. Soon after his being fixed among them, they made a voluntary subscription of 60*l*. a year Carolina money for him. The church they first built became too small for the growing number of his parishioners, and they erected a beautiful brick edifice. A parsonage house was built by some publick benefactions, which happening to be some time after unfortu-

nately destroyed by fire (all but the brick-work) the charitable country bestowed a very considerable sum for its repair. Captain Schencingh, a worthy gentleman of the parish, gave 100 acres of good glebe land to the church for ever. The Doctor, after this, acquainted the society, that his parishioners were much improved, and become of a very sober, civil, and edifying behaviour, and that he had a full and constant appearance at church; tho' there remained some few atheistical persons and scoffers at all revelation. His congregation grew still more numerous, the communicants increased, and in 1714, they arose to 70 English, and 8 Negroes. In the year 1717, Dr. Le Jeau died; very much lamented by his own parishioners, and regretted by every one, who knew how useful and industrious he had been in promoting the gospel in those parts. In the year 1720, the society sent the Rev. Mr. Merry a missionary into Carolina, and the church of Gooscreek being then vacant, the parishioners requested him to come and reside among them, which he did for some time, but stayed not long, and returned again to England. The society, upon the request of the inhabitants of Gooscreek, soon after appointed another missionary, the Rev. Mr. Ludlam; he arrived there in the year 1724, and began his mission with great diligence. There were in his parish a large number of Negroes, natives of the place, who understood English well, he took good pains to instruct several of these in the principles of the Christian religion, and afterwards admitted them to baptism. He said if the masters of them would heartily concur to forward so good a work, all those who have been born in the country, might without much difficulty be instructed and received into the church. Mr. Ludlam continued his labours among the Negroes, and every year taught



and baptized several of them; in one year, eleven, besides some Mulattoes. The English of his parish were a very sober and well-behaved people, and duly attended divine worship. Some few, who had been of looser principles, and negligent of the ordinances of the gospel, were persuaded to a due conformity to the church, and several grown persons received baptism. The people continued regularly to bring their children to baptism, and devoutly frequented the sacrament. Mr. Ludlam persevered in a diligent discharge of all the duties of his function; but in October 1728, he died; and in testimony of his regard to the society's good designs, and his respect to the people of his parish, bequeathed by his last will, all his estate, real and personal, to the society in trust "for erecting and maintaining a school for the instruction of poor children of that parish." His whole estate is computed to amount to about 2000*l.* Carolina money, after payment of his debts.

2. The society sent the Rev. Mr. Maule, missionary to Carolina in 1707, he arrived there the same year; he was not appointed to any particular place, but it was left to the Governor and Council to fix him, where they should judge he could be most useful. Upon his arrival there, he met with a very favourable reception at Charles-Town, from the Governor and other gentlemen of the Province. He was soon after fixed in St. John's parish, on the western branch of Cooper River; it is a pleasant and healthful part of the country, and the planters there, were generally good, sober, and teachable people; but settled at a great distance from each other in scattered plantations. He was the first clergyman of the Church of England, that resided there for any considerable time. Upon his preaching at his first coming, to a good number of Churchmen, he had several



Independents and Anabaptists who came to hear him, and behaved themselves very devoutly and attentively, during the whole time of divine service. He took a great deal of pains in the discharge of his duty, and upon account of the distance between the settlements, was obliged to ride very often, which was exceeding fatiguing (especially during the sultry season in that country) as well as expensive to him. The good people were sensible of this difficulty he underwent in travelling, and to ease him as much as they could, did, without his knowledge, raise among themselves 25 pounds Carolina money, and bought a horse, and other accoutrements, and made him a present of them. Upon his first settling here, the English had no church to perform divine worship in, but about 10 French families had built them a small church, and their minister, Mr. Tuilliard offered Mr. Maule the use of his church, which he accepted, and preached often there; and such of the French as understood English, came to hear him. At other times, he preached up and down among the plantations, as the houses lay most convenient for the people to meet at. In the year 1706, an Act of Assembly had passed there for building 8 churches in 8 parishes, and 333 pounds Carolina money, was allotted for each: At length, about the year 1710, the English began to build a church, and this sum was expended now in building one in St. John's parish. All the outside was not finished till 1711. However, Mr. Maule resolved to begin to make use of it, tho' there was no conveniency of seats or pulpit, or other furniture. Soon after Colonel Broughton a worthy gentleman and serious Christian, coming to reside in that parish, he very generously adorned the church, made a communion-table, rail'd in the chancel, made a pulpit, reading desk, and some pews; all with cedar.

This good man's labours were attended with success, the people regularly came to divine service, and many frequented the sacrament; and the whole body of them were influenced to lead more orderly and Christian lives. Among other causes of their religious improvement he mentions, that the books which the society distributed among the people, by their missionaries, had a very good effect; and proved very instrumental in removing a great many prejudices out of the minds of some, and in making the whole people in general, more inquisitive about their spiritual concernment. Particularly, the Common-Prayer-Books which he had dispersed among the people, had influenced many to come to church; and Dr. Beveridge's Sermon of the Excellency and Usefulness of the Common-Prayer, which he distributed with the Common-Prayer-Books, was of great service.

Thus he continued diligent in all parts of his duty, till the fatal Indian war broke out, in the year 1715, at which time all his parishioners were driven from their plantations. In this calamity he did not forsake them, but retired with them to a garrison, whither they fled for safety; and continued for above 4 months to perform all the offices of his function; He baptized their children, visited their sick and wounded, and buried their dead, preached every Lord's-day, and read prayers twice every day in the week. The duty was much above his strength, especially as performed in a numerous croud, confined in a small compass of ground, and in very sultry weather too. However he underwent it with cheerfulness, "Considering (as he expresses himself) that having hitherto lived among them in their prosperity, I could not, in conscience, desert them in times of danger and distress, that so I might learn them by example as



well as doctrine, to submit with chearfulness to the will of God." Thus he persevered till the war grew less dangerous, and the people returned to their plantations. But this fatigue threw him into a bloody flux, thro' which, after many relapses, he died; very much lamented by all the country; and to express his hearty wishes to the society's designs, he made them, by his last will, residuary legatees, from which they received above 600 pound Carolina money.

The Rev. Mr. Moses Clerk was appointed by the society to succeed Mr. Maule, he arrived in Carolina in 1720, but a few months after, died. The Church-wardens and Vestry petitioned the society for another missionary, and the Rev. Mr. Bryant Hunt was sent over, but he was not successful in his mission: his contentious behaviour gave great offence to many of the parishioners; and in the year 1728, after many differences and contests, he left his parish, and returned to England. The society immediately after, in the year 1729, appointed the Rev. Mr. Daniel Dwight missionary to this parish.

3. The society received requests from the people of St. Bartholomew's parish for a missionary, and the Reverend Mr. Osborn was sent thither. He arrived in 1713, and was the first minister of the Church of England, that had settled there. His cure proved very difficult, for the parish was above 30 miles long from north to south, and 40 from east to west; there were about 120 families in it, at his first coming; the people were spread at great distances, in scattered plantations, over all this large tract of land; which made the fatigue and labour of serving his cure very great. He was obliged, for the people's conveniency, to officiate at 5 different places, some of them 20 miles distant from the place of



his abode. He acquainted the society, the people were very ready to be taught and instructed in the Christian faith, that soon after his being fixed among them, he had baptized above 70, many of them grown persons; at first they had some scruples about receiving the sacrament, but he began to remove them by private conferences. He continued very diligent in his duty, and was much respected by his parishioners. But in the year 1715, the unhappy Indian war broke out; the savages destroyed all the plantations in his parish, and also those of St. Helen's in Port-Royal Island. The people abandoned the place entirely; their houses and plantations were spoiled and burnt. The Indians made so sudden an irruption into these parts, that they were within less than three miles of Mr. Osborn's house, before they were discovered; he just had notice to make a difficult escape to Charles-Town, abandoning all that he had to the savages: where soon after he died, with the general character of an honest and useful man. This parish hath not yet recovered from the ravages of the Indians, many of the people did not return to their settlements; the society therefore have not fixed a missionary here; but some of the ministers of other parishes have occasionally officiated among those who returned to their plantations.

4. The parish of St. Helen's in Port-Royal-Island, agreed in 1712, to have a minister resident among them. They were acquainted with, and had a good esteem for the Reverend Mr. Guy, then assistant to the Reverend Mr. Johnson, the Rector of Charles-Town; they proceeded to elect him for their minister, according to the laws of this province; after having first obtained the consent of the Reverend Mr. Johnson, the Bishop of London's Commissary, then at Charles-Town. Pre-

sently after, they wrote to the Bishop of London, and to the society, an account of this election. They represented in their letters, that they were the most remote parish in the country, and not well settled as yet; that since their first fixing there, they never had a minister resident; and therefore prayed the society, in compassion to their great wants, to allow Mr. Guy a salary. Mr. Guy was then in Deacon's orders only; he returned to England in the year 1713, and received Priest's orders; and the society appointed him missionary there. He arrived in Carolina soon after, and acquainted the society, that he had entred upon his cure. This parish was very large and extensive, for the whole nation of the Yammossee Indians was included in it. Mr. Guy was very diligent in the discharge of all parts of his ministerial office; he instructed and baptized several grown persons, besides the younger children. Tho' there had been formerly some Anabaptist and Presbyterian teachers here, yet at his arrival, the people had no teacher of any persuasion, and lived all without using any kind of publick divine worship. Notwithstanding which, they were very well disposed; and for their greater conveniency, Mr. Guy performed divine service in some of the parishioners houses, sometimes in one part of the parish, sometimes in another, that all the people, at times, might have an opportunity of coming to divine worship. Mr. Guy wrote to the society, that he met with many favours from his parishioners, and that they behaved, both publickly and privately, very obligingly and kindly to him. But in the year 1715, both he and all his parish, narrowly and very providentially escaped; being cut off by the Indians. The Yammooses inhabiting part of that parish, rose suddenly and fell on the English; if there had not been a ship lying in the



river, on board of which, the English got, and so escaped to Charles-Town; they would have been all utterly destroyed by the savages. Some few who did not make a timely escape on board, fell into the Indians hands and were massacred.

5. Having mentioned before, this Indian war, and since I shall be obliged to take notice of it again, as a calamity, which not only very much stopped the progress of the gospel in those parts, but very greatly threatened the civil state of that country; I shall give the reader here some short account of it. In the year 1715, the Indians adjoining to this colony, all round from the borders of Fort St. Augustino to Cape Fear, had formed a conspiracy to extirpate the white people. This war broke out the week before Easter. The parish of St. Helen's had some apprehensions of a rising among the adjoining Indians, called the Yammosees. On Wednesday before Easter, Captain Nairn, agent among the Indians, went, with some others, to them, desiring to know the reason of their uneasiness, that if any injury had been done them, they might have satisfaction made them. The Indians pretended to be well content, and not to have any designs against the English. Mr. Nairn therefore and the other traders continued in the Pocotaligat-Town, one of the chief of the Yammosee nations. At night they went to sleep in the round-house, with the King, and chief War-Captains, in seeming perfect friendship; but next morning, at break of day, they were all killed with a volley of shot, excepting one man and a boy, who providentially escaped (the man much wounded) to Port-Royal, and gave notice of the rising of the Indians to the inhabitants of St. Helen's. Upon this short warning, a ship happening to be in the river, a great number of the inhabitants, about 300 souls, made



their escape on board her to Charles-Town, and among the rest, Mr. Guy, the society's missionary; having abandoned all their effects to the savages: some few families fell into their hands, who were barbarously tortured and murdered.

The Indians had divided themselves into two parties; one fell upon Port-Royal, the other upon St. Bartholomew's parish; about 100 Christians fell into their hands, the rest fled, among which, the Reverend Mr. Osborn, the society's missionary there. The women and children, with some of the best of their effects, were conveyed to Charles-Town; most of the houses and heavy goods in the parish were burnt or spoil'd. The Yamosees gave the first stroke in this war, but were presently joined by the Appellachee Indians. On the north side of the province, the English had at first, some hopes in the faithfulness of the Calabaws and Creek Indians, but they soon after declared for the Yamosees.

Upon news of this rising, the Governor (the Honourable Charles Craven, Esq.) with all expedition, raised the forces in Colleton county, and with what assistance more could be got presently, put himself at their head, and marched directly to the Indians, and the week after Easter came up with them and attacked them at the head of the river Cambahee; and after a sharp engagement put them to flight, and stopped all farther incursions on that side.

In the mean time, on the other northern side, the savages made an inroad as far as a plantation of Mr. John Herne, distant 30 miles from Goos creek; and treacherously killed that gentleman, after he had (upon their pretending peace) presented them with provisions. Upon news of this disaster, a worthy gentleman, Captain Thomas Barker, was sent thither with 90 men on horse-

back; but by the treachery of an Indian whom he trusted, fell into an ambuscade, in some thick woods, which they must necessarily pass. The Indians fired upon them from behind trees and bushes. The English dismounted, and attacked the savages, and repulsed them; but having lost their brave commanding officer, Mr. Barker, and being themselves in some disorder, made their retreat. Upon this advantage, the Indians came farther on toward Gooscreek, at news of which, the whole parish of Gooscreek became deserted, except two fortified plantations: and the Reverend Dr. Le Jeau, the society's missionary there, fled to Charles-Town.

These northern Indians, being a body of near 400 men, after attacking a small fort in vain, made proposals of peace, which the garrison unwarily hearkening to, admitted several of them into the fort, which they surprised and cut to pieces the garrison, consisting of 70 white people and 40 blacks; a very few escaped. After this they advanced farther, but on the 13th of June, Mr. Chicken, the Captain of the Gooscreek Company, met and attacked them, and after a long action, defeated them, and secured the province on that side from farther ravages.

The society received these calamitous relations from Carolina with much concern, both on account of the distress of the inhabitants and of their missionaries. They thought it incumbent on them to do something towards the relief of the latter, who were sent by them to those places. Accordingly a letter was wrote to all the missionaries, acquainting them, how sensible the society was of the hardships they underwent, and that they had agreed to give half a year's salary to each of them as a gratuity, for their present assistance. That this bounty might be paid them with all speed, a letter



was wrote by the same conveyance to Colonel Rhet, a worthy gentleman in that country, desiring him, on the account of the society, to pay each of their missionaries and schoolmasters half a year's salary; and in case the other clergy of the colony, who were not missionaries, should be in great streights upon account of this publick calamity, he should also pay each of them a sum, not exceeding 30 pounds sterling; which the society presented them towards their support; and that he might draw upon their Treasurer for all such sums paid. Colonel Rhet was pleased very kindly, to pay all the missionaries who apply'd to him, the money the society had directed; and also to the Reverend Mr. Lapierre, and Mr. Richburg, two French ministers, who were not employed by the society, 30 pound each; they were both just preparing to quit the country, on account of their great want, but were prevented by so seasonable a relief thro' the society's bounty.

6. Having given the reader this short relation of the Indian war, which brought so much confusion on the religious as well as civil state of this growing colony; I shall now resume the first subject, and continue on the account of the labours of the missionaries in each parish. The inhabitants of the parish of St. Helen's in Port-Royal Island, before mentioned, had been all drove from their settlements, by the Yammooses; but upon the suppressing of the Indian ravages, the people returned to their plantations. They were encouraged to do so, the sooner, because Port-Royal Island had a very capacious and safe harbour, and was likely to become a place of great trade, as being a commodious station for shipping, and the country around, affording plenty of all provisions. Here are now computed to be above 70 families. They obtained a considerable sum of money from



the government there, towards building a church, to which, several worthy gentlemen added contributions, and in the year 1724, built a small church, a neat brick building, in length, from the west-end to the chancel, 40 feet, and in breadth 30; the chancel is 10 feet square: The communion-table, pulpit, desk, and some pews are made of Cedar. There was a pressing occasion for having a church here, because the inhabitants of this parish live at a great distance from each other, and the nearest of them at least 40 miles distant, from any other parish-church. The people when they began to build their church, requested the society to send them a missionary. The Reverend Mr. Lewis Jones was appointed hither in the year 1725. He hath behaved himself worthily in the discharge of all the duties of his mission, and instructed several grown persons in the Christian faith, and admitted them to baptism. He continues still here.

7. The Reverend Mr. Hasell was sent to the parish of St. Thomas in 1709. He had been formerly employed by the society, as catechist in Charles-town; which office he discharged with diligence: The first church built here, (now used for a chapel of ease) was called Pomkinhill Church, from a rising hill of that name, on which it was built; it is situate near the river side, made of Cypress wood, 30 foot square, erected about the year 1703, at the charge of the neighbourhood, and by the particular assistance of Sir Nathaniel Johnson. But the parish church of St. Thomas was built of brick, situate on a neck of land, on the north-west of Wandoe river, and south-west of Cooper river; in pursuance of an act of Assembly made in 1706. The foundation of this church was laid in 1707, and the building finished the next year; Mr. Hasell was the first minister of this

church, elected by virtue of the above-mentioned act. There are in this parish upwards of 600 acres of glebe land, 200 of which adjoin to the church; and 420 to the chapel of ease. There is as yet no parsonage-house built in this parish, but the money allowed by the Assembly for that use is laid out at interest, till it shall arise to a sufficient sum to build one. There were, in the year 1713, about 120 families in this parish, including the settlements in Orange quarter; but now the inhabitants are computed to amount to 565 whites, 950 negroes, 60 Indian slaves, and 20 free negroes, in all near 1600 souls. Mr. Hasell had very good success in his ministry, was respected and loved by his parishioners, and a great many persons of unsettled principles were induced to hold a firm faith. A great many young persons, descended of dissenters of various tenets, conformed to the Church of England, and several young men of French parentage in Orange Quarter, who understood English, constantly attended his church. The books the society sent to be distributed by him were of great use, especially the Common-Prayer-Books, given to the younger people of the French, and to dissenters children. Mr. Hasell continues still in this mission, with a very advantageous character.

The district of Orange quarter is a French settlement, but in the first division of the country into parishes, was part of St. Thomas's parish; few of the people attended service in the English church for want of the language. The major part of them usually met together in a small church of their own, where they generally made a pretty full congregation, when they had a French minister amongst them; they were poor, and unable to support their minister, and made application to the Assembly of the province, to be made a parish, and to have some



publick allowance for a minister episcopally ordained, who should use the liturgy of the Church of England, and preach to them in French. Accordingly, they were incorporated by the name of the parish of St. Dennis, till such time as they should understand English. They have now a good church built about the time St. Thomas's was, and never had but one minister, Mr. Lapierre.

8. In the year 1705, the Reverend Mr. Dunn was sent to St. Paul's parish in Colleton county. A small but convenient brick church was erected, about the year 1708, in length 35, in breadth 25 feet, situate on the head of Steno river, about 20 miles distant from Charles Town to the southward. It is built on a piece of land given by Mr. Edmund Bellinger, a gentleman of that parish; and a narrow piece of land near the church, containing about 71 acres, was laid out for a glebe. A little, but commodious dwelling-house of brick, was built for the minister, with an out-kitchen, and some necessary timber buildings; but this house and the other out-buildings, were burnt in the Indian war. Mr. Dunn wrote word that he found the common people very ignorant, and was obliged to stay some time to instruct them before he could properly administer the sacraments. He did not continue long there, and Mr. Mateland succeeded him, about the year 1708, but died not long after. The Reverend Mr. William Tredwell Bull was appointed missionary there in 1712. He demeaned himself with prudence and civility, and was so diligent in all parts of his pastoral care, that the church considerably increased; and the flourishing condition of it at present is much owing to his labours. In the year 1721, the vestry laid a petition before the General Assembly, setting forth, "That the number of the inhabitants and of the members of the Church of England



was so much increased, that their parish-church was too little for them, and that for want of room, some were forced to stand without the door, and others hang at the windows; and that having agreed among themselves upon the necessary enlargement, they found it would cost considerably more than 1000 pound when completed, with such decency as becomes the house of God: That they were willing to contribute to their utmost, tho' many of them had been great sufferers in the Indian war, and scarce able to build their own houses destroyed in that war." The General Assembly very generously allowed 500*l*. and the people very liberally and cheerfully subscribed 1000*l*. more, Carolina money; with which they made a very neat and regular additional building to their church. Mr. Bull continued till the year 1723, very successful in the discharge of the duties of his function, and happy in having the love and esteem of his parishioners. He was obliged to return to England, on account of some family affairs, and having resolved to continue here, was, in consideration of his services to the church abroad, promoted to a benefice here in England. In the year 1724, the society sent the Rev. Mr. David Standish, missionary to this parish; he entered upon the duties of his function with diligence, and behaved himself so as to gain the esteem and love of his parishioners. His congregation increased, and several grown persons desired and received baptism. He extended his labours to other places, where there was no minister; particularly in Edisto Island; where a large number of churchmen and anabaptists used to meet him. The people of his parish made an additional building to their church, and were so much satisfied with their minister, that in the year 1727, they purchased a glebe for him, of 400 acres of land, joining

to the church, and very pleasantly situated on a large river, about 20 miles distant from Charles-Town, with a house upon it, and some other necessary buildings ; Mr. Standish continued diligent in all parts of his office, till the year 1728, in which he died.

9. The inhabitants of Christ-church parish had not a missionary sent to them until the year 1711. However, that the people might not be left destitute of having Divine worship celebrated, the reverend the clergy neighbouring to this parish, Mr. Commissary Johnston, Mr. Maule, Mr. Hasell, missionaries from the society, and the Rev. Mr. Lapierre, gave each a sermon monthly at this church, until the society appointed the Reverend Mr. Gilbert Jones their missionary there. The foundation of Christ-Church was laid in 1707, and the publick allowance of 333*l.* was expended, but the building not completed in 1712, when Mr. Jones came to this parish. Upon his being elected rector of this church, the parishioners petitioned the General Assembly for a further sum toward finishing their church ; 200*l.* more was given, and the parish raised among themselves about 67 pounds more, with which they finished their church, bought 100 acres of land for a glebe, and built a convenient house and kitchen at 4 miles distance from the church. Mr. Jones sat about the duties of his function, with great diligence and earnestness ; and as the people had been long without a resident minister, there were many grown children and persons of age unbaptized. He persuaded them to bring their children for baptism, and soon after his being settled there, received into the church 136 children besides 7 grown persons ; tho' the number of housekeepers then was but 105. He used also great pains to persuade the masters and mistresses to assist in having their slaves instructed in the



Christian faith; but found this good work lay under difficulties as yet insuperable. He wrote thus concerning this matter, "Tho' labouring in vain be very discouraging, yet (by the help of God) I will not cease my labours, and if I shall but gain but one proselyte, shall not think much of all my pains." He was not only very laborious in his cure, but out of a kind regard to the poverty of his parishioners, occasioned by the Indian war, he declined taking any contributions from them, lest some unsettled persons might think their religion too dear, and therefore forsake it. He contracted several fits of sickness by his constant application, and so impair'd his constitution, that he was obliged to ask leave from the society to come to England; the society consented, and he returned home in 1721, and continued here in England.

The society sent the Reverend Mr. Pownal in his room, he arrived there in November 1722. He acquainted about two years after, that the number of his parishioners was 470 free-born, and that there were but few dissenters among them; but there were above 700 slaves, some of which understand the English tongue, but very few knew any thing of God or religion. The people were very sober and industrious; he had a full congregation, and above 30 communicants, and had baptized several grown persons. Not long after, having some affairs in England, which required his presence, he returned from his parish, and continued here. This parish is at present without a missionary, but the society have agreed to send one in a little time.

10. The church of St. Andrew's is situate about 13 miles distant from Charles-Town, on the south side of Ashley River; the parish extends about 21 miles in length, and 7 in breadth, and contains about 180 fami-



lies. The Rev. Mr. Wood was the first minister they had; a very deserving man, as Mr. Chief Justice Trott acquainted the society: He entred upon this cure in the year 1707, but died soon after: the parish was long vacant. The Reverend Mr. Taylor was appointed missionary there, in the year 1711; but there arose some contentious disputes at first, and afterwards an unhappy distaste between him and his parishioners, that he was desirous to be removed. He accordingly removed to North-Carolina with the society's permission in 1717. About this time, the Reverend Mr. Guy, who, after the desolation of his parish (St. Helen's Port-Royal) in the Indian war, had been sent missionary to Naragansett in New-England; returned, upon account of his health, to Carolina, and was soon after settled at St. Andrew's instead of Mr. Taylor. He made amends by his prudence and courteous demeanor, for the disobliging conduct of his predecessor. His former behaviour had gained him the general esteem of the people in the country. The vestry of this church therefore, upon his arrival, invited him to settle with them; as he had no parish, he accepted of their very kind offer; and the society allowed of his being fixed there, upon the Vestry's request, joined to his own. He continued to perform his ministerial office with good diligence and success. This church was built of brick, about 40 feet long, and 25 broad, there was a burying place contiguous to it of about 3 acres. A small boarded parsonage-house was built, about a mile distant from the church, and 26 acres of glebe land bought for the minister; but there hath been since made an addition of 60 acres of good land to this glebe, about the year 1727. Mr. Guy was not only careful in his own cure, but extended his labours to some other places remote, where he preached, adminis-

tred the sacrament, and baptized several children, and some grown persons. He had such audiences generally at the house where he preached, that the people finding it too little to hold them, began to raise a subscription for building a church. The parish-church in the year 1722, became too small to hold the congregation: The people therefore agreed to enlarge it, and presently subscribed 500 pounds. The Commissioners appointed by the Vestry, agreed with workmen, and prepared materials for building; and the General Assembly of the Province, the more to encourage them to go on; ordered the Publick Receiver pay out of the Treasury, the sum of 400*l*. because the subscription money of the parish was not sufficient to defray the charges. The church as now enlarged, is in the form of a cross, begun in the year 1723, and since carried on by the contributions of the parishioners; it is 40 feet long, and 52 feet broad, with a handsome chancel 12 feet long, and 24 feet wide, built of good brick, and the roof of cypress wood; the roof of the old part was likewise pulled down, and built of cypress, well arched, ceiled and plaistered, as is the new part: The church is adorned and beautified, with neat cedar pews, a large east-end window, and two others, one, on each side of the communion-table, with more on each side of the body of the church, all neatly arched, and well glazed. A decent font is to be placed on a pedestal 3 steps high in a semicircle, at the entrance of the church, and a galary is designed to be forthwith built at the west end, for those people who have no pews. Mr. Guy persuaded several persons who were neglectful of the offices of the church to a more regular behaviour, and baptized many grown persons; and as the number of his hearers considerably increased, so also did the number of the constant communicants: he continues now in this mission.



11. The parish of St. George was formerly a part of St. Andrew's, and taken out of that by an act of the assembly, in the year 1717. It is about 19 miles long and 8 broad, consisting of 500 English, in 115 families, besides 1300 negroe slaves. The church is situate about 9 miles from Gooscreek, 11 from St. Andrew's, and 28 from Charles-Town. By the act of assembly passed in the year 1717, for building this church, Alexander Skeene, Esq. ; Capt. Walter Izard, Mr. Thomas Diston, Samuel Wragg, Esq. ; Captain John Canty, Mr. Thomas Warring, and Mr. Jacob Satur, were named commissioners. These worthy gentlemen were very zealous to carry on this work. The allowance made by the assembly of 333 pounds being not sufficient for this purpose, they very earnestly promoted a subscription among the gentlemen of the country, and 1196 pound Carolina money was subscribed, yet that proving too little, the public did four years after, give 466 pounds more, to defray the charge of the building. A church was begun to be built in the year 1719, and in the year following the out-work was compleated ; it is a brick building 50 feet long and 30 broad, besides the chancel. There is also a very good brick parsonage-house built, not half a mile distant from the church, situate on a very pleasant spot of ground near Ashley River, with a glebe of 75 acres of land.

The Rev. Mr. Peter Tustian was appointed missionary here, by the society, in the year 1719 ; but upon his arrival, he found the country so disordered with party divisions, that he soon removed to Maryland.

The reverend Mr. Varnod succeeded him, he arrived there in 1723, and was very kindly received by his parishioners ; they were so well inclined to the Church of England communion, that they constantly attended Di-



vine service, and so few absented themselves, that the church began soon to be too small for the congregation. A year after his arrival at Christmas, he had more communicants than ever were known to meet at that place, near fifty persons, and what was still remarkable, seventeen negroes. He baptized several grown persons, besides children and negroes belonging to Alexander Skeene, Esq. Mr. Varnod extended his labours beyond his own parish, he sometimes used to preach at a neighbouring French congregation, much to their edification. His own parishioners were also well satisfied with him. He continues still in his mission with good success.

12. The parish of St. James Santee consists chiefly of French refugees conforming to the Church of England. It contains upwards of 100 French families, and 60 English, besides free Indians, and negroe slaves.— Their minister hath only the salary of the country and some occasional gratuities, the whole making but a very scanty support. The rev. Mr. Philip de Richbourg was their first minister, and approved himself in all respects a worthy man; upon his dying in 1717, the parish was a long time without a minister. In 1720, the rev. Mr. Pouderous, a French clergyman, went over, and was fixed there by the Bishop of London; but neither he, nor Mr. Richbourg, had any constant salary from the society, though they have had several occasional gratuities. The people are religious and industrious, and very soon, in the year 1706, petitioned the governor and general assembly to have their settlement erected into a parish, and signified their being extream desirous of being united to the body of the Church of England, whose doctrine and discipline they did most highly esteem;— and the governor and assembly did pass an act, that year, erecting their settlement into a parish, fixing the

parochial church at James Town, and setting forth its boundaries, which contained about 18 miles in compass, but by a subsequent act, they have been much enlarged: The rev. Mr. Pouderous continues now their minister, very industrious in his function.

13. Prince George's parish was erected in the northern parts of this province, at a place called Wineaw, in the year 1725, when Francis Nicholson, Esq. was governor of this colony. There was a considerable sum of money given, by act of assembly, for building a church here; and Governor Nicholson, to forward the work, gave 100*l*. and the people contributed the rest. This is a frontier place, so very far distant from any church, as the inhabitants have wrote to the society, That they have lived many years without seeing any divine public worship performed, without having their children baptized, or the dead buried in any Christian order.—The parish contains at present above 500 Christian souls, besides negroes and Indians, and the people were so zealous to have a minister of the Church of England, that they built a convenient church in the year 1726, and obtained of the country a salary of 100*l*. proclamation money, and purchased 200 acres of glebe land for their minister. Upon the repeated desires of the people here, the society appointed the Reverend Mr. Morritt missionary in 1728.

14. The church of St. Philip's in Charles-town, the capitol of the whole province of Carolina, had a salary of 150*l*. of that country money, settled on the minister, by act of assembly. The society were in hopes this might be a sufficient maintenance, and therefore did not at first allow any thing to the minister. The bishop of London (Dr. Compton,) was very earnest to have a person of prudence and experience to take the cure of this,



the chief place in the province ; one who should act as his commissary, and have the inspection of church matters. The Rev. Mr. Gideon Johnston was recommended to the bishop in the year 1707, by the archbishop of Dublin, by the bishop of Killaloo, and the bishop of Elphin, his diocesan, in the fullest manner. "His grace assured, he had known Mr. Johnston from a child, and did testifie, he had maintained a fair reputation, and was the son of a worthy clergyman in Ireland ; that he dared answer for his sobriety, diligence and ability, and doubted not but he would execute his duty so as to merit the approbation of all with whom he should be concerned." Bishop Compton was fully satisfied with this character ; sent him to Charlestown, and made him his commissary. Mr. Johnston arrived in Carolina, after a long and tedious voyage, and was unfortunately near losing his life, almost in sight of Charles-town. The bar of sand at the harbour's mouth, kept out the ship, in which he was passenger, till the next tide ; and Mr. Johnston being sick, was impatient to get ashore, went into a sloop with three other persons ; a sudden gust of wind rising, wrecked the sloop upon a sand-bank ; they lay there two days, before the boats and canoes, which were sent out, could discover them, almost perished with hunger and thirst.

Mr. Johnston upon his entering on his cure, found the people at Charles-Town unhappily disturbed with feuds and animosities ; yet he managed himself with so much temper and prudence, as to avoid giving any offence, or incurring the displeasure of either side. What afflicted him most, was the ill habit of body, which, by various incidents in his voyage, and since his arrival in the country, he had contracted. However, he struggled through every difficulty, discharged his duty with great



diligence, and to the general satisfaction of his parishioners, though his cure, as being in the most populous place, was very laborious. He read prayers and preached twice on Sundays, read prayers on Wednesdays and Fridays, and frequently catechized the children. Besides the discharge of all his ministerial duties, he became useful and happy in composing, in some degree, the divisions among the people, and by a very modest and peaceable applying, persuaded many, who had differences, to converse without passion or bitterness. By these, and many other methods, he gained the respect and love of the best sort of people, of many parties. His parishioners knew his circumstances were strait, and that the country allowance was not sufficient to maintain him and his large family; the assembly being then sitting, they procured a clause to be made in one of the acts then passed, adding 50*l.* a year more to his church, during his incumbency. This was a very special mark of their favour to him, and the more so, because it was done without his using any publick solicitation for it. He continued very assiduous in every branch of his office, until the year 1711, at which time, several pestilential diseases raged over all the country, and occasioned a great mortality, especially at Charles-Town; notwithstanding all these difficulties, he discharged all the duties of his function with unwearied diligence. He contracted by his labours many infirmities, which increased daily on him; and he was forced to come to England for the recovery of his health. After staying here about a year and a half, he returned to his church at Carolina, with an allowance of 50*l.* a year salary from the society. He entered again upon the duties of his cure, with his former diligence and success, and continued so till April, in 1716. The honourable Charles

Craven, Esq., the governour of the country, was then returning to England. Mr. Johnston, with 30 more gentlemen, went into a sloop to take their leave of him, then in the man of war, and under sail. They waited on the governor and parted with him, but in their return back, a storm arose, the sloop was upset, and Mr. Johnston being lame of the gout, and in the hold, was drowned; the other gentlemen who were upon the deck, partly by swimming, and partly by holding on the sloop, saved themselves, till help came. The sloop afterwards drove, and that, and Mr. Johnston's body, were found on the same bank of sand, on which he had almost perished, at his first coming to the country: he was buried at Charles Town, very much lamented by his parishioners, and especially all the clergy his brethren.

15. The missionaries represented frequently to the society the great want of schools in this province, for the instruction of the children in the principles of religion, and teaching convenient learning. Dr. Le Jeau at Gooscreek, did very earnestly press the society to allow a salary for a schoolmaster in his parish, and they appointed Mr. Dennis schoolmaster in the year 1710; he had a good number of scholars for several years till the Indian war broke out, which dispersed the people and all his scholars. The society appointed also the Rev. Mr. Guy to be schoolmaster in Charles-town, and also curate or assistant to the minister of Charles-town, because that cure seemed too laborious for one person. There is now a handsome school-house built by act of assembly, and the schoolmaster allowed a salary of 100*l*. proclamation money. Upon Mr. Guy's being removed to the cure of a parish, Mr. Morrit was fixed schoolmaster here; but being lately chose minister of a parish, and leaving the school, the society have appointed the Rev. Mr. Lambert, schoolmaster and catechist, or afternoon



preacher there ; and accounts have been transmitted to the society, that he discharges his duty with diligence, and hath been very useful in training up the youth.

The people of the whole country are thoroughly sensible of the necessity of schools, for the Christian education of their children, and have, in several places, taken measures for founding of schools. An act of assembly was passed in the year 1724, for establishing of a free school in the town of Dorchester, in the parish of St. George. Upon this occasion some of the most considerable gentlemen of this colony, wrote to the society, "The chief source of irreligion and immorality here, is the want of schools ; and we may justly be apprehensive, that if our children continue longer to be deprived of opportunities of being instructed, Christianity will of course decay insensibly, and we shall have a generation of our own, as ignorant as the native Indians." This act hath been transmitted to Great Britain for the royal assent. The people also of St. Paul's parish have lately raised a sum of money by voluntary subscriptions, for founding a free-school ; and Mr. Whitmarsh of this parish, lately deceased, hath left 500*l.* for this purpose ; they have now good hopes of raising a sufficient fund for building and endowing one. The Rev. Mr. Ludlam, late the society's missionary at Gooscreek, bequeathed all his estate, which hath been computed to be about 2000*l.* Carolina money, for building and endowing a school at Gooscreek. This society, who are the trustees appointed by his will, hope to settle this school in a little time. The late Richard Beresford, Esq. of St. Thomas's parish, in this colony, has been a great promoter of the founding of schools. He died in March, 1722, and by his will bequeathed the annual profits of his estate, which was very considerable, in trust, to be paid to the vestry of that parish ; from the time of his decease, until



his son, who was at that time about eight years of age, should arrive at the age of 21 years : directing farther the vestry to apply one-third of the yearly profits of his estate, for the support of one or more schoolmasters ; who should teach reading, accounts, mathematicks, and other liberal learning ; and the remaining two-thirds, towards the support and maintenance of the children of the poor of that parish, who should be sent to this school. The vestry of this parish have since received from this estate 6500*l.* Carolina money, and placed out 1200*l.* of it, in purchase of a plantation, about half a mile distant from the church, containing 600 acres of land, with convenient buildings upon it, for the use of the designed school ; and placed out the remaining money at interest upon land security.

It is now to be hoped this necessary work, of the education of the youth, will be carried on with success ; which the society have always strove to the utmost of their power to promote ; they have not only helped towards maintenance of some schoolmasters, but have also, at times, sent large quantities of good books, as Bibles, Common-Prayer books, Whole Duties of Man, Catechisms, and other devotional books. The society have sent to this province above 2000 volumes, and above 300*l.* worth of small tracts, not bound.

16. I have now related the endeavours of the society, towards settling religion in this colony ; which, however small in comparison of the great end sought for, have, notwithstanding, had important consequences. The zeal and bounty of this society, hath raised a noble and truly Christian emulation in the inhabitants of this province, to carry on so great and necessary a work.— The example set by the society hath influenced the people to contribute very bountifully to their own happi-

ness, hath induced them, with great chearfulness, to build churches, to assign stated salaries to the clergy, by acts of assembly, to allot glebes to the churches, to open and to endow schools for the education of their children. Soon after the foundation of this society an act of assembly passed in the year 1706, for "Establishing religious worship according to the Church of England;" for dividing the whole province into ten parishes, (to which three have been since added) for allowing a considerable sum for the building each church, and ordering one to be built in each parish; for incorporating the rectors or ministers; for allowing the ministers of country parishes 100*l*. a year, current money of that province each; and the rector of Charles-town 150*l*. All which churches were soon after built, have been supply'd with ministers by this society, and have been faithfully paid their settled salaries by the country. And lately in the year 1723, a farther law was passed for augmenting the Ministers salaries, and appointing them to be paid in proclamation money. The Clergy were so sensible of this liberality of the people, that they did in the most grateful manner represent to the society, that considering the circumstances of the colony, it was a very generous settlement.

Thus through the pious liberality of the country, though there was scarce any face of the church of England in this province, when this society was first established, there have been 13 churches, and 4 chapels of ease since built; a free-school hath been erected at Charles-Town. The whole body of the people, have had the advantage of the administration of God's word and sacraments, and such a light set up among them, as, it is to be hoped, no age shall see extinguished.

AN  
ACCOUNT  
OF THE  
BREAKING OUT  
OF THE  
YAMASSEE WAR,  
IN SOUTH CAROLINA.  
EXTRACTED  
FROM THE BOSTON NEWS,  
OF THE 13th OF JUNE, 1715.



## ACCOUNT.

ON Tuesday last arrived here His Majesty's ship Success, Captain Meade, Commander, about 12 days passage from South Carolina, by whom his excellency, our Governor, had a letter from the Honourable Gov. Craven, of South Carolina, acquainting him that all their Indians, made up of many various Nations, consisting of between 1000 to 1200 men, (lately paid obedience to that Government) had shaken off their fidelity, treacherously murdering many of His Majesty's subjects.

Gov. Craven hearing of this rupture, immediately despatched Captain Nairn and Mr. John Cockran, gentlemen well acquainted with the Indians, to know the cause of their discontent, who accordingly on the 15th of April, met the principal part of them at the Yamassee Town, about 130 miles from Charlestown, and after several debates, pro and con. the Indians seemed very ready to come to a good agreement and reconciliation, and having prepared a good supper for our Messengers, all went quietly to rest; but early next morning their lodging was beset with a great number of Indians, who barbarously murdered Captain Nairn and Messieurs John Wright, and Thomas Ruffly, Mr. Cockran and his wife they kept prisoners, whom they afterwards slew. One Seaman Burroughs, a strong robust man, seeing the Indians' cruel barbarity on the other gentlemen, made his way good through the middle of the enemy, they pursuing and firing many shot at him. One took him through the cheek (which is since cured) and coming to a river, he swam through, and alarmed the

plantations; so that by his escape, and a merchant man that lay in Port Royal River, that fired some great guns on the Enemy, several Hundreds of English lives were saved.

At the same time that Governour Craven despatched Captain Nairn and Mr. Cockran to make enquiry of the rupture between us and the Indians, he got himself a party of horse, and being accompanied with several gentlemen volunteers, intended for the Yamassee Town, in order to have an impartial account of their complaints and grievances, to redress the same, and to rectify any misunderstanding or disorders that might have happened. And on his journey meeting with certain information of the above Murder, and the Rebellion of the Enemy, he got as many men ready as could be got, to the Number of about TWO HUNDRED AND FORTY, designing to march to the Enemies' Head Quarters, and engage them.

At the same time the Governour despatched a Courier to Colonel Mackay, with orders forthwith to raise what forces he could, to go by water and meet him at Yamassee Town. The Governour marched within SIXTEEN miles of said town, and encamped at night in a large Savanna or Plain, by a Wood-side, and was early next morning by break of day saluted with a volley of shot from about FIVE HUNDRED of the enemy; that lay ambuscaded in the Woods, who notwithstanding of the surprise, soon put his men in order, and engaged them so gallantly three quarters of an hour, that he soon routed the enemy; killed and wounded several of them; among whom some of their chief Commanders fell, with the loss on our side of several men wounded, and only John Snow, sentinel, killed. The Governour seeing the great numbers of the enemy, and want-

ing pilots to guide him over the river, and then having vast woods and swamps to pass through, thought best to return back.

Captain Mackay, in pursuit of his orders, gathered what force he could, and embarked by water, and landing marched to the Indian Yamassee town; and though he was disappointed in meeting the Governour there, yet he surprised and attacked the enemy, and routed them out of their town, where he got vast quantities of provision that they stored up, and what plunder they had taken from the English. Colonel Mackay kept possession of the Town; and soon after hearing that the enemy had got into another fort, where were upwards of 200 Men, he detached out of his Camp about 140 Men, to attack it and engaged them. At which time a young Stripling, named Palmer, with about SIXTEEN Men, who had been out upon a Scout, came to Colonel Mackay's assistance, who, at once, with his men, scaled their walls, and attacked them in their trenches, killed several, but meeting with so warm a reception from the enemy that he was necessitated to make his retreat; yet on a second re-entry with his men, he so manfully engaged the enemy as to make them fly their fort. Colonel Mackay being without, engaged them on their flight, where he slew many of them. He has since had many skirmishes with them.

The Governour has placed garrisons in all convenient places that may be, in order to defend the country from depredations and incursions of the enemy, till better can be made. We had about a hundred traders among the Indians, whereof we apprehend they have murdered and destroyed about NINETY Men, and about FORTY more Men we have lost in several skirmishes.



AN  
ACCOUNT  
OF  
WHAT THE ARMY DID,  
UNDER THE  
COMMAND OF COL. MOORE,  
IN  
HIS EXPEDITION  
LAST WINTER,  
AGAINST THE SPANIARDS AND SPANISH INDIANS.  
IN A LETTER,  
FROM THE SAID COL. MOORE TO THE GOVERNOR OF CAROLINA.

PRINTED IN THE BOSTON NEWS,

MAY 1, 1704.

## ACCOUNT.

*To the Governour of Carolina :*

MAY it please your honour to accept of this short narrative of what I, with the army under my command, have been doing since my departure from the Ockomulgee, on the 19th of December.

On the 14th of December we came to a town, and strong and almost regular fort, about Sun rising called *Ayaville*. At our first approach the Indians in it fired and shot arrows at us briskly ; from which we sheltered ourselves under the side of a great Mud-walled house, till we could take a view of the fort, and consider of the best way of assaulting it : which we concluded to be, by breaking the church door, which made a part of the fort, with axes. I no sooner proposed this, but my men readily undertook it : ran up to it briskly, (the enemy at the same time shooting at them,) were beaten off without effecting it, and fourteen white men wounded. Two hours after that, we thought fit to attempt the burning of the church, which we did, three or four Indians assisting us. The Indians obstinately defending themselves, killed us two men, viz. Francis Plowden and Thomas Dale. After we were in their fort, a fryar, the only white in it, came forth and begged mercy. In this we took about twenty-six men alive, and fifty-eight women and children. The Indians took about as many more of each sort. The fryar told us we killed, in the two storms of the fort, twenty-five men.

The next morning the captain of St. Lewis Fort, with twenty-three men and four hundred Indians, came to fight us, which we did ; beat him ; took him and eight of his men prisoners ; and, as the Indians, which say it, told us, killed five or six whites. We have a particular account from our Indians of one hundred and sixty-eight Indian men killed and taken in the fight ; but the Apalatchia Indians say they lost two hundred, which we have reason to believe to be the least. Capt. John Bellinger, fighting bravely at the head of our men, was killed at my foot. Capt. Fox dyed of a wound given him at the first storming of the fort. Two days after, I sent to the cassique of the Ibitachka, who, with one hundred and thirty men, was in his strong and well made fort, to come and make his peace with me, the which he did, and compounded for it with his church's plate, and ten horses laden with provisions. After this, I marched through five towns, which had all strong forts, and defences against small arms. They all submitted and surrendered their forts to me without condition. I have now in my company all the whole people of three towns, and the greatest part of four more. We have totally destroyed all the people of four towns : so that we have left the Apalatchia but that one town which compounded with one part of St. Lewis ; and the people of one town, which run away altogether : their town, church and fort, we burnt. The people of St. Lewis came to me every night. I expect and have advice that the town which compounded with me are coming after me. The waiting for these people make my marches slow ; for I am willing to bring away with me, free, as many of the Indians as I can, this being the address of the commons to your honour to order it so. This will make my men's part of plunder (which other-



wise might have been 100*l*. to a man) but small. But I hope with your honour's assistance to find a way to gratifie them for their loss of blood. I never see or hear of a stouter or braver thing done, than the storming of the fort. It hath regained the reputation we seemed to have lost under the conduct of Robert Macken, the Indians now having a mighty value for the whites. Apalatchia is now reduced to so feeble and low a condition, that it can neither support St. Augustine with provisions, nor distrust, endamage or frighten us: our Indians living between the Apalatchia and the French. In short, we have made Carolina as safe as the conquest of Apalatchia can make it.

If I had not so many men wounded in our first attempt, I had assaulted St. Lewis fort, in which is about 28 or 30 men, and 20 of these came thither from Pensacola to buy provisions the first night after I took the first fort.

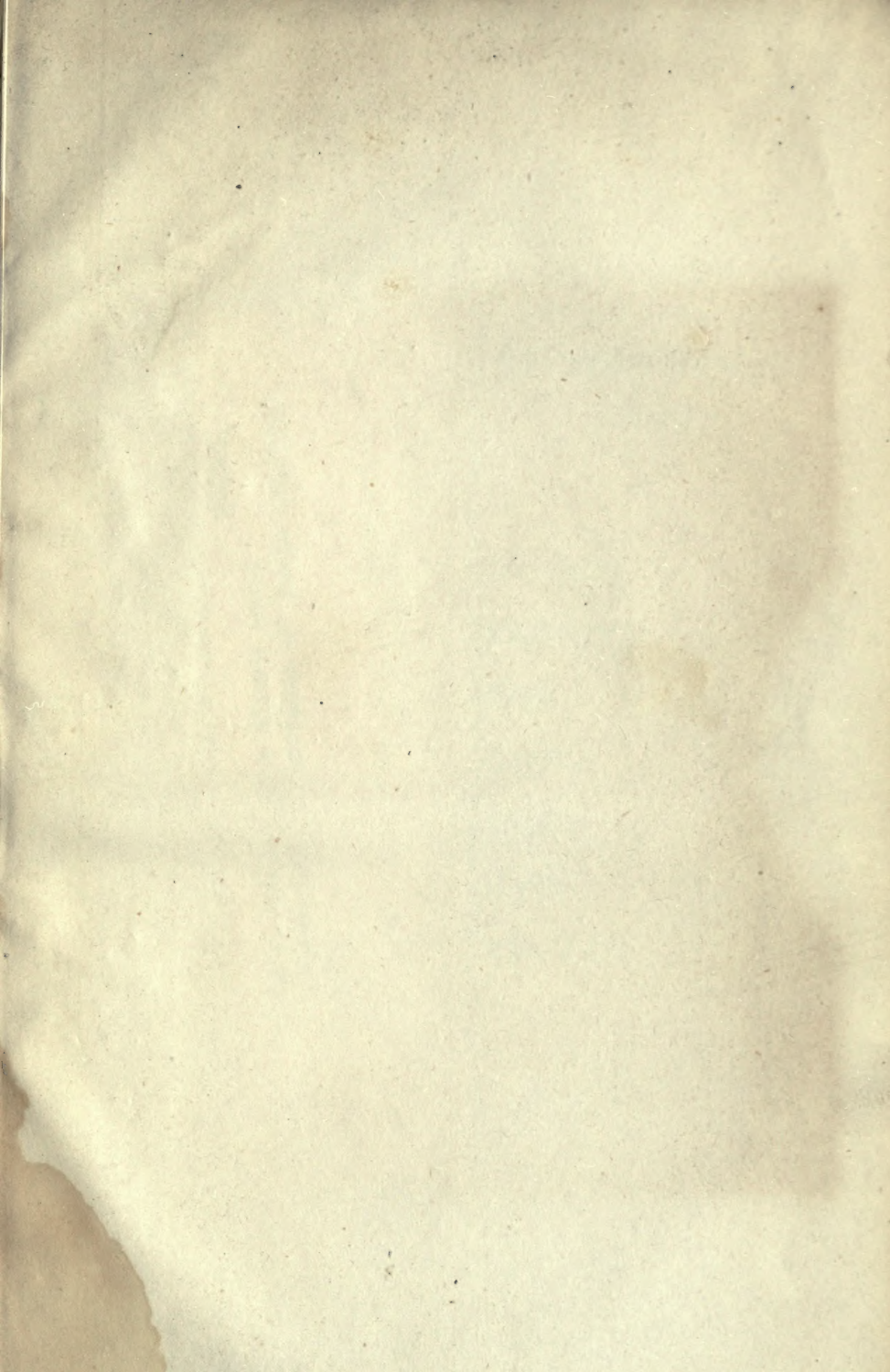
On Sabbath, the 23d instant, I came out of Apalatchia settle, and am now about 30 miles on my way home; but do not expect to reach it before the middle of March, notwithstanding my horses will not be able to carry me to the Cheeraque's Mountain. I have had a tedious duty, and uneasy journey; and though I have no reason to fear any harm from the enemy, through the difference between the whites, and between Indians and Indians, bad way and false alarms, I do labour under hourly uneasiness. The number of free Apalatchia Indians that are now under my protection, and bound with me to Carolina, are 130*o*, and 100 slaves. The Indians under my command killed and took prisoners in the plantations, whilst we stormed the fort, as many Indians as we and they took and killed in the fort.

*Dated in the woods 50 miles north and east of Apalatchia.*













451915

Carroll, Bartholomew Rivers (ed.)  
Historical collections of South Carolina.  
vol.2.

HUS.C  
C3192h

NAME OF BORROWER.

DATE.

**University of Toronto  
Library**

**DO NOT  
REMOVE  
THE  
CARD  
FROM  
THIS  
POCKET**

Acme Library Card Pocket  
LOWE-MARTIN CO. LIMITED



